

**Oracle® Database**

SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide

11g Release 2 (11.2)

**E18294-01**

August 2010

Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide, 11g Release 2 (11.2)

E18294-01

Copyright © 1996, 2010, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

Primary Author: Roza Leyderman

Contributors: Bharath Aleti, Geeta Arora, Thomas H. Chang, Maria Chien, Subramanyam Chitti, Amit Ganesh, Kevin Jernigan, Vikram Kapoor, Balaji Krishnan, Jean de Lavarene, Geoff Lee, Scott Lynn, Jack Melnick, Atrayee Mullick, Eric Paapanen, Ravi Rajamani, Kam Shergill, Ed Shirk, Srinivas Vemuri

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

If this software or related documentation is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT RIGHTS Programs, software, databases, and related documentation and technical data delivered to U.S. Government customers are "commercial computer software" or "commercial technical data" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, the use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation shall be subject to the restrictions and license terms set forth in the applicable Government contract, and, to the extent applicable by the terms of the Government contract, the additional rights set forth in FAR 52.227-19, Commercial Computer Software License (December 2007). Oracle USA, Inc., 500 Oracle Parkway, Redwood City, CA 94065.

This software is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications which may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure the safe use of this software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software in dangerous applications.

Oracle is a registered trademark of Oracle Corporation and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

This software and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

---

---

# Contents

<b>Preface</b> .....	xxi
Audience .....	xxi
Documentation Accessibility .....	xxi
Related Documents .....	xxii
Conventions .....	xxiii
<b>What's New in Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide?</b> .....	xxv
LOB Features Introduced in Oracle Database 11g Release 2 .....	xxv
LOB Features Introduced in Oracle Database 11g Release 1 .....	xxv
<b>1 Introduction to Large Objects</b>	
<b>What Are Large Objects?</b> .....	1-1
<b>Why Use Large Objects?</b> .....	1-1
Using LOBs for Semi-structured Data .....	1-2
Using LOBs for Unstructured Data .....	1-2
<b>Why Not Use LONGs?</b> .....	1-3
<b>Different Kinds of LOBs</b> .....	1-3
Internal LOBs .....	1-3
External LOBs and the BFILE Data Type .....	1-4
<b>Introducing LOB Locators</b> .....	1-4
<b>Database Semantics for Internal and External LOBs</b> .....	1-5
<b>Large Object Data Types</b> .....	1-5
<b>Object Data Types and LOBs</b> .....	1-5
<b>Storing and Creating Other Data Types with LOBs</b> .....	1-6
VARRAYs Stored as LOBs .....	1-6
XMLType Columns Stored as CLOBs .....	1-6
LOBs Used in Oracle Multimedia .....	1-6
<b>Part I Getting Started</b>	
<b>2 Working with LOBs</b>	
LOB Column States .....	2-1
Locking a Row Containing a LOB .....	2-2

<b>Opening and Closing LOBs</b> .....	2-2
<b>LOB Locator and LOB Value</b> .....	2-2
Using the Data Interface for LOBs .....	2-2
Using the LOB Locator to Access and Modify LOB Values.....	2-3
<b>LOB Locators and BFILE Locators</b> .....	2-3
Table print_media .....	2-3
Initializing a LOB Column to Contain a Locator.....	2-4
Initializing a Persistent LOB Column .....	2-4
Initializing BFILES.....	2-5
<b>Accessing LOBs</b> .....	2-5
Accessing a LOB Using SQL.....	2-5
Accessing a LOB Using the Data Interface .....	2-6
Accessing a LOB Using the Locator Interface .....	2-6
<b>LOB Rules and Restrictions</b> .....	2-6
Rules for LOB Columns.....	2-6
Restrictions for LOB Operations .....	2-8

### 3 Managing LOBs: Database Administration

<b>Database Utilities for Loading Data into LOBs</b> .....	3-1
Using SQL*Loader to Load LOBs .....	3-1
Using SQL*Loader to Populate a BFILE Column.....	3-2
Using Oracle Data Pump to Transfer LOB Data.....	3-4
<b>Managing Temporary LOBs</b> .....	3-4
Managing Temporary Tablespace for Temporary LOBs.....	3-4
<b>Managing BFILES</b> .....	3-4
Rules for Using Directory Objects and BFILES .....	3-5
Setting Maximum Number of Open BFILES .....	3-5
<b>Changing Tablespace Storage for a LOB</b> .....	3-5

## Part II SecureFiles LOBs

### 4 Using Oracle SecureFiles LOBs

<b>About SecureFiles LOBs</b> .....	4-1
About Compression.....	4-2
About Deduplication .....	4-2
About Encryption.....	4-2
<b>Using CREATE TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs</b> .....	4-2
Parameters of CREATE TABLE for SecureFiles LOB .....	4-6
BASICFILE .....	4-7
SECUREFILE .....	4-7
CHUNK.....	4-7
RETENTION.....	4-7
MAXSIZE .....	4-7
FREEPOOLS .....	4-7
LOGGING, NOLOGGING, or FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING.....	4-7
FREELISTS or FREELIST GROUPS.....	4-8

PCTVERSION.....	4-8
COMPRESS or NOCOMPRESS .....	4-8
DEDUPLICATE or KEEP_DUPLICATES .....	4-8
ENCRYPT or DECRYPT .....	4-9
CREATE TABLE Compression .....	4-9
Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Compression.....	4-9
Examples of CREATE TABLE Compression .....	4-9
CREATE TABLE Deduplication .....	4-10
Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Deduplication.....	4-10
Examples of CREATE TABLE Deduplication.....	4-11
CREATE TABLE Encryption .....	4-12
Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Encryption .....	4-12
Examples of CREATE TABLE Encryption .....	4-12
<b>Using ALTER TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs .....</b>	<b>4-13</b>
Parameters of CREATE TABLE for SecureFiles LOB .....	4-14
RETENTION.....	4-15
COMPRESS or NOCOMPRESS .....	4-15
DEDUPLICATE or KEEP_DUPLICATES .....	4-15
ENCRYPT or DECRYPT .....	4-15
ALTER TABLE Compression .....	4-15
Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Compression .....	4-15
Examples of ALTER TABLE Compression .....	4-16
ALTER TABLE Deduplication .....	4-16
Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Deduplication.....	4-16
Examples of ALTER TABLE Deduplication .....	4-17
ALTER TABLE Encryption.....	4-17
Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Encryption .....	4-17
Examples of ALTER TABLE Encryption.....	4-17
<b>Database File System Links .....</b>	<b>4-18</b>
Overview of Database File System Links .....	4-18
Creating Database File System Links .....	4-19
Copying Database File System Links .....	4-20
Copying a Linked LOB Between Tables .....	4-20
Online Redefinition and DBFS Links .....	4-20
Transparent Read .....	4-20
<b>Initialization Parameter db_securefile for SecureFiles LOBs .....</b>	<b>4-21</b>
<b>Compatibility and Upgrading .....</b>	<b>4-21</b>
<b>Migrating Columns from BasicFiles LOBs to SecureFiles LOBs.....</b>	<b>4-22</b>
Preventing Generation of REDO Space when Migrating to SecureFiles LOBs.....	4-22
Online Redefinition for BasicFiles LOBs.....	4-22
Online Redefinition Advantages .....	4-22
Online Redefinition Disadvantages .....	4-22
Using Online Redefinition for Migrating Tables with BasicFiles LOBs.....	4-22
Parallel Online Redefinition .....	4-23
<b>PL/SQL Packages for SecureFiles LOBs and DBFS.....</b>	<b>4-24</b>
DBMS_LOB Package.....	4-24
GETOPTIONS().....	4-26

SETOPTIONS()	4-26
ISSECUREFILE()	4-26
MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()	4-26
COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK()	4-27
COPY_DBFS_LINK()	4-27
GET_DBFS_LINK()	4-27
SET_DBFS_LINK()	4-27
GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE()	4-27
DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATHNAME()	4-27
SETCONTENTTYPE()	4-27
GETCONTENTTYPE()	4-28
APPEND()	4-28
COMPARE()	4-28
CONVERTTOBLOB()	4-28
CONVERTTOCLOB()	4-28
COPY()	4-28
ERASE()	4-28
FRAGMENT_DELETE()	4-28
FRAGMENT_INSERT()	4-28
FRAGMENT_MOVE()	4-29
FRAGMENT_REPLACE()	4-29
LOADBLOBFROMFILE()	4-29
LOADCLOBFROMFILE()	4-29
LOADFROMFILE()	4-29
READ()	4-29
SUBSTR()	4-29
TRIM()	4-29
WRITE()	4-29
WRITEAPPEND()	4-29
DBMS_SPACE Package	4-30
SPACE_USAGE()	4-30

## 5 Introducing the Oracle Database File System

Why a Database File System?	5-1
What is the Oracle Database File System (DBFS)?	5-1

## 6 DBFS File System Client

Installing DBFS	6-1
DBFS Prerequisites	6-1
Installing FUSE (Linux Only)	6-1
DBFS Installation Home	6-2
Creating a File System	6-2
Dropping a File System	6-3
DBFS Mounting Interface (Linux Only)	6-3
Mounting the DBFS Store	6-3
Unmounting a File System	6-5
Restrictions on Mounted File Systems	6-5

Mounting DBFS Through fstab Utility.....	6-5
<b>Using the DBFS Command Interface</b> .....	6-6
Using DBFS .....	6-6
Creating a Directory .....	6-6
Listing a Directory .....	6-6
Copying Files and Directories.....	6-7
Removing Files and Directories.....	6-7
<b>DBFS Administration</b> .....	6-7
Using Oracle Wallet with DBFS Client .....	6-8
File System Security Model .....	6-8
Enabling Shared Root Access.....	6-9
Enabling DBFS Access Among Multiple RDBMS Users .....	6-9
Performing DBFS Diagnostics.....	6-13
Managing DBFS Client Failover.....	6-13
Sharing and Caching DBFS.....	6-14
Backing up DBFS.....	6-14
Backing up DBFS at the Database Level.....	6-14
Backing up DBFS through a File System Utility.....	6-14
Improving Small File Performance of DBFS .....	6-14
Enabling Advanced SecureFiles LOB Features for DBFS.....	6-15

## 7 DBFS Content API

<b>Overview of DBFS Content API</b> .....	7-1
<b>Stores and Package DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT</b> .....	7-1
Getting Started with DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT Package.....	7-2
DBFS Content API Role.....	7-2
Path Name Constants and Types.....	7-2
Content Properties .....	7-2
Path Name Types.....	7-3
Store Features .....	7-4
Lock Types .....	7-6
Standard Properties .....	7-6
Optional Properties.....	7-7
Property Access Flags.....	7-8
Exceptions .....	7-9
Property Bundles .....	7-9
Store Descriptors.....	7-10
Administrative and Query APIs .....	7-10
Registering a Content Store .....	7-10
Unregistering A Content Store.....	7-10
Mounting a Registered Store .....	7-11
Unmounting a Previously Mounted Store .....	7-11
List all Available Stores and Their Features.....	7-11
List all Available Mount Points.....	7-12
Look-up Specific Stores and Their Features.....	7-12
DBFS Content API Space Usage.....	7-12
DBFS Content API Session Defaults.....	7-12

DBFS Content API Interface Versioning.....	7-13
DBFS Content API Notes on Path Names .....	7-13
DBFS Content API Creation Operations.....	7-13
DBFS Content API Deletion Operations .....	7-14
DBFS Content API Path Get and Put Operations.....	7-14
DBFS Content API Rename and Move Operations.....	7-15
Directory Listings.....	7-15
DBFS Content API Directory Navigation and Search .....	7-15
DBFS Content API Locking Operations.....	7-16
DBFS Content API Abstract Operations .....	7-16
DBFS Content API Access Checks .....	7-16
DBFS Content API Path Normalization.....	7-16
DBFS Content API Statistics Support.....	7-17
DBFS Content API Tracing Support.....	7-17
Resource and Property Views .....	7-18

## 8 DBFS SecureFiles Store

<b>The DBFS SecureFiles Store Package, DBMS_DBFS_SFS.....</b>	<b>8-1</b>
Creating and Registering a New SecureFiles Store.....	8-1
Initializing or Re-initializing a SecureFiles Store.....	8-1
Unregister and Drop A SecureFiles Store File System Store .....	8-2
<b>Using a DBFS SecureFiles Store File System.....</b>	<b>8-2</b>
Permissions Management.....	8-2
Creating a SecureFiles File System Store .....	8-3
Comparing SecureFiles LOBs to BasicFiles LOBs .....	8-4
Initializing SecureFiles Store File Systems .....	8-4
Drop SecureFiles Store File Systems.....	8-5
Working with DBFS Content API .....	8-5

## 9 DBFS Hierarchical Store

<b>Wallet Management .....</b>	<b>9-1</b>
<b>Managing Storage with DBMS_DBFS_HS .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
Constants for DBMS_DBFS_HS Package.....	9-2
<b>Methods of DBMS_DBFS_HS Package .....</b>	<b>9-2</b>
CREATESTORE() .....	9-3
DROPSTORE() .....	9-3
RECONFIGCACHE() .....	9-3
SETSTOREPROPERTY() .....	9-4
GETSTOREPROPERTY() .....	9-5
CREATEBUCKET().....	9-5
STOREPUSH() .....	9-5
CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES().....	9-5
REGISTERSTORECOMMAND() .....	9-5
DEREGSTORECOMMAND() .....	9-5
SENDCOMMAND() .....	9-5
<b>User View for DBFS Hierarchical Store.....</b>	<b>9-6</b>
USER_DBFS_HS_FILES .....	9-6



<b>Examples Using DBMS_DBFS_HS</b> .....	9-6
Setting up the Store.....	9-6
Using the Hierarchical Store.....	9-7
Using Hierarchical Store as a File System .....	9-7
Using Hierarchical Store as an Archive Solution For SecureFiles LOBs.....	9-7
Dropping a Hierarchical Store .....	9-7
Example: Using Amazon S3 .....	9-7
Example: Using Tape.....	9-12

## 10 Creating a DBFS Store

Package DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI.....	10-1
------------------------------------	------

## Part III Application Design

### 11 LOB Storage

<b>Creating Tables That Contain LOBs</b> .....	11-1
Initializing Persistent LOBs to NULL or Empty .....	11-1
Setting a Persistent LOB to NULL.....	11-2
Setting a Persistent LOB to Empty .....	11-2
Initializing LOBs.....	11-2
Initializing Persistent LOB Columns and Attributes to a Value .....	11-2
Initializing BFILES to NULL or a File Name.....	11-2
Restriction on First Extent of a LOB Segment.....	11-3
<b>Choosing a LOB Column Data Type</b> .....	11-3
LOBs Compared to LONG and LONG RAW Types .....	11-3
Storing Varying-Width Character Data in LOBs.....	11-4
Implicit Character Set Conversions with LOBs .....	11-4
<b>LOB Storage Parameters</b> .....	11-4
Inline and Out-of-Line LOB Storage .....	11-4
Defining Tablespace and Storage Characteristics for Persistent LOBs .....	11-5
Assigning a LOB Data Segment Name .....	11-6
LOB Storage Characteristics for LOB Column or Attribute.....	11-6
TABLESPACE and LOB Index.....	11-6
Tablespace for LOB Index in Non-Partitioned Table .....	11-7
PCTVERSION .....	11-7
RETENTION Parameter for BasicFiles LOBs.....	11-8
RETENTION Parameter for SecureFiles .....	11-9
CACHE / NOCACHE / CACHE READS .....	11-9
CACHE / NOCACHE / CACHE READS: LOB Values and Buffer Cache .....	11-9
LOGGING / NOLOGGING Parameter for BasicFiles LOBs .....	11-9
<b>LOBs Always Generate Undo for LOB Index Pages</b> .....	11-10
<b>When LOGGING is Set Oracle Generates Full Redo for LOB Data Pages</b> .....	11-10
LOGGING/FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING for SecureFiles.....	11-10
CACHE Implies LOGGING .....	11-10
SecureFiles and an Efficient Method of Generating REDO and UNDO.....	11-11
FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING is Useful for Bulk Loads or Inserts.....	11-11

CHUNK .....	11-11
Choosing the Value of CHUNK.....	11-11
Set INITIAL and NEXT to Larger than CHUNK .....	11-12
ENABLE or DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW Clause .....	11-12
Guidelines for ENABLE or DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW .....	11-12
<b>Indexing LOB Columns .....</b>	<b>11-13</b>
Using Domain Indexing on LOB Columns .....	11-13
Indexing LOB Columns Using a Text Index .....	11-13
Function-Based Indexes on LOBs .....	11-13
Extensible Indexing on LOB Columns .....	11-14
Extensible Optimizer .....	11-14
Oracle Text Indexing Support for XML .....	11-15
<b>Manipulating LOBs in Partitioned Tables .....</b>	<b>11-15</b>
Partitioning a Table Containing LOB Columns.....	11-15
Creating an Index on a Table Containing Partitioned LOB Columns.....	11-16
Moving Partitions Containing LOBs.....	11-16
Splitting Partitions Containing LOBs.....	11-16
Merging Partitions Containing LOBs.....	11-16
<b>LOBs in Index Organized Tables .....</b>	<b>11-16</b>
<b>Restrictions for LOBs in Partitioned Index-Organized Tables .....</b>	<b>11-17</b>
<b>Updating LOBs in Nested Tables.....</b>	<b>11-18</b>

## 12 Advanced Design Considerations

<b>LOB Buffering Subsystem.....</b>	<b>12-1</b>
Advantages of LOB Buffering .....	12-1
Guidelines for Using LOB Buffering .....	12-1
LOB Buffering Subsystem Usage .....	12-3
LOB Buffer Physical Structure .....	12-3
LOB Buffering Subsystem Usage Scenario.....	12-3
Flushing the LOB Buffer .....	12-4
Flushing the Updated LOB.....	12-5
Using Buffer-Enabled Locators .....	12-6
Saving Locator State to Avoid a Reselect .....	12-6
OCI Example of LOB Buffering.....	12-6
<b>Opening Persistent LOBs with the OPEN and CLOSE Interfaces .....</b>	<b>12-9</b>
Index Performance Benefits of Explicitly Opening a LOB .....	12-9
Working with Explicitly Open LOB Instances .....	12-9
<b>Read-Consistent Locators .....</b>	<b>12-10</b>
A Selected Locator Becomes a Read-Consistent Locator.....	12-10
Example of Updating LOBs and Read-Consistency .....	12-10
Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators.....	12-12
Example of Updating a LOB Using SQL DML and DBMS_LOB.....	12-13
Example of Using One Locator to Update the Same LOB Value .....	12-14
Example of Updating a LOB with a PL/SQL (DBMS_LOB) Bind Variable .....	12-16
<b>LOB Locators and Transaction Boundaries .....</b>	<b>12-17</b>
Reading and Writing to a LOB Using Locators .....	12-18
Selecting the Locator Outside of the Transaction Boundary .....	12-18

Selecting the Locator Within a Transaction Boundary .....	12-19
LOB Locators Cannot Span Transactions .....	12-19
Example of Locator Not Spanning a Transaction .....	12-20
<b>LOBs in the Object Cache</b> .....	12-21
<b>Terabyte-Size LOB Support</b> .....	12-21
Maximum Storage Limit for Terabyte-Size LOBs .....	12-22
Using Terabyte-Size LOBs with JDBC .....	12-22
Using Terabyte-Size LOBs with the DBMS_LOB Package.....	12-23
Using Terabyte-Size LOBs with OCI.....	12-23
<b>Guidelines for Creating Gigabyte LOBs</b> .....	12-23
Creating a Tablespace and Table to Store Gigabyte LOBs.....	12-24

## 13 Overview of Supplied LOB APIs

<b>Programmatic Environments That Support LOBs</b> .....	13-1
<b>Comparing the LOB Interfaces</b> .....	13-2
<b>Using PL/SQL (DBMS_LOB Package) to Work With LOBs</b> .....	13-5
Provide a LOB Locator Before Running the DBMS_LOB Routine .....	13-5
Guidelines for Offset and Amount Parameters in DBMS_LOB Operations .....	13-6
Determining Character Set ID .....	13-6
PL/SQL Functions and Procedures for LOBs.....	13-7
PL/SQL Functions and Procedures to Modify LOB Values.....	13-7
PL/SQL Functions and Procedures for Introspection of LOBs.....	13-8
PL/SQL Operations on Temporary LOBs.....	13-8
PL/SQL Read-Only Functions and Procedures for BFILES.....	13-8
PL/SQL Functions and Procedures to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs .....	13-9
<b>Using OCI to Work With LOBs</b> .....	13-9
Prefetching of LOB Data, Length, and Chunk Size.....	13-9
Setting the CSID Parameter for OCI LOB APIs .....	13-9
Fixed-Width and Varying-Width Character Set Rules for OCI.....	13-9
Other Operations .....	13-10
NCLOBs in OCI.....	13-10
OCILobLoadFromFile2() Amount Parameter.....	13-10
OCILobRead2() Amount Parameter.....	13-11
OCILobLocator Pointer Assignment.....	13-11
LOB Locators in Defines and Out-Bind Variables in OCI .....	13-11
OCI Functions That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILES .....	13-11
OCI Functions to Modify Persistent LOB (BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB) Values.....	13-11
OCI Functions to Read or Examine Persistent LOB and External LOB (BFILE) Values.....	13-12
OCI Functions for Temporary LOBs .....	13-12
OCI Read-Only Functions for BFILES .....	13-12
OCI LOB Locator Functions .....	13-13
OCI LOB-Buffering Functions.....	13-13
OCI Functions to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs.....	13-13
OCI LOB Examples .....	13-13
Further Information About OCI .....	13-13
<b>Using C++ (OCCI) to Work With LOBs</b> .....	13-13
OCCI Classes for LOBs.....	13-14

Clob Class.....	13-14
Blob Class .....	13-15
Bfile Class .....	13-15
Fixed-Width Character Set Rules .....	13-15
Varying-Width Character Set Rules .....	13-15
Offset and Amount Parameters for Other OCCI Operations .....	13-16
NCLOBs in OCCI.....	13-16
Amount Parameter for OCCI LOB copy() Methods .....	13-16
Amount Parameter for OCCI read() Operations .....	13-17
Further Information About OCCI.....	13-17
OCCI Methods That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs .....	13-17
OCCI Methods to Modify Persistent LOB (BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB) Values.....	13-17
OCCI Methods to Read or Examine Persistent LOB and BFILE Values .....	13-17
OCCI Read-Only Methods for BFILEs .....	13-18
Other OCCI LOB Methods.....	13-18
OCCI Methods to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs.....	13-18
<b>Using C/C++ (Pro*C) to Work With LOBs .....</b>	<b>13-18</b>
First Provide an Allocated Input Locator Pointer That Represents LOB.....	13-19
Pro*C/C++ Statements That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs.....	13-19
Pro*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements to Modify Persistent LOB Values.....	13-20
Pro*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for Introspection of LOBs.....	13-20
Pro*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for Temporary LOBs.....	13-20
Pro*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for BFILEs.....	13-20
Pro*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Locators .....	13-21
Pro*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Buffering.....	13-21
Pro*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements to Open and Close LOBs.....	13-21
<b>Using COBOL (Pro*COBOL) to Work With LOBs .....</b>	<b>13-21</b>
First Provide an Allocated Input Locator Pointer That Represents LOB.....	13-21
Pro*COBOL Statements That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs.....	13-22
Pro*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements to Modify Persistent LOB Values .....	13-22
Pro*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Introspection of LOBs.....	13-23
Pro*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Temporary LOBs.....	13-23
Pro*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for BFILEs.....	13-23
Pro*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Locators .....	13-23
Pro*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Buffering.....	13-23
Pro*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Opening and Closing LOBs and BFILEs .....	13-24
<b>Using COM (Oracle Objects for OLE) to Work With LOBs.....</b>	<b>13-24</b>
OO4O Syntax Reference .....	13-24
OraBlob, OraClob, and OraBfile Object Interfaces Encapsulate Locators .....	13-24
OraBlob and OraClob Objects Are Retrieved as Part of Dynaset .....	13-24
Use the Clone Method to Retain Locator Independent of the Dynaset Move .....	13-25
Example of OraBlob and OraBfile .....	13-25
OO4O Methods and Properties to Access Data Stored in LOBs .....	13-26
OO4O Methods to Modify BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB Values.....	13-26
OO4O Methods to Read or Examine Internal and External LOB Values .....	13-27
OO4O Methods to Open and Close External LOBs (BFILEs).....	13-27
OO4O Methods for Persistent LOB Buffering .....	13-27

OO4O Properties for Operating on LOBs.....	13-28
OO4O Read-Only Methods for External Lobs (BFILES).....	13-28
OO4O Properties for Operating on External LOBs (BFILES).....	13-28
<b>Using Java (JDBC) to Work With LOBs .....</b>	<b>13-28</b>
Modifying Internal Persistent LOBs Using Java.....	13-28
Reading Internal Persistent LOBs and External LOBs (BFILES) With Java .....	13-29
BLOB, CLOB, and BFILE Classes .....	13-29
Calling DBMS_LOB Package from Java (JDBC) .....	13-30
LOB Prefetching to Improve Performance .....	13-30
Zero-Copy Input/Output for SecureFiles to Improve Performance .....	13-30
Zero-Copy Input/Output on the Server.....	13-30
Zero-Copy Input/Output in the JDBC Thin Driver .....	13-31
JDBC-OCI Driver Considerations.....	13-31
Referencing LOBs Using Java (JDBC) .....	13-31
Using OracleResultSet: BLOB and CLOB Objects Retrieved.....	13-31
JDBC Syntax References and Further Information .....	13-31
JDBC Methods for Operating on LOBs .....	13-31
JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods to Modify BLOB Values .....	13-32
JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods to Read or Examine BLOB Values.....	13-32
JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods and Properties for BLOB Buffering.....	13-33
JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods to Modify CLOB Values .....	13-33
JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods to Read or Examine CLOB Value.....	13-33
JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods and Properties for CLOB Buffering .....	13-33
JDBC oracle.sql.BFILE Methods to Read or Examine External LOB (BFILE) Values .....	13-34
JDBC oracle.sql.BFILE Methods and Properties for BFILE Buffering .....	13-34
JDBC Temporary LOB APIs .....	13-34
JDBC: Opening and Closing LOBs .....	13-35
JDBC: Opening and Closing BLOBs.....	13-35
Opening the BLOB Using JDBC.....	13-36
Checking If the BLOB Is Open Using JDBC.....	13-36
Closing the BLOB Using JDBC.....	13-36
JDBC: Opening and Closing CLOBs.....	13-36
Opening the CLOB Using JDBC .....	13-37
Checking If the CLOB Is Open Using JDBC.....	13-37
Closing the CLOB Using JDBC .....	13-37
JDBC: Opening and Closing BFILES .....	13-38
Opening BFILES .....	13-38
Checking If the BFILE Is Open.....	13-38
Closing the BFILE .....	13-39
Usage Example (OpenCloseLob.java).....	13-39
Truncating LOBs Using JDBC .....	13-40
JDBC: Truncating BLOBs.....	13-40
JDBC: Truncating CLOBs.....	13-41
JDBC BLOB Streaming APIs .....	13-41
JDBC CLOB Streaming APIs .....	13-42
BFILE Streaming APIs .....	13-43
JDBC BFILE Streaming Example (NewStreamLob.java) .....	13-44

JDBC and Empty LOBs .....	13-47
Oracle Provider for OLE DB (OraOLEDB).....	13-47
Overview of Oracle Data Provider for .NET (ODP.NET) .....	13-48

## 14 Performance Guidelines

<b>LOB Performance Guidelines</b> .....	14-1
Chunk Size .....	14-1
Performance Guidelines for Small BasicFiles LOBs .....	14-1
General Performance Guidelines for BasicFiles LOBs.....	14-1
Temporary LOB Performance Guidelines.....	14-2
Performance Considerations for SQL Semantics and LOBs .....	14-4
<b>Moving Data to LOBs in a Threaded Environment</b> .....	14-4
<b>LOB Access Statistics</b> .....	14-5
Example of Retrieving LOB Access Statistics.....	14-6

## Part IV SQL Access to LOBs

### 15 DDL and DML Statements with LOBs

<b>Creating a Table Containing One or More LOB Columns</b> .....	15-1
<b>Creating a Nested Table Containing a LOB</b> .....	15-3
<b>Inserting a Row by Selecting a LOB From Another Table</b> .....	15-4
<b>Inserting a LOB Value Into a Table</b> .....	15-5
<b>Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable</b> .....	15-6
PL/SQL: Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable .....	15-7
C (OCI): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable .....	15-7
COBOL (Pro*COBOL): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable.....	15-8
C/C++ (Pro*C/C++): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable.....	15-9
COM (OO4O): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable .....	15-10
Java (JDBC): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable .....	15-10
<b>Updating a LOB with EMPTY_CLOB() or EMPTY_BLOB()</b> .....	15-11
<b>Updating a Row by Selecting a LOB From Another Table</b> .....	15-12

### 16 SQL Semantics and LOBs

<b>Using LOBs in SQL</b> .....	16-1
<b>SQL Functions and Operators Supported for Use with LOBs</b> .....	16-2
UNICODE Support .....	16-5
Codepoint Semantics .....	16-5
Return Values for SQL Semantics on LOBs.....	16-6
LENGTH Return Value for LOBs .....	16-6
<b>Implicit Conversion of LOB Data Types in SQL</b> .....	16-6
Implicit Conversion Between CLOB and NCLOB Data Types in SQL .....	16-7
<b>Unsupported Use of LOBs in SQL</b> .....	16-8
<b>VARCHAR2 and RAW Semantics for LOBs</b> .....	16-9
LOBs Returned from SQL Functions .....	16-9
IS NULL and IS NOT NULL Usage with VARCHAR2s and CLOBs.....	16-10
WHERE Clause Usage with LOBs.....	16-10

	Built-in Functions for Remote LOBs and BFILES .....	16-11
<b>17</b>	<b>PL/SQL Semantics for LOBs</b>	
	PL/SQL Statements and Variables .....	17-1
	Implicit Conversions Between CLOB and VARCHAR2.....	17-1
	Explicit Conversion Functions.....	17-2
	VARCHAR2 and CLOB in PL/SQL Built-In Functions.....	17-2
	PL/SQL CLOB Comparison Rules .....	17-4
	CLOBs Follow the VARCHAR2 Collating Sequence.....	17-4
	PL/SQL Functions for Remote LOBs and BFILES .....	17-5
	Restrictions on Remote User-Defined Functions.....	17-5
	Remote Functions in PL/SQL, OCI, and JDBC .....	17-5
<b>18</b>	<b>Migrating Columns from LONGs to LOBs</b>	
	Benefits of Migrating LONG Columns to LOB Columns.....	18-1
	Preconditions for Migrating LONG Columns to LOB Columns .....	18-2
	Dropping a Domain Index on a LONG Column Before Converting to a LOB.....	18-2
	Preventing Generation of Redo Space on Tables Converted to LOB Data Types .....	18-2
	Using utldtree.sql to Determine Where Your Application Needs Change .....	18-2
	Converting Tables from LONG to LOB Data Types.....	18-3
	Using ALTER TABLE to Convert LONG Columns to LOB Columns .....	18-3
	Migration Issues .....	18-3
	Copying a LONG to a LOB Column Using the TO_LOB Operator.....	18-4
	Online Redefinition of Tables with LONG Columns.....	18-5
	Using Oracle Data Pump to Migrate a Database.....	18-7
	Migrating Applications from LONGs to LOBs .....	18-7
	LOB Columns Are Not Allowed in Clustered Tables.....	18-8
	LOB Columns Are Not Allowed in AFTER UPDATE OF Triggers.....	18-8
	Indexes on Columns Converted from LONG to LOB Data Types .....	18-8
	Empty LOBs Compared to NULL and Zero Length LONGs .....	18-9
	Overloading with Anchored Types.....	18-9
	Some Implicit Conversions Are Not Supported for LOB Data Types.....	18-10
 <b>Part V Using LOB APIs</b>		
<b>19</b>	<b>Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs</b>	
	Persistent LOB Operations .....	19-1
	Inserting a LOB into a Table .....	19-1
	Selecting a LOB from a Table .....	19-1
	Temporary LOB Operations .....	19-2
	Creating and Freeing a Temporary LOB .....	19-2
	Creating Persistent and Temporary LOBs in PL/SQL .....	19-3
	Freeing Temporary LOBs in OCI.....	19-4

## 20 Data Interface for Persistent LOBs

<b>Overview of the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs</b> .....	20-1
<b>Benefits of Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs</b> .....	20-2
<b>Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in PL/SQL</b> .....	20-2
Guidelines for Accessing LOB Columns Using the Data Interface in SQL and PL/SQL.....	20-3
Implicit Assignment and Parameter Passing .....	20-4
Passing CLOBs to SQL and PL/SQL Built-In Functions.....	20-5
Explicit Conversion Functions .....	20-5
Calling PL/SQL and C Procedures from SQL .....	20-5
Calling PL/SQL and C Procedures from PL/SQL.....	20-5
Binds of All Sizes in INSERT and UPDATE Operations.....	20-6
4000 Byte Limit on Results of a SQL Operator .....	20-6
Example of 4000 Byte Result Limit of a SQL Operator.....	20-6
Restrictions on Binds of More Than 4000 Bytes .....	20-7
Parallel DML Support for LOBs.....	20-7
Example: PL/SQL - Using Binds of More Than 4000 Bytes in INSERT and UPDATE .....	20-7
Using the Data Interface for LOBs with INSERT, UPDATE, and SELECT Operations.....	20-8
Using the Data Interface for LOBs in Assignments and Parameter Passing .....	20-8
Using the Data Interface for LOBs with PL/SQL Built-In Functions.....	20-9
<b>Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in OCI</b> .....	20-10
Binding LOB Datatypes in OCI.....	20-10
Defining LOB Datatypes in OCI .....	20-10
Using Multibyte Character Sets in OCI with the Data Interface for LOBs .....	20-11
Using OCI Functions to Perform INSERT or UPDATE on LOB Columns .....	20-11
Simple INSERTs or UPDATEs in One Piece .....	20-11
Using Piecewise INSERTs and UPDATEs with Polling.....	20-11
Piecewise INSERTs and UPDATEs with Callback.....	20-11
Array INSERT and UPDATE Operations.....	20-12
Using the Data Interface to Fetch LOB Data in OCI .....	20-12
Simple Fetch in One Piece.....	20-12
Piecewise Fetch with Polling.....	20-12
Piecewise with Callback.....	20-12
Array Fetch .....	20-13
PL/SQL and C Binds from OCI.....	20-13
Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "begin foo(:1); end;" Manner.....	20-13
Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "call foo(:1);" Manner .....	20-13
Example: C (OCI) - Binds of More than 4000 Bytes for INSERT and UPDATE.....	20-13
Using the Data Interface for LOBs in PL/SQL Binds from OCI on LOBs .....	20-14
Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "begin foo(:1); end;" Manner.....	20-14
Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "call foo(:1);" Manner .....	20-14
Binding LONG Data for LOB Columns in Binds Greater Than 4000 Bytes .....	20-15
Binding LONG Data to LOB Columns Using Piecewise INSERT with Polling.....	20-15
Binding LONG Data to LOB Columns Using Piecewise INSERT with Callback.....	20-16
Binding LONG Data to LOB Columns Using an Array INSERT .....	20-17
Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using a Simple Fetch.....	20-18
Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using Piecewise Fetch with Polling .....	20-19
Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using Piecewise Fetch with Callback .....	20-20



Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using an Array Fetch .....	20-21
<b>Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in Java .....</b>	<b>20-22</b>
<b>Using the Data Interface with Remote LOBs.....</b>	<b>20-22</b>
Non-Supported Syntax.....	20-22
Remote Data Interface Example in PL/SQL .....	20-23
Remote Data Interface Example in OCI.....	20-23
Remote Data Interface Examples in JDBC.....	20-24

## 21 LOB APIs for BFILE Operations

<b>Supported Environments for BFILE APIs .....</b>	<b>21-2</b>
<b>Accessing BFILES.....</b>	<b>21-3</b>
<b>Directory Objects.....</b>	<b>21-3</b>
Initializing a BFILE Locator .....	21-3
How to Associate Operating System Files with a BFILE .....	21-4
<b>BFILENAME and Initialization.....</b>	<b>21-5</b>
<b>Characteristics of the BFILE Data Type .....</b>	<b>21-5</b>
DIRECTORY Name Specification.....	21-5
On Windows Platforms.....	21-6
<b>BFILE Security .....</b>	<b>21-6</b>
Ownership and Privileges.....	21-6
Read Permission on a DIRECTORY Object.....	21-6
SQL DDL for BFILE Security .....	21-7
SQL DML for BFILE Security .....	21-7
Catalog Views on Directories .....	21-7
Guidelines for DIRECTORY Usage.....	21-8
BFILES in Shared Server (Multithreaded Server) Mode.....	21-8
External LOB (BFILE) Locators .....	21-9
When Two Rows in a BFILE Table Refer to the Same File .....	21-9
BFILE Locator Variable .....	21-9
Guidelines for BFILES.....	21-9
<b>Loading a LOB with BFILE Data.....</b>	<b>21-10</b>
<b>Opening a BFILE with OPEN .....</b>	<b>21-11</b>
<b>Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN.....</b>	<b>21-12</b>
<b>Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN .....</b>	<b>21-13</b>
<b>Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN .....</b>	<b>21-14</b>
<b>Displaying BFILE Data .....</b>	<b>21-15</b>
<b>Reading Data from a BFILE.....</b>	<b>21-15</b>
<b>Reading a Portion of BFILE Data Using SUBSTR.....</b>	<b>21-17</b>
<b>Comparing All or Parts of Two BFILES .....</b>	<b>21-17</b>
<b>Checking If a Pattern Exists in a BFILE Using INSTR.....</b>	<b>21-18</b>
<b>Determining Whether a BFILE Exists.....</b>	<b>21-19</b>
<b>Getting the Length of a BFILE.....</b>	<b>21-19</b>
<b>Assigning a BFILE Locator .....</b>	<b>21-20</b>
<b>Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE.....</b>	<b>21-21</b>
<b>Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator .....</b>	<b>21-21</b>
<b>Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE.....</b>	<b>21-22</b>
<b>Closing a BFILE with CLOSE .....</b>	<b>21-23</b>

Closing All Open BFILES with FILECLOSEALL .....	21-24
Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE.....	21-25

## 22 Using LOB APIs

Supported Environments.....	22-2
Appending One LOB to Another.....	22-4
Determining Character Set Form .....	22-5
Determining Character Set ID .....	22-5
Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE.....	22-6
Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE .....	22-7
Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE.....	22-9
PL/SQL: Loading Character Data from a BFILE into a LOB.....	22-10
PL/SQL: Loading Segments of Character Data into Different LOBs.....	22-10
Determining Whether a LOB is Open.....	22-10
Java (JDBC): Checking If a LOB Is Open .....	22-11
Checking If a CLOB Is Open .....	22-11
Checking If a BLOB Is Open.....	22-11
Displaying LOB Data .....	22-11
Reading Data from a LOB.....	22-13
LOB Array Read.....	22-14
Reading a Portion of a LOB (SUBSTR).....	22-20
Comparing All or Part of Two LOBs .....	22-21
Patterns: Checking for Patterns in a LOB Using INSTR .....	22-22
Length: Determining the Length of a LOB.....	22-22
Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB .....	22-23
Copying a LOB Locator .....	22-24
Equality: Checking If One LOB Locator Is Equal to Another .....	22-25
Determining Whether LOB Locator Is Initialized .....	22-25
Appending to a LOB .....	22-26
Writing Data to a LOB .....	22-27
LOB Array Write .....	22-29
Trimming LOB Data.....	22-35
Erasing Part of a LOB.....	22-35
Enabling LOB Buffering .....	22-36
Flushing the Buffer .....	22-37
Disabling LOB Buffering .....	22-38
Determining Whether a LOB instance Is Temporary .....	22-39
Java (JDBC): Determining Whether a BLOB Is Temporary .....	22-40
Converting a BLOB to a CLOB .....	22-40
Converting a CLOB to a BLOB .....	22-40
Ensuring Read Consistency.....	22-41

## A LOB Demonstration Files

PL/SQL LOB Demonstration Files.....	A-1
OCI LOB Demonstration Files .....	A-3
COM OO4O LOB Demonstration Files .....	A-4
Java LOB Demonstration Files .....	A-6

**Glossary**

**Index**



---

---

# Preface

This guide describes database features that support application development using SecureFiles and Large Object (LOB) datatypes. The information in this guide applies to all platforms, and does not include system-specific information.

## Audience

*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* is intended for programmers who develop new applications that use LOBs, and those who have previously implemented this technology and now want to take advantage of new features.

Efficient and secure storage of multimedia and unstructured data is increasingly important, and this guide is a key resource for this topic within the Oracle Application Developers documentation set.

### Feature Coverage and Availability

*Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide* contains information that describes the SecureFiles LOB and BasicFiles LOBLOB features and functionality of Oracle Database 11g Release 2 (11.2).

### Prerequisites for Using LOBs

Oracle Database includes all necessary resources for using LOBs in an application; however, there are some restrictions, described in "[LOB Rules and Restrictions](#)" on page 2-6 and "[Restrictions for LOBs in Partitioned Index-Organized Tables](#)" on page 11-17.

## Documentation Accessibility

Our goal is to make Oracle products, services, and supporting documentation accessible to all users, including users that are disabled. To that end, our documentation includes features that make information available to users of assistive technology. This documentation is available in HTML format, and contains markup to facilitate access by the disabled community. Accessibility standards will continue to evolve over time, and Oracle is actively engaged with other market-leading technology vendors to address technical obstacles so that our documentation can be accessible to all of our customers. For more information, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program Web site at <http://www.oracle.com/accessibility/>.

### Accessibility of Code Examples in Documentation

Screen readers may not always correctly read the code examples in this document. The conventions for writing code require that closing braces should appear on an

otherwise empty line; however, some screen readers may not always read a line of text that consists solely of a bracket or brace.

### **Accessibility of Links to External Web Sites in Documentation**

This documentation may contain links to Web sites of other companies or organizations that Oracle does not own or control. Oracle neither evaluates nor makes any representations regarding the accessibility of these Web sites.

### **Deaf/Hard of Hearing Access to Oracle Support Services**

To reach Oracle Support Services, use a telecommunications relay service (TRS) to call Oracle Support at 1.800.223.1711. An Oracle Support Services engineer will handle technical issues and provide customer support according to the Oracle service request process. Information about TRS is available at <http://www.fcc.gov/cgb/consumerfacts/trs.html>, and a list of phone numbers is available at <http://www.fcc.gov/cgb/dro/trsphonebk.html>.

## **Related Documents**

For more information, see the following manuals:

- *Oracle Database 2 Day Developer's Guide* is the entry point to the Oracle Database library for application developers. It explains general concepts behind development with Oracle Database, introduces basic features of SQL and PL/SQL, and provides references to in-depth information elsewhere in the Oracle Database library.
- *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* explains topics that experienced application developers reference repeatedly.
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference* presents PL/SQL, the Oracle procedural extension of SQL, an advanced fourth-generation programming language. Explains the concepts behind PL/SQL and illustrates every facet of the language.
- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* provides a complete description of PL/SQL packages and defined types supplied with Oracle Database. Packages are listed alphabetically with syntax, procedures and functions, and parameters described for each package.
- *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* describes Oracle Call Interface (OCI). You can use OCI to build third-generation language (3GL) applications in C or C++ that access Oracle Server.
- *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*: Oracle also provides the Pro\* series of precompilers, which allow you to embed SQL and PL/SQL in your application programs.
- *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide*: The Pro\*COBOL precompiler enables you to embed SQL and PL/SQL in your COBOL programs for access to Oracle Server.
- *Programmer's Guide to the Oracle Precompilers* and *Pro\*Fortran Supplement to the Oracle Precompilers Guide*: Use these manuals for Fortran precompiler programming to access Oracle Server.
- **Java**: Oracle Database offers the opportunity of working with Java in the database. The Oracle Java documentation set includes the following:
  - *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*

- *Oracle Database Java Developer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database JPublisher User's Guide*

Oracle Database *error message documentation* is only available in HTML. If you only have access to the Oracle Documentation CD, you can browse the error messages by range. Once you find the specific range, use your browser to locate the specific message. When connected to the Internet, you can search for a specific error message using the error message search feature of the Oracle online documentation.

Many of the examples in this book use the sample schemas, which are installed by default when you select the Basic Installation option with an Oracle Database installation. Refer to *Oracle Database Sample Schemas* for information on how these schemas were created and how you can use them yourself.

### **Oracle Multimedia**

You can access the Oracle development environment for multimedia technology in following ways:

- To build self-contained applications that integrate with the database, you can learn about how to use the Oracle extensibility framework in *Oracle Database Data Cartridge Developer's Guide*
- To use Oracle Multimedia applications, refer to the following:
  - *Oracle Multimedia Reference*.
  - *Oracle Multimedia User's Guide*

### **Basic References**

- For SQL information, see the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* and *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide*
- For information about using LOBs with Oracle XML DB, refer to *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide*
- For information about Oracle XML SQL with LOB data, refer to *Oracle Database Advanced Replication*
- For basic Oracle concepts, see *Oracle Database Concepts*.
- For information on using Oracle Data Pump, SQL\*Loader, and other database utilities, see *Oracle Database Utilities*

To download free release notes, installation documentation, white papers, or other collateral, please visit the Oracle Technology Network (OTN). You must register online before using OTN; registration is free and can be done at:

<http://www.oracle.com/technology/membership/>

If you have a username and password for OTN, then you can go directly to the documentation section of the OTN Web site at:

<http://www.oracle.com/technology/documentation/>

## **Conventions**

The following text conventions are used in this document:

<b>Convention</b>	<b>Meaning</b>
<b>boldface</b>	Boldface type indicates graphical user interface elements associated with an action, or terms defined in text or the glossary.
<i>italic</i>	Italic type indicates book titles, emphasis, or placeholder variables for which you supply particular values.
<code>monospace</code>	Monospace type indicates commands within a paragraph, URLs, code in examples, text that appears on the screen, or text that you enter.



---

---

# What's New in Oracle Database SecureFiles and Large Objects Developer's Guide?

This section describes the new features in the following releases:

- [LOB Features Introduced in Oracle Database 11g Release 2](#)
- [LOB Features Introduced in Oracle Database 11g Release 1](#)

## LOB Features Introduced in Oracle Database 11g Release 2

- The DBFS Client supports Windows platforms. See "[DBFS Prerequisites](#)" on page 6-1.
- CREATE TABLE and ALTER TABLE now have a LOW option for compression of SecureFiles. See "[CREATE TABLE Compression](#)" on page 4-9 and "[ALTER TABLE Compression](#)" on page 4-15.
- LOB prefetching has JDBC support, as does zero-copy input and output. Both improve performance by reducing server round trips. See "[LOB Prefetching to Improve Performance](#)" on page 13-29.
- The Oracle Database File System creates a standard file system interface for files and directories that are stored in database tables. See [Chapter 5, "Introducing the Oracle Database File System"](#) through [Chapter 10, "Creating a DBFS Store"](#).
- Database File System Links and Hierarchical Storage Management allow you to store SecureFiles content on any tape library (for example, those managed by RMAN). See "[PL/SQL Packages for SecureFiles LOBs and DBFS](#)" on page 4-24 and [Chapter 9, "DBFS Hierarchical Store"](#).

## LOB Features Introduced in Oracle Database 11g Release 1

Oracle SecureFiles add the following capabilities:

- Intelligent LOB compression enables users to explicitly compress data to save disk space. See "[About Compression](#)" on page 4-2, "[ALTER TABLE Compression](#)" on page 4-15, and "[ALTER TABLE Compression](#)" on page 4-15.
- Deduplication automatically detects duplicate LOB data and conserved space by only storing one copy of the LOB. See "[About Deduplication](#)" on page 4-2, "[ALTER TABLE Deduplication](#)" on page 4-16, and "[ALTER TABLE Deduplication](#)" on page 4-16.

- Encryption stores data in-place and makes it available for random reads and writes. See ["About Encryption"](#) on page 4-2, ["CREATE TABLE Encryption"](#) on page 4-12, and ["ALTER TABLE Encryption"](#) on page 4-17.
- LOB data path optimization includes logical cache above storage layer, read prefetching, new caching modes, vectored IO, and so on.
- New LOB APIs have been added to both PL/SQL packages and OCI interface to accommodate SecureFiles, as well as new or amended SQL commands. Existing OCI functions support the new SecureFiles.

SQL statements like `CREATE TABLE` and `ALTER TABLE` have new parameters to ensure proper configuration of SecureFiles. High performance space management includes changes to LOB SQL statements and `DBMS_SPACE` package changes. See [Chapter 4, "Using Oracle SecureFiles LOBs"](#).

OCI LOB prefetching improves performance. See ["Prefetching of LOB Data, Length, and Chunk Size"](#) on page 13-9.

---

---

# Introduction to Large Objects

This chapter introduces Large Objects (LOBs) and discusses how LOB data types are used in application development. This chapter contains these topics:

- [What Are Large Objects?](#)
- [Why Use Large Objects?](#)
- [Why Not Use LONGs?](#)
- [Different Kinds of LOBs](#)
- [Introducing LOB Locators](#)
- [Database Semantics for Internal and External LOBs](#)
- [Large Object Data Types](#)
- [Object Data Types and LOBs](#)
- [Storing and Creating Other Data Types with LOBs](#)

## What Are Large Objects?

**Large Objects (LOBs)** are a set of data types that are designed to hold large amounts of data. A LOB can hold up to a maximum size ranging from 8 terabytes to 128 terabytes depending on how your database is configured. Storing data in LOBs enables you to access and manipulate the data efficiently in your application.

## Why Use Large Objects?

This section introduces different types of data that you encounter when developing applications and discusses which kinds of data are suitable for large objects.

In the world today, applications must deal with the following kinds of data:

- Simple structured data.  
This data can be organized into simple tables that are structured based on business rules.
- Complex structured data  
This kind of data is complex in nature and is suited for the object-relational features of the Oracle database such as collections, references, and user-defined types.
- Semi-structured data

This kind of data has a logical structure that is not typically interpreted by the database. For example, an XML document that is processed by your application or an external service, can be thought of as semi-structured data. The database provides technologies such as Oracle XML DB, Advanced Queuing, and Messages to help your application work with semi-structured data.

- **Unstructured data**

This kind of data is not broken down into smaller logical structures and is not typically interpreted by the database or your application. A photographic image stored as a binary file is an example of unstructured data.

Large objects are suitable for these last two kinds of data: semi-structured data and unstructured data. Large objects features allow you to store these kinds of data in the database and in operating system files that are accessed from the database.

With the growth of the internet and content-rich applications, it has become imperative that the database support a data type that:

- Can store unstructured and semi-structured data in an efficient manner.
- Is optimized for large amounts of data.
- Provides a uniform way of accessing data stored within the database or outside the database.

## Using LOBs for Semi-structured Data

Examples of semi-structured data include document files such as XML documents or word processor files. These kinds of documents contain data in a logical structure that is processed or interpreted by an application, and is not broken down into smaller logical units when stored in the database.

Applications involving semi-structured data typically use large amounts of character data. The Character Large Object (CLOB) and National Character Large Object (NCLOB) data types are ideal for storing and manipulating this kind of data.

Binary File objects (BFILE data types) can also store character data. You can use BFILES to load read-only data from operating system files into CLOB or NCLOB instances that you then manipulate in your application.

## Using LOBs for Unstructured Data

Unstructured data cannot be decomposed into standard components. For example, data about an employee can be structured into a name, which is stored as a string; an identifier, such as an ID number, a salary and so on. A photograph, on the other hand, consists of a long stream of 1s and 0s. These bits are used to switch pixels on or off so that you can see the picture on a display, but are not broken down into any finer structure for database storage.

Also, unstructured data such as text, graphic images, still video clips, full motion video, and sound waveforms tends to be large in size. A typical employee record may be a few hundred bytes, while even small amounts of multimedia data can be thousands of times larger.

SQL data types that are ideal for large amounts of unstructured binary data include the BLOB data type (Binary Large Object) and the BFILE data type (Binary File object).

## Why Not Use LONGs?

The database supports LONG and LOB data types. When possible, change your existing applications to use LOBs instead of LONGs because of the added benefits that LOBs provide. LONG-to-LOB migration enables you to easily migrate your existing applications that access LONG columns, to use LOB columns.

**See Also:** [Chapter 18, "Migrating Columns from LONGs to LOBs"](#)

Applications developed for use with Oracle Database version 7 and earlier, used the LONG or LONG RAW data type to store large amounts of unstructured data.

With the Oracle8i and later versions of the database, using LOB data types is recommended for storing large amounts of structured and semi-structured data. LOB data types have several advantages over LONG and LONG RAW types including:

- **LOB Capacity:** LOBs can store much larger amounts of data. LOBs can store 4GB of data or more depending on your system configuration. LONG and LONG RAW types are limited to 2GB of data.
- **Number of LOB columns in a table:** A table can have multiple LOB columns. LOB columns in a table can be of any LOB type. In Oracle Database Release 7.3 and higher, tables are limited to a single LONG or LONG RAW column.
- **Random piece-wise access:** LOBs support random access to data, but LONGs support only sequential access.
- LOBs can also be object attributes.

## Different Kinds of LOBs

Different kinds of LOBs can be stored in the database or in external files.

---



---

**Note:** LOBs in the database are sometimes also referred to as *internal LOBs* or *internal persistent LOBs*.

---



---

### Internal LOBs

LOBs in the database are stored inside database tablespaces in a way that optimizes space and provides efficient access. The following SQL data types are supported for declaring internal LOBs: BLOB, CLOB, and NLOB. Details on these data types are given in "[Large Object Data Types](#)" on page 1-5.

#### Persistent and Temporary LOBs

Internal LOBs (LOBs in the database) can be either persistent or temporary. A persistent LOB is a LOB instance that exists in a table row in the database. A temporary LOB instance is created when you instantiate a LOB only within the scope of your local application.

A temporary instance becomes a persistent instance when you insert the instance into a table row.

Persistent LOBs use copy semantics and participate in database transactions. You can recover persistent LOBs in the event of transaction or media failure, and any changes to a persistent LOB value can be committed or rolled back. In other words, all the Atomicity Consistency Isolation Durability (ACID) properties that pertain to using database objects pertain to using persistent LOBs.

## External LOBs and the BFILE Data Type

External LOBs are data objects stored in operating system files, outside the database tablespaces. The database accesses external LOBs using the SQL data type `BFILE`. The `BFILE` data type is the only external LOB data type.

`BFILES` are read-only data types. The database allows read-only byte stream access to data stored in `BFILES`. You cannot write to a `BFILE` from within your application.

The database uses reference semantics with `BFILE` columns. Data stored in a table column of type `BFILE`, is physically located in an operating system file, not in the database tablespace.

You typically use `BFILES` to hold:

- Binary data that does not change while your application is running, such as graphics.
- Data that is loaded into other large object types, such as a `BLOB` or `CLOB` where the data can then be manipulated.
- Data that is appropriate for byte-stream access, such as multimedia.
- Read-only data that is relatively large in size, to avoid taking up large amounts database tablespace.

Any storage device accessed by your operating system can hold `BFILE` data, including hard disk drives, CD-ROMs, PhotoCDs and DVDs. The database can access `BFILES` provided the operating system supports stream-mode access to the operating system files.

---

---

**Note:** External LOBs do not participate in transactions. Any support for integrity and durability must be provided by the underlying file system as governed by the operating system.

---

---

## Introducing LOB Locators

A LOB instance has a locator and a value. The LOB locator is a reference to where the LOB value is physically stored. The LOB value is the data stored in the LOB.

When you use a LOB in an operation such as passing a LOB as a parameter, you are actually passing a LOB locator. For the most part, you can work with a LOB instance in your application without being concerned with the semantics of LOB locators. There is no requirement to dereference LOB locators, as is required with pointers in some programming languages.

There are some issues regarding the semantics of LOB locators and how LOB values are stored that you should be aware of. These details are covered in the context of the discussion where they apply throughout this guide.

**See Also:**

- ["LOB Locator and LOB Value"](#) on page 2-2
- ["LOB Locators and BFILE Locators"](#) on page 2-3
- ["LOB Storage Parameters"](#) on page 11-4

## Database Semantics for Internal and External LOBs

In all programmatic environments, database semantics differ between internal LOBs and external LOBs as follows:

- Internal LOBs use *copy semantics*.

With copy semantics, both the LOB locator and LOB value are logically copied during insert, update, or assignment operations. This ensures that each table cell or each variable containing a LOB, holds a unique LOB instance.

- External LOBs use *reference semantics*.

With reference semantics, only the LOB locator is copied during insert operations. (Note that update operations do not apply to external LOBs as external LOBs are read-only. This is explained in more detail later in this section.)

## Large Object Data Types

Table 1–1 describes each large object data type supported by the database and describes the kind of data each data type is typically used for. The names of data types given here are the SQL data types provided by the database. In general, the descriptions given for the data types in this table and the rest of this book also apply to the corresponding data types provided for other programmatic environments. Also, note that the term *LOB* generally refers to the set of all large object data types.

**Table 1–1 Large Object Data Types**

SQL Data Type	Description
BLOB	Binary Large Object Stores any kind of data in binary format. Typically used for multimedia data such as images, audio, and video.
CLOB	Character Large Object Stores string data in the database character set format. Used for large strings or documents that use the database character set exclusively. Characters in the database character set are in a fixed width format.
NCLOB	National Character Set Large Object Stores string data in National Character Set format. Used for large strings or documents in the National Character Set. Supports characters of varying width format.
BFILE	External Binary File A binary file stored outside of the database in the host operating system file system, but accessible from database tables. BFILES can be accessed from your application on a <b>read-only</b> basis. Use BFILES to store static data, such as image data, that is not manipulated in applications.  Any kind of data, that is, any operating system file, can be stored in a BFILE. For example, you can store character data in a BFILE and then load the BFILE data into a CLOB specifying the character set upon loading.

## Object Data Types and LOBs

You can declare LOB data types as fields, or members, of object data types. For example, you can have an attribute of type CLOB on an object type. In general, there is no difference in the usage of a LOB instance in a LOB column and the usage of a LOB instance that is a member of an object data type. Any difference in usage is called out when it applies. When used in this guide, the term **LOB attribute** refers to a LOB

instance that is a member of an object data type. Unless otherwise specified, discussions that apply to LOB columns also apply to LOB attributes.

## Storing and Creating Other Data Types with LOBs

You can use LOBs to create other user-defined data types or store other data types as LOBs. This section discusses some of the data types provided with the database as examples of data types that are stored or created with LOB types.

### VARRAYs Stored as LOBs

An instance of type `VARRAY` in the database is stored as an array of LOBs when you create a table in the following scenarios:

- If the `VARRAY` storage clause—`VARRAY varray_item STORE AS`—is not specified, and the declared size of varray data is more than 4000 bytes.
- If the varray column properties are specified using the `STORE AS LOB` clause—`VARRAY varray_item STORE AS LOB ...`

### XMLType Columns Stored as CLOBs

A good example of how LOB data types can be used to store other data types is the `XMLType` data type. The `XMLType` data type is sometimes stored as a CLOB. Setting up your table or column to store `XMLType` data types as CLOBs enables you to store schema-less XML documents in the database.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle XML DB Developer's Guide* for information on creating `XMLType` tables and columns and how XML is stored in CLOBs.
- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*, for information about working with XML.

### LOBs Used in Oracle Multimedia

Oracle Multimedia uses LOB data types to create data types specialized for use in multimedia application such as Multimedia `ORDAudio`, `ORDDoc`, `ORDImage`, and `ORDVideo`. Oracle Multimedia uses the database infrastructure to define object types, methods, and LOBs necessary to represent these specialized types of data in the database.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Multimedia User's Guide* for more information on using Oracle Multimedia.
- *Oracle Multimedia Reference* for more information on using Oracle Multimedia data types.



# Part I

---

## Getting Started

This part gives an introduction to Large Objects and introduces general concepts for using LOBs in your application.

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 1, "Introduction to Large Objects"](#)
- [Chapter 2, "Working with LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 3, "Managing LOBs: Database Administration"](#)



---

---

## Working with LOBs

This chapter describes the usage and semantics of LOBs required for application development, and covers various techniques for working with LOBs.

Most of the discussions in this chapter regarding persistent LOBs assume that you are dealing with existing LOBs in tables. The task of creating tables with LOB columns is typically performed by your database administrator.

### See Also:

- [Chapter 4, "Using Oracle SecureFiles LOBs"](#) for creating LOBs using the SecureFiles paradigm
- [Chapter 11, "LOB Storage"](#) for storage parameters used in creating LOBs

This chapter contains these topics:

- [LOB Column States](#)
- [Locking a Row Containing a LOB](#)
- [Opening and Closing LOBs](#)
- [LOB Locator and LOB Value](#)
- [LOB Locators and BFILE Locators](#)
- [Accessing LOBs](#)
- [LOB Rules and Restrictions](#)

## LOB Column States

The techniques you use when accessing a cell in a LOB column differ depending on the state of the given cell. A cell in a LOB Column can be in one of the following states:

- **NULL**  
The table cell is created, but the cell holds no locator or value.
- **Empty**  
A LOB instance with a locator exists in the cell, but it has no value. The length of the LOB is zero.
- **Populated**  
A LOB instance with a locator and a value exists in the cell.

## Locking a Row Containing a LOB

You can lock a row containing a LOB to prevent other database users from writing to the LOB during a transaction. To lock a row containing a LOB, specify the `FOR UPDATE` clause when you select the row. While the row is locked, other users cannot lock or update the LOB, until you end your transaction.

## Opening and Closing LOBs

The LOB APIs include operations that enable you to explicitly open and close a LOB instance. You can open and close a persistent LOB instance of any type: `BLOB`, `CLOB`, `NCLOB`, or `BFILE`. You open a LOB to achieve one or both of the following results:

- Open the LOB in read-only mode.  
This ensures that the LOB (both the LOB locator and LOB value) cannot be changed in your session until you explicitly close the LOB. For example, you can open the LOB to ensure that the LOB is not changed by some other part of your program while you are using the LOB in a critical operation. After you perform the operation, you can then close the LOB.
- Open the LOB in read write mode—persistent `BLOB`, `CLOB`, or `NCLOB` instances only.  
Opening a LOB in read write mode defers any index maintenance on the LOB column until you close the LOB. Opening a LOB in read write mode is only useful if there is an extensible index on the LOB column and you do not want the database to perform index maintenance every time you write to the LOB. This technique can increase the performance of your application if you are doing several write operations on the LOB while it is open.

If you open a LOB, then you must close the LOB at some point later in your session. This is the only requirement for an open LOB. While a LOB instance is open, you can perform as many operations as you want on the LOB—provided the operations are allowed in the given mode.

**See Also:** ["Opening Persistent LOBs with the OPEN and CLOSE Interfaces"](#) on page 12-9 for details on usage of these APIs.

## LOB Locator and LOB Value

There are two techniques that you can use to access and modify LOB values:

- [Using the Data Interface for LOBs](#)
- [Using the LOB Locator to Access and Modify LOB Values](#)

## Using the Data Interface for LOBs

You can perform bind and define operations on `CLOB` and `BLOB` columns in C applications using the data interface for LOBs in OCI. Doing so, enables you to insert or select out data in a LOB column without using a LOB locator as follows:

- Using a bind variable associated with a LOB column to insert character data into a `CLOB`, or RAW data into a `BLOB`.
- Using a define operation to define an output buffer in your application that holds character data selected from a `CLOB`, or RAW data selected from a `BLOB`.

**See Also:** [Chapter 20, "Data Interface for Persistent LOBs"](#) for more information on implicit assignment of LOBs to other data types.

## Using the LOB Locator to Access and Modify LOB Values

The value of a LOB instance stored in the database can be accessed through a LOB locator, a reference to the location of the LOB value. Database tables store only locators in CLOB, BLOB, NCLOB and BFILE columns. Note the following with respect to LOB locators and values:

- To access or manipulate a LOB value, you pass the LOB locator to the various LOB APIs.
- A LOB locator can be assigned to any LOB instance of the same type.
- The characteristics of a LOB as being temporary or persistent have nothing to do with the locator. The characteristics of temporary or persistent apply only to the LOB instance.

## LOB Locators and BFILE Locators

There are differences between the semantics of locators for LOB types BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB on one hand, and the semantics of locators for the BFILE type on the other hand:

- For LOB types BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB, the LOB column stores a locator to the LOB value. Each LOB instance has its own distinct LOB locator and also a distinct copy of the LOB value.
- For initialized BFILE columns, the row stores a locator to the external operating system file that holds the value of the BFILE. Each BFILE instance in a given row has its own distinct locator; however, two different rows can contain a BFILE locator that points to the same operating system file.

Regardless of where the value of a LOB is stored, a locator is stored in the table row of any initialized LOB column. Note that when the term locator is used without an identifying prefix term, it refers to both LOB locators and BFILE locators. Also, when you select a LOB from a table, the LOB returned is always a temporary LOB. For more information on working with locators for temporary LOBs, see ["LOBs Returned from SQL Functions"](#) on page 16-9.

## Table print\_media

The table `print_media` of the Oracle Database Sample Schema `PM`, is used in many examples in this documentation and is defined as:

```
CREATE TABLE print_media
  ( product_id      NUMBER(6)
    , ad_id          NUMBER(6)
    , ad_composite   BLOB
    , ad_sourcetext  CLOB
    , ad_finaltext  CLOB
    , ad_fltextn    NCLOB
    , ad_textdocs_ntab textdoc_tab
    , ad_photo       BLOB
    , ad_graphic     BFILE
    , ad_header      adheader_ttyp
  ) NESTED TABLE ad_textdocs_ntab STORE AS textdocs_neststetab;
```

**See Also:** ["Creating a Table Containing One or More LOB Columns"](#) on page 15-1 for the details of how `print_media` and its associated tables and files are created.

## Initializing a LOB Column to Contain a Locator

Any LOB instance that is `NULL` does not have a locator. Before you can pass a LOB instance to any LOB API routine, the instance must contain a locator. For example, you can select a `NULL` LOB from a row, but you cannot pass the instance to the PL/SQL `DBMS_LOB.READ` procedure. The following sub-sections describe how to initialize a persistent LOB column and how to initialize a `BFILE` column.

### Initializing a Persistent LOB Column

Before you can start writing data to a persistent LOB using the supported programmatic environment interfaces (PL/SQL, OCI, OCCI, Pro\*C/C++, Pro\*COBOL, Visual Basic, Java, or OLEDB), the LOB column/attribute must be made non-`NULL`, that is, it must contain a locator.

You can accomplish this by initializing the persistent LOB to empty in an `INSERT/UPDATE` statement using the functions `EMPTY_BLOB` for `BLOBs` or `EMPTY_CLOB` for `CLOBs` and `NCLOBs`.

---

---

**Note:** You can use SQL to populate a LOB column with data even if it contains a `NULL` value.

---

---

**See Also:** [Chapter 11, "LOB Storage"](#) for more information on initializing LOB columns.

Running the `EMPTY_BLOB()` or `EMPTY_CLOB()` function in and of itself does not raise an exception. However, using a LOB locator that was set to empty to access or manipulate the LOB value in any PL/SQL `DBMS_LOB` or OCI function raises an exception.

Valid places where *empty* LOB locators may be used include the `VALUES` clause of an `INSERT` statement and the `SET` clause of an `UPDATE` statement.

### See Also:

- ["Directory Objects"](#) on page 21-3 for details of `CREATE DIRECTORY` and `BFILENAME` usage
- `CREATE DIRECTORY` statement in *Oracle Database Reference*. for more information about creating a directory object
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*, `CREATE DIRECTORY` statement

---

---

**Note:** Character strings are inserted using the default character set for the instance.

---

---

The following `INSERT` statement in the `PM`, table `print_media`:

- Populates `ad_sourcetext` with the character string 'my Oracle',
- Sets `ad_composite`, `ad_finaltext`, and `ad_fltextn` to an empty value,

- Sets `ad_photo` to `NULL`, and
- Initializes `ad_graphic` to point to the file `my_picture` located under the logical directory `my_directory_object`.

```
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY my_directory_object AS 'oracle/work/tklocal';
INSERT INTO print_media VALUES (1726, 1, EMPTY_BLOB(),
    'my Oracle', EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(),
    NULL, NULL, BFILENAME('my_directory_object', 'my_picture'), NULL);
```

Similarly, the LOB attributes for the `ad_header` column in `print_media` can be initialized to `NULL`, empty, or a character/raw literal, which is shown in the following statement:

```
INSERT INTO print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_header)
VALUES (1726, 1, adheader_typ('AD FOR ORACLE', sysdate,
    'Have Grid', EMPTY_BLOB()));
```

#### See Also:

- ["Inserting a Row by Selecting a LOB From Another Table"](#) on page 15-4
- ["Inserting a LOB Value Into a Table"](#) on page 15-5
- ["Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable"](#) on page 15-6
- ["OCILobLocator Pointer Assignment"](#) on page 13-11 for details on LOB locator semantics in OCI

### Initializing BFILES

Before you can access `BFILE` values using LOB APIs, the `BFILE` column or attribute must be made non-`NULL`. You can initialize the `BFILE` column to point to an external operating system file by using the `BFILENAME` function.

**See Also:** ["Accessing BFILES"](#) on page 21-3 for more information on initializing `BFILE` columns.

## Accessing LOBs

You can access a LOB instance using the following techniques:

- [Accessing a LOB Using SQL](#)
- [Accessing a LOB Using the Data Interface](#)
- [Accessing a LOB Using the Locator Interface](#)

### Accessing a LOB Using SQL

Support for columns that use LOB data types is built into many SQL functions. This support enables you to use SQL semantics to access LOB columns in SQL. In most cases, you can use the same SQL semantics on a LOB column that you would use on a `VARCHAR2` column.

**See Also:** For details on SQL semantics support for LOBs, see [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#).

## Accessing a LOB Using the Data Interface

You can select a LOB directly into CHAR or RAW buffers using the LONG-to-LOB API in OCI and PL/SQL. In the following PL/SQL example, `ad_finaltext` is selected into a VARCHAR2 buffer `final_ad`.

```
DECLARE
    final_ad VARCHAR(32767);
BEGIN
    SELECT ad_finaltext INTO final_ad FROM print_media
        WHERE product_id = 2056 and ad_id = 12001 ;
    /* PUT_LINE can only output up to 255 characters at a time */
    ...
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE(final_ad);
    /* more calls to read final_ad */
    ...
END;
```

**See Also:** For more details on accessing LOBs using the data interface, see [Chapter 20, "Data Interface for Persistent LOBs"](#).

## Accessing a LOB Using the Locator Interface

You can access and manipulate a LOB instance by passing the LOB locator to the LOB APIs supplied with the database. An extensive set of LOB APIs is provided with each supported programmatic environment. In OCI, a LOB locator is mapped to a locator pointer which is used to access the LOB value.

**Note:** In all environments, including OCI, the LOB APIs operate on the LOB value implicitly—there is no requirement to dereference the LOB locator.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 13, "Overview of Supplied LOB APIs"](#)
- ["OCILobLocator Pointer Assignment"](#) on page 13-11 for details on LOB locator semantics in OCI

## LOB Rules and Restrictions

This section provides details on LOB rules and restrictions.

### Rules for LOB Columns

LOB columns are subject to the following rules and restrictions:

- You cannot specify a LOB as a primary key column.
- Oracle Database has limited support for remote LOBs. Remote LOBs are supported in three ways.

#### 1. Create table as select or insert as select.

```
CREATE TABLE t AS SELECT * FROM table1@remote_site;
INSERT INTO t SELECT * FROM table1@remote_site;
UPDATE t SET lobcol = (SELECT lobcol FROM table1@remote_site);
INSERT INTO table1@remote_site SELECT * FROM local_table;
UPDATE table1@remote_site SET lobcol = (SELECT lobcol FROM local_table);
DELETE FROM table1@remote_site <WHERE clause involving non_lob_columns>
```



In statements structured like the preceding examples, only standalone LOB columns are allowed in the select list.

**2. Functions on remote LOBs returning scalars.** SQL and PL/SQL functions having a LOB parameter and returning a scalar data type are supported. Other SQL functions and DBMS\_LOB APIs are not supported for use with remote LOB columns. For example, the following statement is supported:

```
CREATE TABLE tab AS SELECT DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH@dbs2(clob_col) len FROM tab@dbs2;
CREATE TABLE tab AS SELECT LENGTH(clob_col) len FROM tab@dbs2;
```

However, the following statement is not supported because DBMS\_LOB.SUBSTR returns a LOB:

```
CREATE TABLE tab AS SELECT DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR(clob_col) from tab@dbs2;
```

**3. Data Interface for remote LOBs.** You can insert a character or binary buffer into a remote CLOB or BLOB, and select a remote CLOB or BLOB into a character or binary buffer. For example (in PL/SQL):

```
SELECT clobcol1, type1.blobattr INTO varchar_buf1, raw_buf2 FROM
    table1@remote_site;
INSERT INTO table1@remotesite (clobcol1, type1.blobattr) VALUES varchar_buf1,
    raw_buf2;
INSERT INTO table1@remotesite (lobcol) VALUES ('test');
UPDATE table1 SET lobcol = 'xxx';
```

These are the only supported syntax involving LOBs in remote tables. No other usage is supported.

- Clusters cannot contain LOBs, either as key or nonkey columns.
- The following data structures are supported only as temporary instances. You cannot store these instances in database tables:
  - VARRAY of any LOB type
  - VARRAY of any type containing a LOB type, such as an object type with a LOB attribute
  - ANYDATA of any LOB type
  - ANYDATA of any type containing a LOB
- You cannot specify LOB columns in the ORDER BY clause of a query, or in the GROUP BY clause of a query or in an aggregate function.
- You cannot specify a LOB column in a SELECT... DISTINCT or SELECT... UNIQUE statement or in a join. However, you can specify a LOB attribute of an object type column in a SELECT... DISTINCT statement or in a query that uses the UNION or MINUS set operator if the column's object type has a MAP or ORDER function defined on it.
- The first (INITIAL) extent of a LOB segment must contain at least three database blocks.
- The minimum extent size is 14 blocks. For an 8K block size (the default), this is equivalent to 112K.
- When creating an AFTER UPDATE DML trigger, you cannot specify a LOB column in the UPDATE OF clause.

- You cannot specify a LOB column as part of an index key. However, you can specify a LOB column in the indextype specification of a domain index. In addition, Oracle Text lets you define an index on a CLOB column.
- In an INSERT... AS SELECT operation, you can bind up to 4000 bytes of data to LOB columns and attributes.
- If a table has both LONG and LOB columns, you cannot bind more than 4000 bytes of data to both the LONG and LOB columns in the same SQL statement. However, you can bind more than 4000 bytes of data to either the LONG or the LOB column.

---

**Note:** For a table on which you have defined an AFTER UPDATE DML trigger, if you use OCI functions or DBMS\_LOB package to change the value of a LOB column or the LOB attribute of an object type column, the database does not fire the DML trigger.

---

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 4, "Using Oracle SecureFiles LOBs"](#) for the SecureFiles capabilities (encryption, compression, and deduplication).
- ["Restrictions for LOBs in Partitioned Index-Organized Tables"](#) on page 11-17
- [Chapter 18, "Migrating Columns from LONGs to LOBs"](#) under ["Migrating Applications from LONGs to LOBs"](#) on page 18-7, describes LONG to LOB migration limitations for clustered tables, replication, triggers, domain indexes, and function-based indexes.
- ["Unsupported Use of LOBs in SQL"](#) on page 16-8 for restrictions on SQL semantics.
- For details on the INITIAL extent of a LOB segment, see ["Restriction on First Extent of a LOB Segment"](#) on page 11-3.
- LOBs in partitioned index-organized tables are subject to other restrictions. See ["Restrictions for LOBs in Partitioned Index-Organized Tables"](#) on page 11-17 for more information.
- ["Using the Data Interface with Remote LOBs"](#) on page 20-22

## Restrictions for LOB Operations

Other general LOB restrictions include the following:

- In SQL Loader, A field read from a LOB cannot be used as an argument to a clause. See ["Database Utilities for Loading Data into LOBs"](#) on page 3-1.
- Session migration is not supported for BFILES in shared server (multithreaded server) mode. This implies that operations on open BFILES can persist beyond the end of a call to a shared server. In shared server sessions, BFILE operations are bound to one shared server, they cannot migrate from one server to another.
- Case-insensitive searches on CLOB columns often do not succeed. For example, to do a case-insensitive search on a CLOB column:

```
ALTER SESSION SET NLS_COMP=LINGUISTIC;
ALTER SESSION SET NLS_SORT=BINARY_CI;
SELECT * FROM ci_test WHERE LOWER(clob_col) LIKE 'aa%';
```

The select fails without the LOWER function. Oracle Text does do case-insensitive searches. Use DEMS\_LOB.INSTR() as another alternative. See [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#).



---

---

## Managing LOBs: Database Administration

This chapter describes administrative tasks that must be performed to set up, maintain, and use a database that contains LOBs.

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Database Utilities for Loading Data into LOBs](#)
- [Managing Temporary LOBs](#)
- [Managing BFILEs](#)
- [Changing Tablespace Storage for a LOB](#)

### Database Utilities for Loading Data into LOBs

The following utilities are recommended for bulk loading data into LOB columns as part of database setup or maintenance tasks:

- SQL\*Loader
- Oracle Data Pump

---

---

**Note:** Application Developers: If you are loading data into a LOB in your application, then using the LOB APIs is recommended. See [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#) for details on APIs that allow you to load LOBs from files.

---

---

### Using SQL\*Loader to Load LOBs

There are two general techniques for using SQL\*Loader to load data into LOBs:

- Loading data from a primary data file
- Loading from a secondary data file using `LOBFILES`

Consider the following issues when loading LOBs with SQL\*Loader:

- For SQL\*Loader conventional path loads, failure to load a particular LOB does not result in the rejection of the record containing that LOB; instead, the record ends up containing an empty LOB.

For SQL\*Loader direct-path loads, the LOB could be *empty* or *truncated*. LOBs are sent in pieces to the server for loading. If there is an error, then the LOB piece with the error is discarded and the rest of that LOB is not loaded. In other words, if the entire LOB with the error is contained in the first piece, then that LOB column is either empty or truncated.

- When loading from LOBFILES specify the maximum length of the field corresponding to a LOB-type column. If the maximum length is specified, then it is taken as a hint to help optimize memory usage. It is important that the maximum length specification does not underestimate the true maximum length.
- When using SQL\*Loader direct-path load, loading LOBs can take up substantial memory. If the message "SQL\*Loader 700 (out of memory)" appears when loading LOBs, then internal code is probably batching up more rows in each load call than can be supported by your operating system and process memory. A work-around is to use the ROWS option to read a smaller number of rows in each data save.
- You can also use the Direct Path API to load LOBs.
- Using LOBFILES is recommended when loading columns containing XML data in CLOBs or XMLType columns. Whether you perform a direct-path load or a conventional path load with SQL\*Loader depends on whether you must validate XML documents upon loading.
  - If the XML document must be validated upon loading, then use conventional path load.
  - If it is not necessary to ensure that the XML document is valid or you can safely assume that the XML document is valid, then you can perform a direct-path load. Performance is higher when you use direct-path load because the overhead of XML validation is incurred.

A *conventional path load* executes SQL INSERT statements to populate tables in an Oracle database. A direct path load eliminates much of the Oracle database overhead by formatting Oracle data blocks and writing the data blocks directly to the database files.

A *direct-path load* does not compete with other users for database resources, so it can usually load data at near disk speed. Considerations inherent to direct path loads, such as restrictions, security, and backup implications, are discussed in Oracle Database Utilities.

- Tables to be loaded must exist in the database. SQL\*Loader never creates tables. It loads existing tables that either contain data or are empty.
- The following privileges are required for a load:
  - You must have INSERT privileges on the table to be loaded.
  - You must have DELETE privilege on the table to be loaded, when using the REPLACE or TRUNCATE option to empty out the old data before loading the new data in its place.

**See Also:** For details on using SQL\*Loader to load LOBs and other details on SQL\*Loader usage, refer to the *Oracle Database Utilities* guide.

## Using SQL\*Loader to Populate a BFILE Column

This section describes how to load data from files in the file system into a BFILE column.

**See Also:** ["Supported Environments for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2

Note that the BFILE data type stores unstructured *binary data* in operating system files outside the database. A BFILE column or attribute stores a file *locator* that points to a server-side external file containing the data.

---



---

**Note:** A particular file to be loaded as a BFILE does not have to actually exist at the time of loading.

---



---

SQL\*Loader assumes that the necessary DIRECTORY objects have been created.

**See Also:** See "Directory Objects" on page 21-3 and the sections following it for more information on creating directory objects.

A control file field corresponding to a BFILE column consists of column name followed by the BFILE directive.

The BFILE directive takes as arguments a DIRECTORY object name followed by a BFILE name. Both of these can be provided as string constants, or they can be dynamically sourced through some other field.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Utilities* for details on SQL\*Loader syntax.

The following two examples illustrate the loading of BFILES.

---



---

**Note:** You may be required to set up the following data structures for certain examples to work (you are prompted for the password):

```
CONNECT system
Enter password:
Connected.
GRANT CREATE ANY DIRECTORY to samp;
CONNECT samp
Enter password:
Connected.
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY adgraphic_photo as '/tmp';
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY adgraphic_dir as '/tmp';
```

---



---

In the following example only the file name is specified dynamically.

Control file:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE sample9.dat
INTO TABLE Print_media
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ','
(product_id INTEGER EXTERNAL(6),
FileName FILLER CHAR(30),
ad_graphic BFILE(CONSTANT "modem_graphic_2268_21001", FileName))
```

Data file:

```
007, modem_2268.jpg,
008, monitor_3060.jpg,
009, keyboard_2056.jpg,
```

---



---

**Note:** product\_ID defaults to (255) if a size is not specified. It is mapped to the file names in the data file. ADGRAPHIC\_PHOTO is the directory where all files are stored. ADGRAPHIC\_DIR is a DIRECTORY object created previously.

---



---

In the following example, the BFILE and the DIRECTORY object are specified dynamically.

Control file:

```
LOAD DATA
INFILE sample10.dat
INTO TABLE Print_media
FIELDS TERMINATED BY ','
(
  product_id INTEGER EXTERNAL(6),
  ad_graphic BFILE (DirName, FileName),
  FileName FILLER CHAR(30),
  DirName FILLER CHAR(30)
)
```

Data file:

```
007,monitor_3060.jpg,ADGRAPHIC_PHOTO,
008,modem_2268.jpg,ADGRAPHIC_PHOTO,
009,keyboard_2056.jpg,ADGRAPHIC_DIR,
```

---



---

**Note:** DirName FILLER CHAR (30) is mapped to the data file field containing the directory name corresponding to the file being loaded.

---



---

## Using Oracle Data Pump to Transfer LOB Data

You can use Oracle Data Pump to transfer LOB data from one database to another.

**See Also:** For details on using Oracle Data Pump, refer to the *Oracle Database Utilities* guide.

## Managing Temporary LOBs

The database keeps track of temporary LOBs in each session, and provides a `v$` view called `v$temporary_lobs`. From the session, the application can determine which user owns the temporary LOB. As a database administrator, you can use this view to monitor and guide any emergency cleanup of temporary space used by temporary LOBs.

## Managing Temporary Tablespace for Temporary LOBs

Temporary tablespace is used to store temporary LOB data. As a database administrator you control data storage resources for temporary LOB data by controlling user access to temporary tablespaces and by the creation of different temporary tablespaces.

**See Also:** Refer to the *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for details on managing temporary tablespaces.

## Managing BFILES

This section describes administrative tasks for managing databases that contain BFILES.



## Rules for Using Directory Objects and BFILES

When creating a directory object or BFILES, ensure that the following conditions are met:

- The operating system file must not be a symbolic or hard link.
- The operating system directory path named in the Oracle DIRECTORY object must be an existing operating system directory path.
- The operating system directory path named in the Oracle DIRECTORY object should not contain any symbolic links in its components.

## Setting Maximum Number of Open BFILES

A limited number of BFILES can be open simultaneously in each session. The initialization parameter, `SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES` defines an upper limit on the number of simultaneously open files in a session.

The default value for this parameter is 10. That is, you can open a maximum of 10 files at the same time in each session if the default value is used. If you want to alter this limit, then the database administrator can change the value of this parameter in the `init.ora` file. For example:

```
SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES=20
```

If the number of unclosed files reaches the `SESSION_MAX_OPEN_FILES` value, then you cannot open additional files in the session. To close all open files, use the `DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSEALL` call.

## Changing Tablespace Storage for a LOB

As the database administrator, you can use the following techniques to change the default storage for a LOB after the table has been created:

- **Using ALTER TABLE... MODIFY:** You can change LOB tablespace storage as follows:

---



---

### Note:

- The `ALTER TABLE` syntax for modifying an existing LOB column uses the `MODIFY LOB` clause, not the `LOB...STORE AS` clause. The `LOB...STORE AS` clause is only for newly added LOB columns.
  - There are two kinds of LOB storage clauses: `LOB_storage_clause` and `modify_LOB_storage_clause`. In the `ALTER TABLE MODIFY LOB` statement, you can only specify the `modify_LOB_storage_clause`.
- 
- 

```
ALTER TABLE test MODIFY
LOB (lob1)
STORAGE (
NEXT          4M
MAXEXTENTS   100
PCTINCREASE   50
)
```

- **Using ALTER TABLE... MOVE:** You can also use the MOVE clause of the ALTER TABLE statement to change LOB tablespace storage. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE test MOVE
TABLESPACE tbs1
LOB (lob1, lob2)
STORE AS (
TABLESPACE tbs2
DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW);
```

# Part II

---

## SecureFiles LOBs

This part covers issues that you must consider when designing applications that use SecureFiles, stores, and Oracle Database File System.

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 4, "Using Oracle SecureFiles LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 5, "Introducing the Oracle Database File System"](#)
- [Chapter 6, "DBFS File System Client"](#)
- [Chapter 7, "DBFS Content API"](#)
- [Chapter 8, "DBFS SecureFiles Store"](#)
- [Chapter 9, "DBFS Hierarchical Store"](#)
- [Chapter 10, "Creating a DBFS Store"](#)



---

---

## Using Oracle SecureFiles LOBs

This chapter describes how to use SecureFiles LOBs, which were introduced to extend the original BasicFiles LOB implementation.

This chapter contains these topics:

- [About SecureFiles LOBs](#)
- [Using CREATE TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs](#)
- [Using ALTER TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs](#)
- [Database File System Links](#)
- [Initialization Parameter db\\_securefile for SecureFiles LOBs](#)
- [Compatibility and Upgrading](#)
- [Migrating Columns from BasicFiles LOBs to SecureFiles LOBs](#)
- [PL/SQL Packages for SecureFiles LOBs and DBFS](#)

### About SecureFiles LOBs

Beginning with Oracle Database 11g Release 1, Oracle introduced SecureFiles, a new LOB storage architecture. SecureFiles LOBs are created when the storage keyword `SECUREFILE` appears in the `CREATE TABLE` statement. The original LOB storage architecture, BasicFiles LOBs, is the default storage. It is in effect if the keyword `SECUREFILE` is not used, or if the keyword `BASICFILE` is used in the `CREATE TABLE` statement.

The following sections describe LOB storage characteristics used when designing, creating, and modifying tables with LOB column types. The database administrator may use the `db_securefile` initialization parameter in the `init.ora` file to modify initial settings.

Oracle recommends that you enable compression, deduplication, or encryption through the `CREATE TABLE` statement. If you enable these features through the `ALTER TABLE` statement, *all* SecureFiles LOB data in the table is read, modified, and written; this causes the database to lock the table during a potentially lengthy operation.

This section contains the following topics:

- [About Compression](#)
- [About Deduplication](#)
- [About Encryption](#)

## About Compression

SecureFiles Intelligent Compression, available with the Oracle Advanced Compression Option, seamlessly analyses SecureFiles LOB data and compresses to save disk space.

Note that you must have a license for the Oracle Advanced Compression Option before implementing SecureFiles Intelligent Compression. See *Oracle Database Licensing Information* for more information.

## About Deduplication

SecureFiles Intelligent Deduplication, available with the Oracle Advanced Compression Option, enables Oracle Database to automatically detect duplicate LOB data within a LOB column or partition, and conserve space by storing only one copy of the data.

Note that you must have a license for the Oracle Advanced Compression Option before implementing SecureFiles Intelligent Deduplication. See *Oracle Database Licensing Information* for more information.

Note also that Oracle Streams does not support SecureFiles LOBs that are deduplicated.

## About Encryption

SecureFiles Intelligent Encryption, available with the Oracle Advanced Security Option, introduces a new encryption facility for LOBs. The data is encrypted using Transparent Data Encryption (TDE), which allows the data to be stored securely, and still allows for random read and write access.

Note that you must have a license for the Oracle Advanced Security Option before implementing SecureFiles Intelligent Encryption. See *Oracle Database Licensing Information* for more information.

## Using CREATE TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs

A SecureFiles LOB can only be created in a tablespace managed with Automatic Segment Space Management (ASSM). The following parameter descriptions apply to the LOB storage paradigm using the `SECUREFILE` parameter. See *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*, `CREATE TABLE` statement, for further details.

Oracle recommends that you enable compression, deduplication, or encryption through the `CREATE TABLE` statement. If you enable these features through the `ALTER TABLE` statement, *all* SecureFiles LOB data in the table is read, modified, and written; this causes the database to lock the table during a potentially lengthy operation.

The `SHRINK` option is not supported for SecureFiles LOBs.

SecureFiles LOBs introduce new storage parameters. These are introduced in the BNF of `CREATE TABLE`, in [Example 4-1](#). Full description of the parameters is in "[Parameters of CREATE TABLE for SecureFiles LOB](#)" on page 4-6.

### **Example 4-1 BNF for CREATE TABLE**

Keywords are in bold.

```
CREATE [ GLOBAL TEMPORARY ] TABLE
  [ schema.]table OF
  [ schema.]object_type
```

```

    [ ( relational_properties ) ]
    [ ON COMMIT { DELETE | PRESERVE } ROWS ]
    [ OID_clause ]
    [ OID_index_clause ]
    [ physical_properties ]
    [ table_properties ] ;

<relational_properties> ::=
{ column_definition
| { out_of_line_constraint
| out_of_line_ref_constraint
| supplemental_logging_props
}
}
[, { column_definition
| { out_of_line_constraint
| out_of_line_ref_constraint
| supplemental_logging_props
}
}
]...

<column_definition> ::=
column data_type [ SORT ]
    [ DEFAULT expr ]
    [ ENCRYPT encryption_spec ]
    [ ( inline_constraint [ inline_constraint ] ... )
    | inline_ref_constraint
    ]

<data_type> ::=
{ Oracle_built_in_datatypes
| ANSI_supported_datatypes
| user_defined_types
| Oracle_supplied_types
}

<Oracle_built_in_datatypes> ::=
{ character_datatypes
| number_datatypes
| long_and_raw_datatypes
| datetime_datatypes
| large_object_datatypes
| rowid_datatypes
}

<large_object_datatypes> ::=
{ BLOB | CLOB | NCLOB | BFILE }

<table_properties> ::=
[ column_properties ]
[ table_partitioning_clauses ]
[ CACHE | NOCACHE ]
[ parallel_clause ]
[ ROWDEPENDENCIES | NOROWDEPENDENCIES ]
[ enable_disable_clause ]
[ enable_disable_clause ]...
[ row_movement_clause ]
[ AS subquery ]

<column_properties> ::=

```

```

    { object_type_col_properties
    | nested_table_col_properties
    | { varray_col_properties | LOB_storage_clause }
    [ (LOB_partition_storage
      [, LOB_partition_storage ]...
    )
    ]
  | XMLType_column_properties
  }
  [ { object_type_col_properties
    | nested_table_col_properties
    | { varray_col_properties | LOB_storage_clause }
    [ ( LOB_partition_storage
      [, LOB_partition_storage ]...
    )
    ]
  | XMLType_column_properties
  }
  ]...

<LOB_partition_storage> ::=
PARTITION partition
  { LOB_storage_clause | varray_col_properties }
  [ LOB_storage_clause | varray_col_properties ]...
  [ ( SUBPARTITION subpartition
    { LOB_storage_clause | varray_col_properties }
    [ LOB_storage_clause
    | varray_col_properties
    ]...
  )
  ]

<LOB_storage_clause> ::=
LOB
  { (LOB_item [, LOB_item ]...)
    STORE AS [ SECUREFILE | BASICFILE ] (LOB_storage_parameters)
  | (LOB_item)
    STORE AS [ SECUREFILE | BASICFILE ]
      { LOB_segname (LOB_storage_parameters)
      | LOB_segname
      | (LOB_storage_parameters)
      }
  }

<LOB_storage_parameters> ::=
  { TABLESPACE tablespace
  | { LOB_parameters [ storage_clause ]
  }
  | storage_clause
  }
  [ TABLESPACE tablespace
  | { LOB_parameters [ storage_clause ]
  }
  ]...

<LOB_parameters> ::=
  [ { ENABLE | DISABLE } STORAGE IN ROW
  | CHUNK integer
  | PCTVERSION integer
  | RETENTION [ { MAX | MIN integer | AUTO | NONE } ]

```



```

| FREEPOOLS integer
| LOB_deduplicate_clause
| LOB_compression_clause
| LOB_encryption_clause
| { CACHE | NOCACHE | CACHE READS } [ logging_clause ] } }
]

<logging_clause> ::=
  { LOGGING | NOLOGGING | FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING }

<storage_clause> ::=
  STORAGE
  ( { INITIAL integer [ K | M ]
    | NEXT integer [ K | M ]
    | MINEXTENTS integer
    | MAXEXTENTS { integer | UNLIMITED }
    | PCTINCREASE integer
    | FREELISTS integer
    | FREELIST GROUPS integer
    | OPTIMAL [ integer [ K | M ]
                | NULL
              ]
    | BUFFER_POOL { KEEP | RECYCLE | DEFAULT }
  }
  [ INITIAL integer [ K | M ]
    | NEXT integer [ K | M ]
    | MINEXTENTS integer
    | MAXEXTENTS { integer | UNLIMITED }
    | MAXSIZE { { integer { K | M | G | T | P } } | UNLIMITED }
    | PCTINCREASE integer
    | FREELISTS integer
    | FREELIST GROUPS integer
    | OPTIMAL [ integer [ K | M ]
                | NULL
              ]
    | BUFFER_POOL { KEEP | RECYCLE | DEFAULT }
  ]...
)

<LOB_deduplicate_clause> ::=
  { DEDUPLICATE
    | KEEP_DUPLICATES
  }

<LOB_compression_clause> ::=
  { COMPRESS [ HIGH | MEDIUM | LOW ]
    | NOCOMPRESS }

<LOB_encryption_clause> ::=
  { ENCRYPT [ USING 'encrypt_algorithm' ]
    [ IDENTIFIED BY password ]
    | DECRYPT
  }

<XMLType_column_properties> ::=
XMLTYPE [ COLUMN ] column
  [ XMLType_storage ]
  [ XMLSchema_spec ]

<XMLType_storage> ::=

```

```

STORE AS
  { OBJECT RELATIONAL
    | [ SECUREFILE | BASICFILE ] { CLOB | BINARY XML }
      [ { LOB_segname [ (LOB_parameters) ]
        | LOB_parameters
        }
      ]
  }

<varray_col_properties> ::=
VARRAY varray_item
  { [ substitutable_column_clause ]
    STORE AS [ SECUREFILE | BASICFILE ] LOB
      { [ LOB_segname ] (LOB_parameters)
        | LOB_segname
        }
    | substitutable_column_clause
  }

```

## Parameters of CREATE TABLE for SecureFiles LOB

Table 4–1 summarizes the parameters of the CREATE TABLE statement.

**Table 4–1 Parameters of CREATE TABLE Statement**

Parameter	Description
<a href="#">BASICFILE</a> on page 4-7	Parameter that specifies the original architecture for LOBs. It creates BasicFiles LOBs, which do not support compression, deduplication or encryption features.
<a href="#">SECUREFILE</a> on page 4-7	Parameter that specifies SecureFiles LOBs, an architecture that improves performance and also supports compression, deduplication, and encryption features.
<a href="#">CHUNK</a> on page 4-7	Data size used by Oracle Database when accessing or modifying the LOB. This is used for BasicFiles LOBs; for SecureFiles LOBs it is an advisory size provided for backward compatibility.
<a href="#">RETENTION</a> on page 4-7	Configures the LOB column to store old versions of LOB data in a specified manner.
<a href="#">MAXSIZE</a> on page 4-7	Upper limit of storage space that may be used by a LOB.
<a href="#">FREEPOOLS</a> on page 4-7	Specifies the number of FREELIST groups for BasicFiles LOBs, if the database is in automatic undo mode. Not used for SecureFiles LOBs.
<a href="#">LOGGING, NOLOGGING, or FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING</a> on page 4-7	Logging options.
<a href="#">FREELISTS or FREELIST GROUPS</a> on page 4-8	Specifies the number of process freelists or freelist groups, respectively, allocated to the segment; NULL for partitioned tables. Not used for SecureFiles LOBs.
<a href="#">PCTVERSION</a> on page 4-8	Specifies the percentage of all used BasicFiles LOB data space that may be occupied by old versions of the LOB data pages. Not used for SecureFiles LOBs.
<a href="#">COMPRESS or NOCOMPRESS</a> on page 4-8	Turns on or turns off SecureFiles Intelligent Compression.
<a href="#">DEDUPLICATE or KEEP_DUPLICATES</a> on page 4-8	Turns on or turns off SecureFiles Intelligent Deduplication.

**Table 4–1 (Cont.) Parameters of CREATE TABLE Statement**

Parameter	Description
<a href="#">ENCRYPT or DECRYPT</a> on page 4-9	Turns on or turns off SecureFiles Intelligent Encryption.

**BASICFILE**

When the compatibility mode is set to 10g, the LOB storage clause is identical to that used in 10g (keyword `BASICFILE` is not valid). When the 11g compatibility mode (or greater) is set, the original, pre-11.1 release LOB functionality is enabled by default and this parameter is specified for completeness.

**SECUREFILE**

To use the SecureFiles LOB storage architecture and functionality, explicitly specify the storage parameter `SECUREFILE`. A SecureFiles LOB can only be created in a tablespace managed with Automatic Segment Space Management (ASSM).

For BasicFiles LOBs, specifying any of the SecureFiles LOB options results in an error.

**CHUNK**

`CHUNK` is one or more Oracle blocks. For SecureFiles LOBs, `CHUNK` is an advisory size and is provided for backward compatibility purposes. For BasicFiles LOBs, you may specify the chunk size when creating a table that stores LOBs; it corresponds to the data size used by Oracle Database when accessing or modifying the LOB value.

**RETENTION**

In Oracle Database Release 11g, this parameter specifies the retention policy. A value of `MAX` tells the system to keep old versions of LOB data blocks until the space used by the segment has reached the size specified in the `MAXSIZE` parameter. If `MAXSIZE` is not specified, `MAX` behaves like `AUTO`.

A value of `MIN` tells the system to keep old versions of LOB data blocks for the specified number of seconds. A value of `NONE` means that there is no retention period and space can be reused in any way deemed necessary. A value of `AUTO` tells the system to manage the space as efficiently as possible weighing both time and space needs.

For details of the `RETENTION` parameter used with BasicFiles LOBs, see "[RETENTION Parameter for BasicFiles LOBs](#)" on page 11-8.

**MAXSIZE**

Limits the amount of space that can be used by the LOB segment to the given size. If this size is consumed, new LOB data blocks are taken from the pool of old versions of LOB data blocks regardless of time requirements and as needed.

**FREEPOOLS**

Specifies the number of `FREELIST` groups for BasicFiles LOBs, if the database is in automatic undo mode. Under 11g compatibility, this parameter is ignored when SecureFiles LOBs are created.

**LOGGING, NOLOGGING, or FILESYSTEM\_LIKE\_LOGGING**

Specify `LOGGING` if you want the creation of the LOB, and subsequent inserts into the LOB, to be logged in the redo log file. `LOGGING` is the default.

Specify `NOLOGGING` if you do not want these operations to be logged.

For a non-partitioned object, the value specified for this clause is the actual physical attribute of the segment associated with the object. For partitioned objects, the value specified for this clause is the default physical attribute of the segments associated with all partitions specified in the `CREATE` statement (and in subsequent `ALTER ... ADD PARTITION` statements), unless you specify the logging attribute in the `PARTITION` description.

`FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING` means that the system only logs the metadata. This option is invalid for BasicFiles LOBs. This setting is similar to metadata journaling of file systems, which reduces mean time to recovery from failures. The `LOGGING` setting for SecureFiles LOBs is similar to the data journaling of file systems. Both the `LOGGING` and `FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING` settings provide a complete transactional file system with SecureFiles LOBs.

For SecureFiles LOBs, the `NOLOGGING` setting is converted internally to `FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING`.

`FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING` ensures that data is completely recoverable after a server failure.

See "[LOGGING / NOLOGGING Parameter for BasicFiles LOBs](#)" on page 11-9 and "[Ensuring Read Consistency](#)" on page 22-41.

---

---

**Caution:** For LOB segments, if using `NOLOGGING` and `FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING` settings, it is possible for data to be changed on the disk during a backup operation. This results in read inconsistency. To avoid this situation, ensure that changes to LOB segments are saved in the redo log file by setting `LOGGING` for LOB storage.

---

---

## **FREELISTS or FREELIST GROUPS**

This parameter specifies the number of process freelists or freelist groups, respectively, allocated to the segment; `NULL` for partitioned tables. Under 11g compatibility, these parameters are ignored when SecureFiles LOBs are created.

## **PCTVERSION**

This parameter specifies the percentage of all used BasicFiles LOB data space that can be occupied by old versions of BasicFiles LOB data pages. Under 11g compatibility, this parameter is ignored when SecureFiles LOBs are created.

## **COMPRESS or NOCOMPRESS**

The `COMPRESS` option turns on SecureFiles Intelligent Compression, and `NOCOMPRESS` turns it off. Note that setting table or index compression does not effect SecureFiles Intelligent Compression.

Note that you must have a license for the Oracle Advanced Compression Option before implementing SecureFiles Intelligent Compression. See *Oracle Database Licensing Information* for more information.

## **DEDUPLICATE or KEEP\_DUPLICATES**

The `DEDUPLICATE` option enables SecureFiles Intelligent Deduplication; it specifies that SecureFiles LOB data that is identical in two or more rows in a LOB column, partition or subpartition must share the same data blocks. The database combines

SecureFiles LOBs with identical content into a single copy, reducing storage and simplifying storage management. The opposite of this option is `KEEP_DUPLICATES`.

Note that you must have a license for the Oracle Advanced Compression Option before implementing SecureFiles Intelligent Deduplication. See *Oracle Database Licensing Information* for more information.

### ENCRYPT or DECRYPT

The `ENCRYPT` option turns on SecureFiles Intelligent Encryption, and encrypts all SecureFiles LOB data using Oracle Transparent Data Encryption (TDE). The `DECRYPT` options turns off SecureFiles Intelligent Encryption.

Note that you must have a license for the Oracle Advanced Security Option before implementing SecureFiles Intelligent Encryption. See *Oracle Database Licensing Information* for more information.

## CREATE TABLE Compression

This section discusses SecureFiles Intelligent Compression when used in the `CREATE TABLE` statement. This section contains the following topics:

- [Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Compression](#)
- [Examples of CREATE TABLE Compression](#)

### Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Compression

- SecureFiles Intelligent Compression does not enable table or index compression. Similarly, table and index compression does not enable SecureFiles Intelligent Compression.
- The `LOW`, `MEDIUM`, and `HIGH` options provide varying degrees of compression. The higher the compression, the higher the latency incurred. The `HIGH` setting incurs more work, but compresses the data better. The default is `MEDIUM`.

The `LOW` compression option introduces an extremely lightweight compression algorithm that removes the majority of the CPU cost that is typical with file compression. Compressed SecureFiles LOBs at the `LOW` level now provide a very efficient choice for SecureFiles LOB storage. SecureFiles LOBs compressed at `LOW` generally consume less CPU time than BasicFiles LOBs, consume less storage than BasicFiles LOBs, and typically help the application run faster because of a reduction in disk I/O.

- Compression can be specified at the partition level. The `lob_storage_clause` enables specification of compression for partitioned tables on a per-partition basis.
- SecureFiles LOB compression is performed on the server and enables random reads and writes to LOB data. Compression utilities on the client, like `utl_compress`, cannot provide random access.
- The method `DBMS_LOB.SETOPTIONS()` can be used to enable and disable compression on individual SecureFiles LOBs. See "[SETOPTIONS\(\)](#)" on page 4-26
- LOB compression is applicable only to SecureFiles LOBs.

### Examples of CREATE TABLE Compression

The following examples demonstrate how to issue `CREATE TABLE` statements for specific compression scenarios.

**Example 4–2 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with LOW compression**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE(
    COMPRESS LOW
    CACHE
    NOLOGGING
  );
```

**Example 4–3 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with MEDIUM (default) compression**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    COMPRESS
    CACHE
    NOLOGGING
  );
```

**Example 4–4 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with HIGH compression**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    COMPRESS HIGH
    CACHE
  );
```

**Example 4–5 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with disabled compression**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    NOCOMPRESS
    CACHE
  );
```

**Example 4–6 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with compression on one partition**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( REGION VARCHAR2(20), a BLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    CACHE
  )
  PARTITION BY LIST (REGION) (
    PARTITION p1 VALUES ('x', 'y')
      LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
        COMPRESS
      ),
    PARTITION p2 VALUES (DEFAULT)
  );
```

## CREATE TABLE Deduplication

This section discusses SecureFiles LOB deduplication when used in the CREATE TABLE statement. This section contains the following topics:

- [Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Deduplication](#)
- [Examples of CREATE TABLE Deduplication](#)

### Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Deduplication

- Identical LOBs are good candidates for deduplication. Copy operations can avoid data duplication by enabling deduplication.

- Duplicate detection happens within a LOB segment. For partitioned and subpartitioned LOB columns duplicate detection does not span partitions or subpartitions.
- Deduplication can be specified at a partition level. The `lob_storage_clause` enables specification for partitioned tables on a per-partition basis.
- Deduplication is applicable only to SecureFiles LOBs.
- `DBMS_LOB.SETOPTIONS` can be used to enable or disable deduplication on individual LOBs.

### Examples of CREATE TABLE Deduplication

The following examples demonstrate how to issue CREATE TABLE statements for specific deduplication scenarios.

#### **Example 4–7 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with deduplication**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    DEDUPLICATE
    CACHE
  );
```

#### **Example 4–8 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with disabled deduplication**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    KEEP_DUPLICATES
    CACHE
  );
```

#### **Example 4–9 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with deduplication on one partition**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( REGION VARCHAR2(20), a BLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    CACHE
  )
  PARTITION BY LIST (REGION) (
    PARTITION p1 VALUES ('x', 'y')
      LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
        DEDUPLICATE
      ),
    PARTITION p2 VALUES (DEFAULT)
  );
```

#### **Example 4–10 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with deduplication disabled on one partition**

```
CREATE TABLE t1 ( REGION VARCHAR2(20), ID NUMBER, a BLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    DEDUPLICATE
    CACHE
  )
  PARTITION BY RANGE (REGION)
    SUBPARTITION BY HASH(ID) SUBPARTITIONS 2 (
      PARTITION p1 VALUES LESS THAN (51)
        lob(a) STORE AS a_t2_p1
          (SUBPARTITION t2_p1_s1 lob(a) STORE AS a_t2_p1_s1,
           SUBPARTITION t2_p1_s2 lob(a) STORE AS a_t2_p1_s2),
      PARTITION p2 VALUES LESS THAN (MAXVALUE)
```

```

lob(a) STORE AS a_t2_p2 ( KEEP_DUPLICATES )
(SUBPARTITION t2_p2_s1 lob(a) STORE AS a_t2_p2_s1,
 SUBPARTITION t2_p2_s2 lob(a) STORE AS a_t2_p2_s2)
);

```

## CREATE TABLE Encryption

This section discusses SecureFiles LOB encryption when used in the CREATE TABLE statement. This section contains the following topics:

- [Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Encryption](#)
- [Examples of CREATE TABLE Encryption](#)

### Usage Notes for CREATE TABLE Encryption

- The current Transparent Data Encryption (TDE) syntax is used for enabling encryption on LOB data types. The LOB must be created with the SECUREFILE parameter.
- Encryption is performed at the block level.
- *encrypt\_algorithm* indicates the name of the encryption algorithm. Valid algorithms are: AES192 (default), 3DES168, AES128, and AES256.
- The column encryption key is derived from PASSWORD, if specified.
- SALT is the default for LOB encryption. NO SALT is not supported.
- All LOBs in the LOB column are encrypted.
- DECRYPT keeps the LOBs in clear text.
- LOBs can be encrypted only on a per-column basis, similar to TDE. All partitions within a LOB column are encrypted.
- Key management controls the ability to encrypt or decrypt.
- LOB encryption is allowed only with SecureFiles LOBs.
- TDE is not supported by the traditional import and export utilities or by transportable-tablespace-based export. Use the Data Pump import and export utilities with encrypted columns instead.

**See Also:** The chapter on "Using Oracle Wallet Manager" in *Oracle Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide* for information about creating and using Oracle wallet with TDE.

### Examples of CREATE TABLE Encryption

The following examples demonstrate how to issue CREATE TABLE statements for specific encryption scenarios.

#### **Example 4–11** Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with a specific encryption algorithm

```

CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB ENCRYPT USING 'AES128' )
LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
  CACHE
);

```

#### **Example 4–12** Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with encryption for all partitions

```

CREATE TABLE t1 ( REGION VARCHAR2(20), a BLOB )
LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (

```



```

ENCRYPT USING 'AES128'
NOCACHE
FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING
)
PARTITION BY LIST (REGION) (
PARTITION p1 VALUES ('x', 'y'),
PARTITION p2 VALUES (DEFAULT)
);

```

**Example 4–13 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with encryption based on a password key**

```

CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB ENCRYPT IDENTIFIED BY foo)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    CACHE
  );

```

The following example has the same result because the encryption option can be set in the `LOB_deduplicate_clause` section of the statement:

```

CREATE TABLE t1 (a CLOB)
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    CACHE
    ENCRYPT
    IDENTIFIED BY foo
  );

```

**Example 4–14 Creating a SecureFiles LOB column with disabled encryption**

```

CREATE TABLE t1 ( a CLOB )
  LOB(a) STORE AS SECUREFILE (
    CACHE DECRYPT
  );

```

## Using ALTER TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs

You can modify LOB storage with an `ALTER TABLE` statement or with online redefinition by using the `DBMS_REDEFINITION` package. See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*.

Oracle recommends that you enable compression, deduplication, or encryption at table creation time. Enabling these features using `ALTER TABLE` causes the read, modify, or write commands to alter the entire SecureFiles LOB column, holding a table lock during this potentially long operation.

Note that the `SHRINK` option is not supported for SecureFiles LOBs.

If you have not enabled LOB encryption, compression or deduplication at create time, Oracle recommends that you use online redefinition to enable them after creation, because this process is more disk-space efficient for changes to these parameters.

The BNF of `ALTER TABLE`, in [Example 4–1](#), introduces new parameters. Full description of the parameters is in "[Parameters of CREATE TABLE for SecureFiles LOB](#)" on page 4-6.

See "[Migrating Columns from BasicFiles LOBs to SecureFiles LOBs](#)" on page 4-22, and the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for details on the `ALTER TABLE` statement.

**Example 4–15 BNF for ALTER TABLE**

Keywords are in bold.

```

ALTER TABLE [ schema.]table
  [ alter_table_properties
  | column_clauses
  | constraint_clauses
  | alter_table_partitioning
  | alter_external_table_clauses
  | move_table_clause
  ]
  [ enable_disable_clause
  | { ENABLE | DISABLE }
  | { TABLE LOCK | ALL TRIGGERS }
  [ enable_disable_clause
  | { ENABLE | DISABLE }
  | { TABLE LOCK | ALL TRIGGERS }
  ]...
] ;

<column_clauses> ::=
  { { add_column_clause
  | modify_column_clause
  | drop_column_clause
  }
  [ add_column_clause
  | modify_column_clause
  | drop_column_clause
  ]...
  | rename_column_clause
  | modify_collection_retrieval
  [ modify_collection_retrieval ]...
  | modify_LOB_storage_clause
  [ modify_LOB_storage_clause ] ...
  | alter_varray_col_properties
  [ alter_varray_col_properties ]
  }

<modify_LOB_storage_clause> ::=
MODIFY LOB (LOB_item) ( modify_LOB_parameters )

<modify_LOB_parameters> ::=
  { storage_clause
  | PCTVERSION integer
  | FREEPOOLS integer
  | REBUILD FREEPOOLS
  | LOB_retention_clause
  | LOB_deduplicate_clause
  | LOB_compression_clause
  | { ENCRYPT encryption_spec | DECRYPT }
  | { CACHE
  | { NOCACHE | CACHE READS } [ logging_clause ]
  }
  | allocate_extent_clause
  | shrink_clause
  | deallocate_unused_clause
  } ...

```

## Parameters of CREATE TABLE for SecureFiles LOB

Table 4–2 summarizes the parameters of the CREATE TABLE statement.

**Table 4–2 Parameters of ALTER TABLE Statement**

Parameter	Description
<a href="#">RETENTION</a> on page 4-15	Configures the LOB column to store old versions of LOB data in a specified manner.
<a href="#">COMPRESS</a> or <a href="#">NOCOMPRESS</a> on page 4-15	Turns on or turns off SecureFiles LOB compression.
<a href="#">DEDUPLICATE</a> or <a href="#">KEEP_DUPLICATES</a> on page 4-15	Turns on or turns off SecureFiles LOB deduplication.
<a href="#">ENCRYPT</a> or <a href="#">DECRYPT</a> on page 4-15	Turns on or turns off SecureFiles LOB encryption.

**RETENTION**

Altering `RETENTION` only affects space created after the `ALTER TABLE` statement runs.

**COMPRESS or NOCOMPRESS**

Enables or disables LOB compression. All LOBs in the LOB segment are altered with the new setting.

**DEDUPLICATE or KEEP\_DUPLICATES**

The option `DEDUPLICATE` enables you to specify that LOB data which is identical in two or more rows in a LOB column should share the same data blocks. The database combines LOBs with identical content into a single copy, reducing storage and simplifying storage management. The opposite of this option is `KEEP_DUPLICATES`.

**ENCRYPT or DECRYPT**

Enables or disables LOB encryption. All LOBs in the LOB segment are altered with the new setting. A LOB segment can be altered only to enable or disable LOB encryption. That is, `ALTER` cannot be used to update the encryption algorithm or the encryption key. The encryption algorithm or encryption key can be updated using the `ALTER TABLE REKEY` syntax.

**ALTER TABLE Compression**

This section discusses SecureFiles LOB compression when used in the `ALTER TABLE` statement. This section contains the following topics:

- [Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Compression](#)
- [Examples of ALTER TABLE Compression](#)

**Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Compression**

- This syntax alters the compression mode of the LOB column.
- `DBMS_LOB.SETOPTIONS` can be used to enable or disable compression on individual LOBs.
- Compression may be specified either at the table level or the partition level.
- The `LOW`, `MEDIUM`, and `HIGH` options provide varying degrees of compression. The higher the compression, the higher the latency incurred. The `HIGH` setting incurs more work, but compresses the data better. The default is `MEDIUM`.

Decompression is simple and very fast. See ["CREATE TABLE Compression"](#) on page 4-9.

- LOB compression applies only to SecureFiles LOBs.

### Examples of ALTER TABLE Compression

The following examples demonstrate how to issue ALTER TABLE statements for specific compression scenarios.

#### **Example 4-16** *Altering a SecureFiles LOB column to enable LOW compression*

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY
  LOB(a) (
    COMPRESS LOW
  );
```

#### **Example 4-17** *Altering a SecureFiles LOB column to disable compression*

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY
  LOB(a) (
    NOCOMPRESS
  );
```

#### **Example 4-18** *Altering a SecureFiles LOB column to enable HIGH compression*

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY
  LOB(a) (
    COMPRESS HIGH
  );
```

#### **Example 4-19** *Altering a SecureFiles LOB column to enable compression on one partition*

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY PARTITION p1
  LOB(a) (
    COMPRESS HIGH
  );
```

## ALTER TABLE Deduplication

This section discusses the SecureFiles LOB deduplication in reference to the ALTER TABLE statement. This section contains the following topics:

- [Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Deduplication](#)
- [Examples of ALTER TABLE Deduplication](#)

### Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Deduplication

ALTER TABLE syntax can enable or disable LOB-level deduplication.

- This syntax alters the deduplication mode of the LOB column.
- DBMS\_LOB.SETOPTIONS can be used to enable or disable deduplication on individual LOBs.
- Deduplication can be specified at a table level or partition level. Deduplication does not span across partitioned LOBs.
- Deduplication is applicable only to SecureFiles LOBs.

## Examples of ALTER TABLE Deduplication

The following examples demonstrate how to issue ALTER TABLE statements for specific deduplication scenarios.

### **Example 4–20** *Altering a SecureFiles LOB column to disable deduplication*

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY
  LOB(a) (
    KEEP_DUPLICATES
  );
```

### **Example 4–21** *Altering a SecureFiles LOB column to enable deduplication*

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY
  LOB(a) (
    DEDUPLICATE
  );
```

### **Example 4–22** *Altering a SecureFiles LOB column to enable deduplication on one partition*

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY PARTITION p1
  LOB(a) (
    DEDUPLICATE
  );
```

## ALTER TABLE Encryption

This section discusses SecureFiles LOB encryption when used in the ALTER TABLE statement. This section contains the following topics:

- [Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Encryption](#)
- [Examples of ALTER TABLE Encryption](#)

### **Usage Notes for ALTER TABLE Encryption**

- ALTER TABLE is used to enable and disable LOB encryption for SecureFiles LOBs. This syntax also allows the user to re-key LOB columns with a new key or algorithm.
- ENCRYPT/DECRYPT options enable or disable encryption on all LOBs in the specified SecureFiles LOB column.
- SALT is the default for LOB encryption. NO SALT is not supported.
- The DECRYPT option converts encrypted columns to clear text form.
- Key management controls the ability to encrypt or decrypt.
- LOBs can be encrypted only on a per-column basis. A partitioned LOB has either all partitions encrypted or not encrypted.
- LOB encryption is applicable only to SecureFiles LOBs.

### **Examples of ALTER TABLE Encryption**

The following examples demonstrate how to issue ALTER TABLE statements for specific encryption scenarios.

**Example 4–23 Altering a SecureFiles LOB column by encrypting based on a specific algorithm**

Enable LOB encryption using 3DES168.

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY
  ( a CLOB ENCRYPT USING '3DES168');
```

This is the second example of enabling LOB encryption using 3DES168.

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY LOB(a)
  (ENCRYPT USING '3DES168');
```

**Example 4–24 Altering a SecureFiles LOB column by encrypting based on a password key**

Enable encryption on a SecureFiles LOB column and build the encryption key using a password.

```
ALTER TABLE t1 MODIFY
  ( a CLOB ENCRYPT IDENTIFIED BY foo);
```

**Example 4–25 Altering a SecureFiles LOB column by re-keying the encryption**

To re-encrypt the LOB column with a new key, re-key the table.

```
ALTER TABLE t1 REKEY USING '3DES168';
```

## Database File System Links

This section introduces Database File System Links. It contains the following topics:

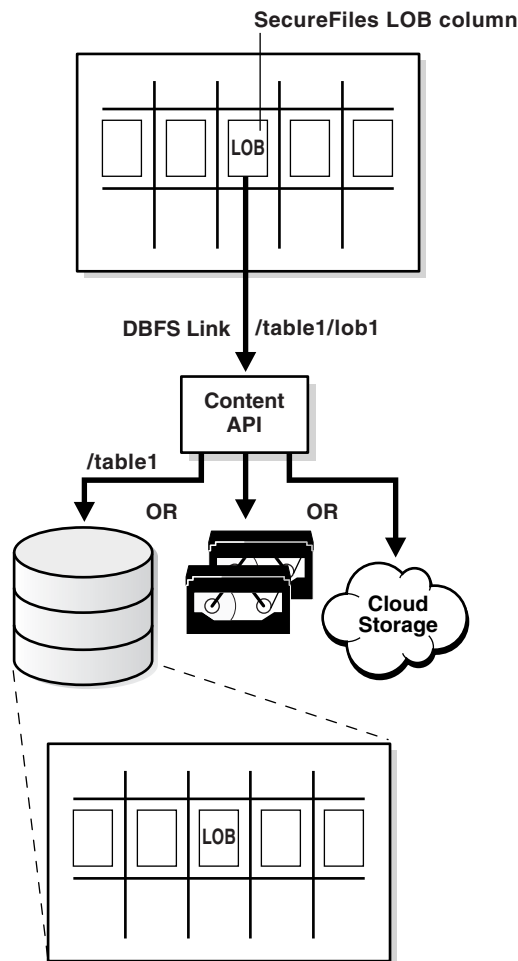
- [Overview of Database File System Links](#)
- [Creating Database File System Links](#)
- [Copying Database File System Links](#)
- [Copying a Linked LOB Between Tables](#)
- [Online Redefinition and DBFS Links](#)
- [Transparent Read](#)

### Overview of Database File System Links

Database File System Links are references from SecureFiles LOBs to data stored outside the segment where the SecureFiles LOB resides. The path name given must reference a path available through the Oracle Database File System (DBFS) Content API.

Database File System Links enable the use of SecureFiles LOBs to implement Hierarchical Storage Management (HSM) in conjunction with the DBFS Hierarchical Store (DBFS HS). HSM is a process by which the database moves rarely used or unused data from faster, more expensive, and smaller storage to slower, cheaper, and larger storage.

Figure 4–1 Database File System Link



## Creating Database File System Links

Database File System Links require the creation of a Database File System through the use of the DBFS Content package, `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT`.

Oracle provides several methods for creating a DBFS Link:

- You can move SecureFiles LOB data into a specified DBFS pathname and store the reference to the new location in the LOB. Call `DBMS_LOB.MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()` with LOB and DBFS path name arguments, and the system creates the specified DBFS HSM Store if it does not exist, copies data from the SecureFiles LOB into the specified DBFS HSM Store, removes data from the SecureFiles LOB, and stores the file path name for subsequent access through this LOB.
- You can copy or create a reference to an existing file. Call `DBMS_LOB.COPY_DBFS_LINK()` to copy a link from an existing DBFS Link. If there is any data in the destination SecureFiles LOB, the system removes this data and stores a copy of the reference to the link in the destination SecureFiles LOB.
- Call `DBMS_LOB.SET_DBFS_LINK()`, which assumes that the data for the link is stored in the specified DBFS path name. The system removes data in the specified SecureFiles LOB and stores the link to the DBFS path name.

Creating a DBFS Link impacts the operations that may be performed, and how they may be performed. Some of the `DBMS_LOB` operations that existed before Oracle Database 11gR2 throw an exception if the LOB is a DBFS Link. The application must explicitly replace the DBFS Link with a LOB by calling `DBMS_LOB.COPY_FROM_LINK()` before making these calls. When completed, the application can move the updated LOB back to DBFS using `DBMS_LOB.MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()`, if needed. Other `DBMS_LOB` operations that existed before Oracle Database 11gR2 work transparently if the DBFS Link is in a file system that supports streaming. Note that these operations fail if streaming is either not supported or disabled.

If the DBFS Link file is modified through DBFS interfaces directly, the change is reflected in subsequent reads of the SecureFiles LOB. If the file is deleted through DBFS interfaces, then an exception occurs on subsequent reads.

For the database, it is also possible that a DBA may not want to store all of the data stored in a SecureFiles LOB HSM during export and import. Oracle has the ability to export and import only the Database File System Links. The links are fully qualified identifiers that provide access to the stored data, when entered into a SecureFiles LOB or registered on a SecureFiles LOB in a different database. This ability to export and import a link is similar to the common file system functionality of symbolic links.

The newly imported link is only available as long as the source, the stored data, is available, or until the first retrieval occurs on the imported system. The application is responsible for stored data retention. If the application system removes data from the store that still has a reference to it, the database throws an exception when the referencing SecureFiles LOB(s) attempt to access the data. Oracle also supports continuing to keep the data in the database after migration out to a DBFS store as a cached copy. It is up to the application to purge these copies in compliance with its retention policies.

## Copying Database File System Links

The API `DBMS_LOB.COPY_DBFS_LINK(DSTLOB, SRCLOB, FLAGS)` provides the ability to copy a linked SecureFiles LOB. By default, the LOB is not obtained from the DBFS HSM Store during this operation; this is a copy-by-reference operation that is possible by making use of exporting (at source side) and importing (at destination side) the DBFS path name. The `flags` argument can dictate that the destination has a local copy in the database and references the LOB data in the DBFS HSM Store.

## Copying a Linked LOB Between Tables

`CREATE TABLE ... AS SELECT (CTAS)` and `INSERT TABLE ... AS SELECT (ITAS)` copies any DBFS Links that are stored in any SecureFiles LOBs in the source table to the destination table.

## Online Redefinition and DBFS Links

Online redefinition copies any DBFS Links that are stored in any SecureFiles LOBs in the table being redefined.

## Transparent Read

DBFS Links have the ability to read from a linked SecureFiles LOB even if the data is not cached in the database. This is done by reading the data from the Content Store where the data is currently stored, and streaming that data back to the user application



as if it were being read from the SecureFiles LOB segment. This allows seamless access to the DBFS Linked data without the prerequisite first call to `DBMS_LOB.COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK()`.

Whether or not transparent read is available for a particular SecureFiles LOB is determined by the `DBFS_CONTENT` store where the data resides. This feature is always enabled for `DBFS_SFS` stores, and by default for `DBFS_HS` stores. To disable transparent read for `DBFS_HS` store, set the `PROPNAME_STREAMABLE` parameter to `FALSE`.

**See Also:** ["Examples Using DBMS\\_DBFS\\_HS"](#) on page 9-6

## Initialization Parameter `db_securefile` for SecureFiles LOBs

The initialization parameter `db_securefile` is set in the file `init.ora`.

The parameter `db_securefile` is of type `text`. Its allowable values are `ALWAYS`, `PERMITTED` [default], `NEVER`, or `IGNORE`. The `db_securefile` parameter is dynamic and its scope is `ALTER SYSTEM`.

### **Example 4-26** *Setting `db_securefile` parameter through `ALTER SYSTEM`*

```
ALTER SYSTEM SET db_securefile = 'ALWAYS';
```

The `db_securefile` parameter enables the database administrator to either allow SecureFiles LOBs to be created (`PERMITTED`), disallow SecureFiles LOBs from being created in the future (`NEVER`), attempt to create SecureFiles LOBs but fall back to BasicFiles LOBs (`ALWAYS`), or disallow SecureFiles LOBs and ignore any errors that would otherwise be caused by forcing BasicFiles LOBs with SecureFiles LOBs options (`IGNORE`).

If `NEVER` is specified, any LOBs that are specified as SecureFiles LOBs are created as BasicFiles LOBs. All SecureFiles LOB-specific storage options and features such as compress, encrypt, or deduplicate throw an exception. The BasicFiles LOB defaults are used for storage options not specified.

`ALWAYS` attempts to create all LOBs as SecureFiles LOBs but creates any LOBs not in `ASSM` tablespaces as BasicFiles LOBs, unless the `SECUREFILE` parameter is explicitly specified. Any BasicFiles LOB storage options specified are ignored, and the SecureFiles LOB defaults are used for all storage options not specified.

If `IGNORE` is specified, the `SECUREFILE` keyword and all SecureFiles LOB options are ignored.

## Compatibility and Upgrading

All features described in this document are enabled with compatibility set to `11.2.0.0.0` or higher. There is no downgrade capability after `11.2.0.0.0` is set.

If you want to upgrade BasicFiles LOBs to SecureFiles LOBs, you must use typical methods for upgrading data (CTAS/ITAS, online redefinition, export/import, column to column copy, or using a view and a new column). Most of these solutions require twice the disk space used by the data in the input LOB column. However, partitioning and taking these actions on a partition-by-partition basis lowers the disk space requirements.

## Migrating Columns from BasicFiles LOBs to SecureFiles LOBs

The method of migrating LOBs columns is presented in this section.

### Preventing Generation of REDO Space when Migrating to SecureFiles LOBs

Generation of redo space can cause performance problems during the process of migrating BasicFiles LOB columns. Redo changes for the table are logged during the migration process only if the table has LOGGING set.

Redo changes for the column being converted from BasicFiles LOB to SecureFiles LOB are logged only if the storage characteristics of the SecureFiles LOB column indicate LOGGING. The logging setting (LOGGING or NOLOGGING) for the LOB column is inherited from the tablespace in which the LOB is created.

To prevent generation of redo space during migration make sure that you specify the NOLOGGING storage parameter for the new SecureFiles LOB column(s). You can turn LOGGING on once your migration is complete.

### Online Redefinition for BasicFiles LOBs

Online redefinition is the only recommended method for migration of BasicFiles LOBs to SecureFiles LOBs. It can be done at the table or partition level.

#### Online Redefinition Advantages

- No requirement to take the table or partition offline
- Can be done in parallel

#### Online Redefinition Disadvantages

- Additional storage equal to the entire table or partition and all LOB segments must be available
- Global indexes must be rebuilt

### Using Online Redefinition for Migrating Tables with BasicFiles LOBs

You can also migrate a table using Online Redefinition. Online Redefinition has the advantage of not requiring the table to be off line, but it requires additional free space equal to or even slightly greater than the space used by the table. [Example 4-27](#) demonstrates how to migrate a table using Online Redefinition.

#### **Example 4-27 Example of Online Redefinition**

```
REM Grant privileges required for online redefinition.
GRANT EXECUTE ON DBMS_REDEFINITION TO pm;
GRANT ALTER ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT DROP ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT LOCK ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT CREATE ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT SELECT ANY TABLE TO pm;
REM Privileges required to perform cloning of dependent objects.
GRANT CREATE ANY TRIGGER TO pm;
GRANT CREATE ANY INDEX TO pm;
CONNECT pm
DROP TABLE cust;
CREATE TABLE cust(c_id NUMBER PRIMARY KEY,
c_zip NUMBER,
```

```

c_name VARCHAR(30) DEFAULT NULL,
c_lob CLOB
);
INSERT INTO cust VALUES(1, 94065, 'hhh', 'ttt');
-- Creating Interim Table
-- There is no requirement to specify constraints because they are
-- copied over from the original table.
CREATE TABLE cust_int(c_id NUMBER NOT NULL,
c_zip NUMBER,
c_name VARCHAR(30) DEFAULT NULL,
c_lob CLOB
) LOB(c_lob) STORE AS SECUREFILE (NOCACHE FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING);
DECLARE
col_mapping VARCHAR2(1000);
BEGIN
-- map all the columns in the interim table to the original table
col_mapping :=
'c_id c_id , '||
'c_zip c_zip , '||
'c_name c_name, '||
'c_lob c_lob';
DBMS_REDEFINITION.START_REDEF_TABLE('pm', 'cust', 'cust_int', col_mapping);
END;
/
DECLARE
error_count pls_integer := 0;
BEGIN
DBMS_REDEFINITION.COPY_TABLE_DEPENDENTS('pm', 'cust', 'cust_int',
1, TRUE,TRUE,TRUE,FALSE, error_count);
DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('errors := ' || TO_CHAR(error_count));
END;
/
EXEC DBMS_REDEFINITION.FINISH_REDEF_TABLE('pm', 'cust', 'cust_int');
-- Drop the interim table
DROP TABLE cust_int;
DESC cust;
-- The following insert statement fails. This illustrates
-- that the primary key constraint on the c_id column is
-- preserved after migration.
INSERT INTO cust VALUES(1, 94065, 'hhh', 'ttt');
SELECT * FROM cust;

```

## Parallel Online Redefinition

On a system with sufficient resources for parallel execution, redefinition of a BasicFiles LOB column to a SecureFiles LOB column may be executed in parallel under the following conditions:

- In the case where the destination table is non-partitioned:

The segment used to store the LOB column in the destination table belongs to a locally managed tablespace with Automatic Segment Space Management (ASSM) enabled, which is now the default and is a requirement for SecureFiles LOBs.

There is a simple mapping from one LOB column to one LOB column, and the destination table has only one LOB column.

- In the case where the destination table is partitioned:

The normal methods for parallel execution for partitioning apply. When the destination table is partitioned, then online redefinition is executed in parallel.

For parallel execution of online redefinition add the following statement after the connect statement in [Example 4–27, "Example of Online Redefinition"](#) in the last section:

```
ALTER SESSION FORCE PARALLEL DML;
```

## PL/SQL Packages for SecureFiles LOBs and DBFS

This section introduces PL/SQL packages that are used with SecureFiles LOBs.

This section includes the following topics:

- [DBMS\\_LOB Package](#)
- [DBMS\\_SPACE Package](#)

### DBMS\_LOB Package

LOBs inherit the LOB column settings for deduplication, encryption, and compression, which may also be configured on specific LOB instances using the LOB locator APIs. Note that LONG APIs cannot be used to configure LOB settings. The following sections describe additions and modifications made to the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package to accommodate these features. See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*, DBMS\_LOB package for more details.

The constants listed in [Table 4–3](#), of type CONSTANT PLS\_INTEGER, support the DBFS Link interfaces. For more information about constants used in the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package, see *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*.

**Table 4–3 Some DBMS\_LOB Constants**

Constant	Description
DBFS_LINK_NEVER	DBFS link state value
DBFS_LINK_YES	DBFS link state value
DBFS_LINK_NO	DBFS link state value
DBFS_LINK_CACHE	Flag used by COPY_DBFS_LINK () and MOVE_DBFS_LINK ().
DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE	Flag used by COPY_DBFS_LINK () and MOVE_DBFS_LINK ().
DBFS_LINK_PATH_MAX_SIZE	The maximum length of DBFS pathnames; 1024.
CONTENTTYPE_MAX_SIZE	The maximum 1-byte ASCII characters for content type; 128.

[Table 4–4](#) summarizes changes made to the methods of the PL/SQL package DBMS\_LOB. Many existing methods have been augmented to support the SecureFiles LOB paradigm, and several new methods have been added.

Note that some of the DBMS\_LOB operations that existed before Oracle Database 11gR2 throw an exception if the LOB is a DBFS Link. The application must explicitly replace the DBFS Link with a LOB by calling COPY\_FROM\_LINK () before making these calls. When completed, the application can move the updated LOB back to DBFS using MOVE\_TO\_DBFS\_LINK (), if needed. Other DBMS\_LOB operations that existed before Oracle Database 11gR2 work transparently if the DBFS Link is in a file system that supports streaming. Note that these operations fail if streaming is either not supported or disabled.

**Table 4–4 DBMS\_LOB Methods**

<b>Method</b>	<b>Description</b>
<a href="#">GETOPTIONS()</a> on page 4-26	Retrieves the previously set options of a specific LOB
<a href="#">SETOPTIONS()</a> on page 4-26	Sets new options for a specific LOB
<a href="#">ISSECUREFILE()</a> on page 4-26	Determines if a LOB is a SecureFiles LOB
<a href="#">MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()</a> on page 4-26	Moves the specified LOB data from the database into DBFS HSM Store
<a href="#">COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK()</a> on page 4-27	Copies the specified LOB data from DBFS HSM Store into the database
<a href="#">COPY_DBFS_LINK()</a> on page 4-27	Copies an existing DBFS link into a new LOB
<a href="#">GET_DBFS_LINK()</a> on page 4-27	Returns the DBFS path name for a LOB
<a href="#">SET_DBFS_LINK()</a> on page 4-27	Links a LOB with a DBFS path name
<a href="#">GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE()</a> on page 4-27	Returns the linking state of a LOB
<a href="#">DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATHNAME()</a> on page 4-27	Returns a unique file path name for creating a DBFS Link
<a href="#">SETCONTENTTYPE()</a> on page 4-27	Sets the content type string of the LOB data
<a href="#">GETCONTENTTYPE()</a> on page 4-28	Retrieves the content type string of the LOB data
<a href="#">APPEND()</a> on page 4-28	Appends the contents of the source LOB to the destination LOB
<a href="#">COMPARE()</a> on page 4-28	Compares two LOBs in full or in parts
<a href="#">CONVERTTOBLOB()</a> on page 4-28	Converts the character data of a CLOB or NCLOB into the specified character set and writes it in binary format to a destination BLOB
<a href="#">CONVERTTOCLOB()</a> on page 4-28	Converts the binary data of a BLOB into the specified character set and writes it in character format to a destination CLOB or NCLOB
<a href="#">COPY()</a> on page 4-28	Copies all or part of the source LOB to the destination LOB
<a href="#">ERASE()</a> on page 4-28	Erases all or part of a LOB
<a href="#">FRAGMENT_DELETE()</a> on page 4-28	Deletes a specified fragment of the LOB
<a href="#">FRAGMENT_INSERT()</a> on page 4-28	Inserts a fragment of data into the LOB
<a href="#">FRAGMENT_MOVE()</a> on page 4-29	Moves a fragment of a LOB from one location in the LOB to another location
<a href="#">FRAGMENT_REPLACE()</a> on page 4-29	Replaces a fragment of a LOB with new data
<a href="#">LOADBLOBFROMFILE()</a> on page 4-29	Loads BFILE data into a BLOB
<a href="#">LOADCLOBFROMFILE()</a> on page 4-29	Loads BFILE data into a CLOB

**Table 4–4 (Cont.) DBMS\_LOB Methods**

Method	Description
<a href="#">LOADFROMFILE()</a> on page 4-29	Loads BFILE data into a LOB
<a href="#">READ()</a> on page 4-29	Reads data from a LOB
<a href="#">SUBSTR()</a> on page 4-29	Returns a fragment of a LOB
<a href="#">TRIM()</a> on page 4-29	Trims the LOB to a specified length
<a href="#">WRITE()</a> on page 4-29	Writes data to a LOB
<a href="#">WRITEAPPEND()</a> on page 4-29	Appends data to the end of a LOB

**GETOPTIONS()**

This function obtains the compression, deduplication and encryption settings of individual SecureFiles LOBs. An integer corresponding to a pre-defined constant based on the option type is returned.

Note that you cannot turn compression or deduplication on or off for an entire SecureFiles LOB column that has these features disabled.

See the *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more details on this function. See the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for more information on the corresponding OCI LOB function `OCILOBGetContentType()`.

**SETOPTIONS()**

This procedure sets compression, deduplication and encryption features. It enables the features to be set on a per-LOB basis, overriding the default LOB settings. This call incurs a round trip to the server to make the changes persistent.

You cannot turn compression or deduplication on or off for a SecureFiles LOB column that does not have those features enabled. `GETOPTIONS()` and `SETOPTIONS()` work on individual SecureFiles LOBs. You can turn off a feature on a particular SecureFiles LOB and turn on a feature that has been turned off by `SETOPTIONS()`, but you cannot turn on an option that has not been given to the SecureFiles LOB when the table was created.

See the *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more details on this function. See the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for more information on the corresponding OCI LOB function `OCILOBSetContentType()`.

**ISSECUREFILE()**

This function returns `TRUE` if the LOB locator passed to it is for a SecureFiles LOB. It returns `FALSE` otherwise.

See the *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more details on this function.

**MOVE\_TO\_DBFS\_LINK()**

`MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()` places the specified LOB data (from the database) into the DBFS HSM Store. If the LOB is stored, `MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()` silently returns as if the move was successful. In this case, if `DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE` is specified, or the default `flags` value is set, the LOB data is removed from the database.

Calling `MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()` multiple times on the same LOB with the same `flags` has no effect. Calling `MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK()` on a LOB that is stored causes the LOB to be cached (`MOVE_TO_DBFS_LINK_CACHE`) or removed (`DBFS_LINK_NOCACHE`) according to the `flags` setting.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **COPY\_FROM\_DBFS\_LINK()**

`COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK()` retrieves the specified LOB data from DBFS HSM Store to the database.

If the LOB is successfully retrieved, `COPY_FROM_DBFS_LINK` silently returns success.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **COPY\_DBFS\_LINK()**

`COPY_DBFS_LINK()` results in a destination LOB referring to the same the DBFS path name as the source LOB without causing an intervening get. An optional flag parameter causes the LOB to be read into the destination.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **GET\_DBFS\_LINK()**

`GET_DBFS_LINK()` returns the DBFS path name for the given LOB.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **SET\_DBFS\_LINK()**

`SET_DBFS_LINK` links the specified LOB with the given DBFS path name.

### **GET\_DBFS\_LINK\_STATE()**

`GET_DBFS_LINK_STATE` retrieves the current link state for the specified LOB.

Returns the current link state of the specified LOB. If the LOB has never been linked, the state is set to `DBFS_LINK_NEVER`. If the LOB has been linked, the state is set to `DBFS_LINK_YES`. If the LOB has been retrieved from DBFS HSM Store, the state is set to `DBFS_LINK_NO`. If the LOB was linked, but the data was left in the database, cached is set to `TRUE`. Cached is set to `FALSE` if the data was removed after the link was created, and `NULL` if state is `DBFS_LINK_NEVER`. The `pathname` argument is set to the DBFS path name that is used to identify the LOB in the DBFS HSM Store.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **DBFS\_LINK\_GENERATE\_PATHNAME()**

`DBFS_LINK_GENERATE_PATHNAME()` returns a unique file path name for creating a DBFS Link.

Returns a globally unique file pathname that can be used for archiving. This is guaranteed to be globally unique across all calls to this function for different LOBs and versions of that LOB. It is always the same for the same LOB and version.

### **SETCONTENTTYPE()**

`SETCONTENTTYPE()` sets the content type string for the data in the LOB.

To clear an existing `contentType` associated with a SecureFiles LOB, invoke `SETCONTENTTYPE()` with `contentType` set to an empty string.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **GETCONTENTTYPE()**

`GETCONTENTTYPE()` gets the content type string for the data in the LOB if set.

If the SecureFiles LOB does not have a `contentType` associated with it, `GETCONTENTTYPE()` returns `NULL`.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **APPEND()**

If `APPEND()` is called on a SecureFiles LOB that is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **COMPARE()**

If `COMPARE()` is called on a LOB that is a DBFS Link, the linked LOB is streamed from the DBFS, if possible, otherwise an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **CONVERTTOBLOB()**

If `CONVERTTOBLOB` is called and the source LOB has been linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **CONVERTTOCLOB()**

If `CONVERTTOCLOB` is called and the source LOB has been linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **COPY()**

If the source LOB is linked, the data is streamed from the DBFS, if possible, otherwise an exception is thrown. If the destination LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **ERASE()**

If the LOB to be erased is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **FRAGMENT\_DELETE()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### **FRAGMENT\_INSERT()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.



**FRAGMENT\_MOVE()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**FRAGMENT\_REPLACE()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**LOADBLOBFROMFILE()**

If the BLOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**LOADCLOBFROMFILE()**

If the CLOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**LOADFROMFILE()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**READ()**

If the LOB is linked, the data is streamed from the DBFS, if possible, otherwise an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**SUBSTR()**

If the LOB is linked, the data is streamed from the DBFS, if possible, otherwise an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**TRIM()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**WRITE()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

**WRITEAPPEND()**

If the LOB is linked, an exception is thrown.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## **DBMS\_SPACE Package**

The `DBMS_SPACE` PL/SQL package enables you to analyze segment growth and space requirements.

### **SPACE\_USAGE()**

The existing `SPACE_USAGE` procedure is overloaded to return information about LOB space usage. It returns the amount of disk space in blocks used by all the LOBs in the LOB segment. This procedure can only be used on tablespaces that are created with auto segment space management. See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

---

---

# Introducing the Oracle Database File System

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Why a Database File System?](#)
- [What is the Oracle Database File System \(DBFS\)?](#)

## Why a Database File System?

The Oracle Database has been commonly used to store files closely associated with database applications including CAD, medical images, invoice images, documents, etc. The SQL standard data type, BLOB (and CLOB) is used by applications to store files in the database. The Oracle Database provides much better security, availability, robustness, transactions, and scalability than traditional file systems. When files are stored in the database, they are backed up, synchronized to the disaster recovery site using Data Guard, and recovered along with the relational data in the database. This has made storing files in the database an appealing option for many applications.

In Oracle Database 11g, Oracle introduced Oracle SecureFiles LOBs. SecureFiles LOBs provide high performance storage for files, comparable to the performance of traditional file systems. SecureFiles LOBs support advanced features of compression, deduplication and encryption to files. Because SecureFiles LOBs maintain backward compatibility to BLOB (and CLOB), applications written against BLOBs continue to transparently work against SecureFiles LOBs, even with the previously mentioned features.

Database File System (DBFS) leverages the features of the database to store files, and the strengths of the database in efficiently managing relational data, to implement a standard file system interface for files stored in the database. With this interface, storing files in the database is no longer limited to programs specifically written to use BLOB and CLOB programmatic interfaces. Files in the database can now be transparently accessed using any operating system (OS) program that acts on files. For example, ETL (Extract, Transform and Load) tools can transparently store staging files in the database.

## What is the Oracle Database File System (DBFS)?

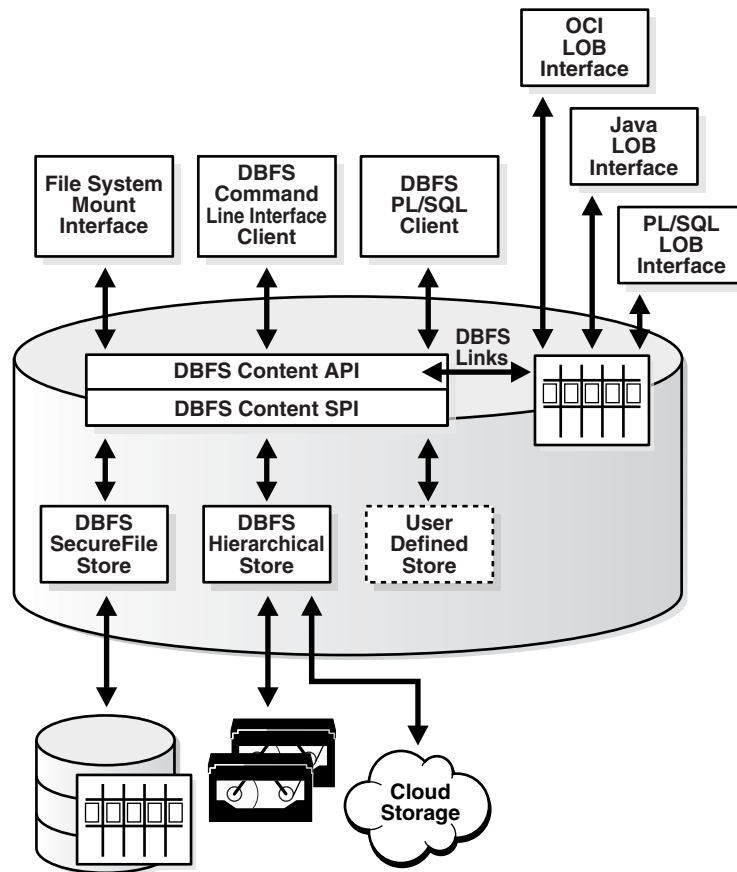
The Oracle Database File System (DBFS) creates a standard file system interface on top of files and directories that are stored in database tables. DBFS is similar to NFS in that it provides a shared network file system that looks like a local file system. Like NFS, there is a server component and a client component.

In DBFS, the server is the Oracle Database. Files are stored as SecureFiles LOBs in a database table. A set of PL/SQL procedures implement the file system access

primitives such as create, open, read, write, and list directory. The implementation of the file system in the database is called the DBFS Content Store. The DBFS Content Store allows each database user to create one or more file systems that can be mounted by clients. Each file system has its own dedicated tables that hold the file system content.

**See Also:** [Chapter 7, "DBFS Content API"](#) for information about content stores

**Figure 5–1 Oracle Database File System (DBFS)**



The DBFS Content API is the PL/SQL interface in the Oracle RDBMS that lies at the core of DBFS. It includes a programmatic interface that allows different types of storage to be supported, including user-defined storage.

The DBFS SecureFiles Store is a DBFS Content Store that utilizes a table with a SecureFiles LOB column to store the file system data. It implements POSIX-like capabilities.

The DBFS Hierarchical Store is a DBFS Content Store that allows files to be written to any tape storage units supported by Oracle Recovery Manager (RMAN) or to a cloud storage system. Currently, Amazon S3 is the only cloud storage system supported.

DBFS also has a client component that runs on each file system client machine called `dbfs_client`. The `dbfs_client` provides a command interface to allow files to be easily copied in and out of the database from any host on the network. It implements simple file system commands like `list` and `copy` in a manner that is similar to the shell utilities `ls` and `rcp`. The command interface creates a direct connection to the database without requiring an OS mount of DBFS.

On Linux, the `dbfs_client` also has a mount interface that utilizes the Filesystem in User Space (FUSE) kernel module to implement a file-system mount point that provides transparent access to the files stored in the database and requires no changes to the Linux kernel. It receives standard file system calls from the FUSE kernel module, and translates them into OCI calls to the PL/SQL procedures in the DBFS Content Store.

The files in the DBFS store can also be directly accessed by database applications through the PL/SQL interface. The PL/SQL interface allows database transactions and read consistency to span relational and file data.

DBFS can migrate SecureFiles from existing tables to other storage using DBFS Links. See "[PL/SQL Packages for SecureFiles LOBs and DBFS](#)" on page 4-24 for information about SecureFiles LOB DBFS Links.



---

---

## DBFS File System Client

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Installing DBFS](#)
- [DBFS Mounting Interface \(Linux Only\)](#)
- [Using the DBFS Command Interface](#)
- [DBFS Administration](#)

### Installing DBFS

This section discusses the steps required for the installation of DBFS.

This section contains the following topics:

- ["DBFS Prerequisites"](#) on page 6-1
- ["Installing FUSE \(Linux Only\)"](#) on page 6-1
- ["DBFS Installation Home"](#) on page 6-2
- ["Creating a File System"](#) on page 6-2
- ["Dropping a File System"](#) on page 6-3

### DBFS Prerequisites

- The `dbfs_client` can be used as a direct RDBMS client using the DBFS Command Interface only on Linux, Linux.X64, Solaris, Solaris64, AIX, HPUX and Windows platforms.
- The `dbfs_client` host must have the Oracle client libraries installed.
- The `dbfs_client` can be used as a mount client only on Linux and Linux.X64 platforms, and the following are also required:
  - The `dbfs_client` host must have the `kernel-devel` package installed to configure and build FUSE.
  - The `dbfs_client` host must have the FUSE Linux package installed.
  - A group named `fuse` must be created and the user name that is running the `dbfs_client` must be a member of the `fuse` group.

### Installing FUSE (Linux Only)

- Download the `kernel-devel` package from your Linux distributor that matches your Linux release.

- Download FUSE 2.7.4 package from <http://fuse.sourceforge.net/>.
- Install kernel-devel package. For example:
 

```
# rpm -i kernel-devel-2.6.18-8.el5.i686.rpm
```
- Determine the kernel directory. The kernel directory is usually `/usr/src/kernels/`uname -r`-`uname -p``
- Install FUSE.
 

```
$ tar -xzf fuse-2.7.4.tar.gz
$ cd [fuse_src_dir]
$ ./configure --prefix=/usr --with-kernel=[your kernel dir]
$ make
$ sudo su
# make install
# /sbin/depmod
# /sbin/modprobe fuse
# chmod 666 /dev/fuse
# echo "/sbin/modprobe fuse" >> /etc/rc.modules
```

## DBFS Installation Home

The DBFS installation home contains the SQL (.plb extension) scripts for the content store, and the `dbfs_client` executable.

## Creating a File System

At minimum, database users must have the following privileges to create a file system: GRANT CONNECT, CREATE SESSION, RESOURCE, CREATE TABLE, and CREATE PROCEDURE, and also DBFS\_ROLE.

Create a file system by running `dbfs_create_filesystem.sql` while logged in as a user with DBFS administrator privileges.

```
$ sqlplus @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/dbfs_create_filesystem.sql tablespace_name
file_system_name
```

The following example creates a file system called `staging_area` in the tablespace `dbfs_tbsp`. The tablespace has been previously created.

```
$ sqlplus @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/dbfs_create_filesystem.sql dbfs_tbsp
staging_area
```

`dbfs_create_filesystem.sql` creates a partitioned file system. Partitioning is the best performing and most scalable way to create a file system in DBFS. Partitioning creates multiple physical segments in the database and files are distributed randomly in these partitions.

Space cannot be shared between partitions, so it is possible for one partition to run out of space even when other partitions have space. This is usually not an issue if the file system size is big compared to the size of the individual files. However, if file sizes are a big percentage of the file system size, it may result in the `ENOSPC` error even if the file system is not full.

Another implication of partitioning is that a "rename" operation can require the file to be rewritten. This can be expensive if the file is big.

`dbfs_create_filesystem_advanced.sql` can be used to create a non-partitioned file system.



## Dropping a File System

Drop the file system by running `dbfs_drop_filesystem.sql`.

```
$ sqlplus @$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/admin/dbfs_drop_filesystem.sql file system name
```

## DBFS Mounting Interface (Linux Only)

This section discusses how to mount DBFS. It applies only to Linux.

This section contains the following topics:

- ["Mounting the DBFS Store"](#) on page 6-3
- ["Unmounting a File System"](#) on page 6-5
- ["Restrictions on Mounted File Systems"](#) on page 6-5
- ["Mounting DBFS Through fstab Utility"](#) on page 6-5

## Mounting the DBFS Store

Run the `dbfs_client` program to mount the DBFS store. Ensure that `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` has the correct path to the Oracle client libraries before calling this program. The `dbfs_client` program does not return until the file system is unmounted.

For the most secure method of specifying the password, see ["Using Oracle Wallet with DBFS Client"](#) on page 6-8.

The `dbfs_client` command has the following syntax:

```
dbfs_client db_user@db_server [-o option_1 -o option_2 ...] mount_point
```

where the mandatory parameters are:

- `db_user` is the name of the database user who owns the DBFS content store filesystem(s).
- `db_server` is a valid connect string to the Oracle Database server, such as `hrdb_host:1521/hrservice`.
- `mount_point` is the path where the Database File System is mounted. Note that all file systems owned by the database user are seen at the mount point.

and the options are:

- `direct_io` bypasses the Linux page cache, and provides improved performance for large files. Programs in the file system cannot be executed with this option. Oracle recommends this option when DBFS is used as an ETL staging area.
- `wallet` runs the DBFS client in the background. Wallet must be configured to get its credentials.
- `failover` fails over the DBFS client to the surviving database instance with no data loss. Expect some performance cost on writes, especially for small files.
- `allow_root` allows the root user to access the filesystem. This option requires setting the `user_allow_other` parameter in the `/etc/fuse.conf` configuration file.
- `allow_other` allows other users to access the filesystem. This option requires setting the `user_allow_other` parameter in the `/etc/fuse.conf` configuration file.

- `rw` mounts the filesystem as read-write; this is the default setting.
- `ro` mounts the filesystem as read-only; files cannot be modified.
- `trace_level=n` sets the trace level. Trace levels are:
  1. `DEBUG`
  2. `INFO`
  3. `WARNING`
  4. `ERROR`
  5. `CRITICAL`; this the the default setting
- `trace_file file_name | 'syslog'` specifies the trace log file

Prior to mounting a file system, you must create an Oracle Wallet and assign credentials for the appropriate DBFS database user; see ["Using Oracle Wallet with DBFS Client"](#) on page 6-8.

#### **Example 6-1 Mounting a File System**

1. Login as root user.
2. Add a new library path.
 

```
# echo "/usr/local/lib" >> /etc/ld.so.conf.d/usr_local_lib.conf
```
3. Change directory to `lib`, and create the following symbolic links to the `libclntsh.so.11.1` and `libnnz11.so` libraries.
 

```
# cd /usr/local/lib
# ln -s $ORACLE_HOME/lib/libclntsh.so.11.1
# ln -s $ORACLE_HOME/lib/libnnz11.so
```
4. Locate `libfuse.so`, and create a symbolic link this library.
 

```
# locate libfuse.so
determined_path/libfuse.so
# ln -s determined_path/libfuse.so
```
5. Run `ldconfig` to create the links and cache for the new symbolic links.
 

```
# ldconfig
```
6. Create a symbolic link to `dbfs_client` in `/sbin` as `mount.dbfs`.
 

```
# ln -s $ORACLE_HOME/bin/dbfs_client /sbin/mount.dbfs
```
7. Login as admin user. (Oracle recommends that you do not perform the next step as root user.)
8. Mount the DBFS store.
 

```
% dbfs_client @/dbfsdb -o wallet,rw,user,direct_io /mnt/dbfs
```
9. [Optional] To test if the previous step was successful, list the `dbfs` directory.
 

```
# ls /mnt/dbfs
```

#### **Example 6-2 Mounting a File System with Password at Command Prompt**

To mount a file system using `dbfs_client` by entering the password on the command prompt:

```
$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectionString /mnt/dbfs
password: xxxxxxxx
```

### Example 6-3 Mounting a File System with Password Read from a File

The following example mounts a file system and frees the terminal. It reads the password from a file:

```
$ nohup dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectionString /mnt/dbfs < passwordfile.f &
$ ls -l /mnt/dbfs
drwxrwxrwx 10 root root 0 Feb  9 17:28 staging_area
```

## Unmounting a File System

Run `fusermount` to unmount file systems.

```
$ fusermount -u <mount point>
```

## Restrictions on Mounted File Systems

DBFS supports most file system operations with the exception of `ioctl`, locking, asynchronous I/O through `libaio`, `O_DIRECT` file opens, hard links, pipes, and other special file modes. Memory-mapped files are supported except in shared-writable mode. For performance reasons, DBFS does not update the file access time every time file data or its attributes are read.

You cannot run programs from a DBFS-mounted file system if the `direct_io` option is specified.

## Mounting DBFS Through `fstab` Utility

File systems are commonly configured using the `fstab` utility in Linux. To mount DBFS through `/etc/fstab`, You must use Oracle Wallet for authentication. Run the following operations as `root` user.

### To mount DBFS through `fstab`:

1. Login as `root` user.
2. Change the user and group of `dbfs_client` to be user `root` and group `fuse`.

```
# chown root.fuse $ORACLE_HOME/bin/dbfs_client
```
3. Set the `setuid` bit on `dbfs_client`, and restrict execute privileges to the user and group only.

```
# chmod u+rwxs,g+rx-w,o-rwx dbfs_client
```
4. Create a symbolic link to `dbfs_client` in `/sbin` as `"mount.dbfs"`.

```
$ ln -s $ORACLE_HOME/bin/dbfs_client /sbin/mount.dbfs
```
5. Create a new Linux group called `"fuse"`.
6. Add the Linux user that is running the DBFS Client to the `fuse` group.
7. Add the following line to `/etc/fstab`:

```
/sbin/mount.dbfs#db_user@db_server mount_point fuse rw,user,noauto 0 0
```

For example:

```
/sbin/mount.dbfs#@DBConnectionString /mnt/dbfs fuse rw,user,noauto 0 0
```

8. The Linux user can mount the DBFS file system using the standard Linux mount command. For example:

```
$ mount /mnt/dbfs
```

Note that `FUSE` does not currently support automount.

## Using the DBFS Command Interface

The DBFS command interface allows files to be easily copied in and out of a DBFS file system from any host on the network. The command interface does not require mounting the file system, and has somewhat better performance than the mounting interface because it bypasses the user mode file system overhead, but it is not transparent to applications.

## Using DBFS

All DBFS content store paths must be preceded by `"dbfs:"`. For example: `dbfs:/staging_area/file1`. All database path names specified must be absolute paths. To run DBFS commands, specify `--command` to the DBFS client.

```
dbfs_client db_user@db_server --command command [switches] [arguments]
```

where:

- `command` is the executable command, such as `ls`, `cp`, `mkdir`, or `rm`.
- `switches` are specific for each command
- `arguments` are file names or directory names, and are specific for each command

Note that `dbfs_client` returns a nonzero value in case of failure.

This section contains the following topics:

- ["Creating a Directory"](#) on page 6-6
- ["Listing a Directory"](#) on page 6-6
- ["Copying Files and Directories"](#) on page 6-7
- ["Removing Files and Directories"](#) on page 6-7

### Creating a Directory

The `mkdir` command creates a new directory.

```
dbfs_client db_user@db_server --command mkdir directory_name
```

where `directory_name` is the name of the directory created. For example:

```
$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectString --command mkdir dbfs:/staging_area/dir1
```

### Listing a Directory

The `ls` command lists the contents of a directory.

```
dbfs_client db_user@db_server --command ls [switches] target
```

where `target` is the listed directory, and `switches` is any combination of the following:

- `-a` shows all files, including `'.'` and `'..'`.

- `-l` shows the long listing format: name of each file, the file type, permissions, and size.
- `-R` lists subdirectories, recursively.

For example:

```
$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectString --command ls dbfs:/staging_area/dir1

$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectString --command ls -l -a -R dbfs:/staging_area/dir1
```

## Copying Files and Directories

The `cp` command copies files or directories from the source location to the destination location. It also supports recursive copy of directories.

```
dbfs_client db_user@db_server --command cp [switches] source destination
```

where *source* is the source location, *destination* is the destination location, and *switches* is either `-R` or `-r`, the options to recursively copy all source contents into the destination directory.

The following example copies the contents of the local directory, `01-01-10-dump` recursively into a directory in DBFS:

```
$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectString --command cp -R 01-01-10-dump dbfs:/staging_area/
```

The following example copies the file `hello.txt` from DBFS to a local file `Hi.txt`:

```
$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectString --command cp dbfs:/staging_area/hello.txt Hi.txt
```

## Removing Files and Directories

The command `rm` deletes a file or directory. It also supports recursive delete of directories.

```
dbfs_client db_user@db_server --command rm [switches] target
```

where *target* is the listed directory, and *switches* is either `-R` or `-r`, the options to recursively delete all contents. For example:

```
$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectString --command rm dbfs:/staging_area/srcdir/hello.txt

$ dbfs_client ETLUser@DBConnectString --command rm -R dbfs:/staging_area/dir1
```

# DBFS Administration

This sections describes the DBFS administration tools.

This section contains the following topics:

- ["Using Oracle Wallet with DBFS Client"](#) on page 6-8
- ["File System Security Model"](#) on page 6-8
- ["Performing DBFS Diagnostics"](#) on page 6-13
- ["Managing DBFS Client Failover"](#) on page 6-13
- ["Sharing and Caching DBFS"](#) on page 6-14
- ["Backing up DBFS"](#) on page 6-14
- ["Improving Small File Performance of DBFS"](#) on page 6-14
- ["Enabling Advanced SecureFiles LOB Features for DBFS"](#) on page 6-15

## Using Oracle Wallet with DBFS Client

An Oracle Wallet allows the DBFS client to mount a DBFS store without the user having to enter a password. Please refer to *Oracle Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide* for more information about creation and management of wallets. The "/"@ syntax means to use the wallet.

### To create an Oracle Wallet:

1. Create a directory for the wallet. For example:

```
mkdir $ORACLE_HOME/oracle/wallet
```

2. Create an auto-login wallet.

```
mkstore -wrl $ORACLE_HOME/oracle/wallet -create
```

3. Add the wallet location in the client's `sqlnet.ora` file:

```
vi $TNS_ADMIN/sqlnet.ora
WALLET_LOCATION = (SOURCE = (METHOD = FILE) (METHOD_DATA = (DIRECTORY =
  $ORACLE_HOME/oracle/wallet) ) )
```

4. Add the following parameter in the client's `sqlnet.ora` file:

```
vi $TNS_ADMIN/sqlnet.ora
SQLNET.WALLET_OVERRIDE = TRUE
```

5. Create credentials:

```
mkstore -wrl wallet_location -createCredential db_connect_string username
password
```

For example:

```
mkstore -wrl $ORACLE_HOME/oracle/wallet -createCredential DBConnectionString scott
tiger
```

6. Add the connection alias to your `tnsnames.ora` file.

7. Use you can use `dbfs_client` with Oracle Wallet.

For example:

```
$ dbfs_client -o wallet /@DBConnectionString /mnt/dbfs
```

## File System Security Model

The database manages the security in the DBFS, not the operating system security model. Access to a database file system requires a database login as a database user with privileges on the tables that underly the file system. Access to the file system may be granted to users by the database administrator; this implies that different database users may have different `READ` or `UPDATE` privileges to the file system, as determined by database administrator. The database administrator of course has access to all files stored in the DBFS file system.

On the client machine, access to a DBFS mount point is limited to the operating system user that mounts the file system. This, however, does not limit the number of users who can access the DBFS, because many users may separately mount the same DBFS file system.

Linux performs operating system file-level permission checking when a DBFS file system is mounted. This check is not performed by DBFS either when using the

command interface, or when using the PL/SQL interface directly. Instead, it performs only database privilege checking.

DBFS operates under a security model where all filesystems created by a user are private to that user, as default. Oracle recommends maintaining this model. Because operating system users and RDBMS users are different, it is possible to allow multiple operating system users to mount a single DBFS filesystem. These mounts may potentially have different mount options and permissions. For example, `user1` may mount the DBFS as `READ ONLY`, and `user2` may mount it as `READ WRITE`. However, RDBMS views both users as having the same privileges because they would be accessing the filesystem as the same RDBMS user.

This section contains the following topics:

- ["Enabling Shared Root Access"](#) on page 6-9
- ["Enabling DBFS Access Among Multiple RDBMS Users"](#) on page 6-9

### Enabling Shared Root Access

The operating system user who mounts the file system may allow root access to the file system by specifying the `allow_root` option. This option requires that `/etc/fuse.conf` file contain the `user_allow_other` field, as demonstrated in [Example 6-4](#).

#### **Example 6-4 Enabling Root Access for Other Users**

```
# Allow users to specify the 'allow_root' mount option.
user_allow_other
```

### Enabling DBFS Access Among Multiple RDBMS Users

Some circumstances may require that multiple RDBMS users access the same filesystem. For example, the RDBMS user that owns the filesystem may be a privileged user and sharing its user credentials may pose a security risk. To mitigate this, DBFS allows multiple RDBMS users to share a subset of the filesystem state.

While DBFS registrations and mounts made through the DBFS content API are private to each user, the underlying filesystem and the tables on which they rely may be shared across users. After this is done, the individual filesystems may be independently mounted and used by different RDBMS users, either through SQL/PLSQL, or through `dbfs_client` APIs.

In the following example, user `user1` is able to modify the filesystem, and user `user2` can see these changes. Here, `user1` is the RDBMS user that creates a filesystem, and `user2` is the RDBMS user that eventually uses `dbfs_client` to mount and access the filesystem. Both `user1` and `user2` must have the `DBFS_ROLE` privilege.

#### **To establish DBFS access sharing across multiple RDBMS users:**

1. Connect as the user who creates the filesystem.

```
sys@tank as sysdba> connect user1
Connected.
```

2. Create the filesystem `user1_FS`, register the store, and mount it as `user1_mt`.

```
user1@tank> exec dbms_dbfs_sfs.createFilesystem('user1_FS');
user1@tank> exec dbms_dbfs_content.registerStore('user1_FS', 'posix',
'DBMS_DBFS_SFS');
user1@tank> exec dbms_dbfs_content.mountStore('user1_FS', 'user1_mnt');
```

```
user1@tank> commit;
```

3. [Optional] You may check that the previous step has completed successfully by viewing all mounts.

```
user1@tank> select * from table(dbms_dbfs_content.listMounts);
```

```

STORE_NAME          |   STORE_ID|PROVIDER_NAME
-----|-----|-----
PROVIDER_PKG        |PROVIDER_ID|PROVIDER_VERSION   |STORE_FEATURES
-----|-----|-----|-----
STORE_GUID
-----
STORE_MOUNT
-----
CREATED
-----
MOUNT_PROPERTIES (PROPNAME, PROPVALUE, TYPECODE)
-----
user1_FS            | 1362968596|posix
"DBMS_DBFS_SFS"    | 3350646887|0.5.0              | 12714135  141867344
user1_mnt
01-FEB-10 09.44.25.357858 PM
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T(
  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('principal', (null), 9),
  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('owner', (null), 9),
  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('acl', (null), 9),
  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('asof', (null), 187),
  DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('read_only', '0', 2))

```

4. [Optional] Connect as the user who will use the dbfs\_client.

```
user1@tank> connect user2
Connected.
```

5. [Optional] Note that user2 cannot see user1's DBFS state, as he has no mounts.

```
user2@tank> select * from table(dbms_dbfs_content.listMounts);
```

6. While connected as user1, export filesystem user1\_FS for access to any user with DBFS\_ROLE privilege.

```
user1@tank> exec dbms_dbfs_sfs.exportFilesystem('user1_FS');
user1@tank> commit;
```

7. Connect as the user who will use the dbfs\_client.

```
user1@tank> connect user2
Connected.
```

8. As user2, view all available mounts.

```
user2@tank> select * from table(dbms_dbfs_content.listMounts);
```

```

SCHEMA_NAME          |TABLE_NAME          |PTABLE_NAME
-----|-----|-----
VERSION#
-----
CREATED
-----
FORMATTED
-----

```



```

PROPERTIES (PROPNAME, PROPVALUE, TYPECODE)
-----
user1                |SFSS$_FST_11          |SFSS$_FSTP_11
0.5.0
01-FEB-10 09.43.53.497856 PM
01-FEB-10 09.43.53.497856 PM
(null)

```

9. As user2, register and mount the store, but do not re-create the user1\_FS filesystem.

```

user2@tank> exec dbms_dbfs_sfs.registerFilesystem(
    'user2_FS', 'user1', 'SFSS$_FST_11');
user2@tank> exec dbms_dbfs_content.registerStore(
    'user2_FS', 'posix', 'DBMS_DBFS_SFS');
user2@tank> exec dbms_dbfs_content.mountStore(
    'user2_FS', 'user2_mnt');
user2@tank> commit;

```

10. [Optional] As user2, you may check that the previous step has completed successfully by viewing all mounts.

```

user2@tank> select * from table(dbms_dbfs_content.listMounts);

STORE_NAME          | STORE_ID | PROVIDER_NAME
-----
PROVIDER_PKG        | PROVIDER_ID | PROVIDER_VERSION | STORE_FEATURES
-----
STORE_GUID
-----
STORE_MOUNT
-----
CREATED
-----
MOUNT_PROPERTIES (PROPNAME, PROPVALUE, TYPECODE)
-----
user2_FS            | 1362968596 | posix
"DBMS_DBFS_SFS"    | 3350646887 | 0.5.0            | 12714135 141867344
user1_mnt
01-FEB-10 09.46.16.013046 PM
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTIES_T(
    DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('principal', (null), 9),
    DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('owner', (null), 9),
    DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('acl', (null), 9),
    DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('asof', (null), 187),
    DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T('read_only', '0', 2))

```

11. [Optional] List pathnames for user2 and user1. Note that another mount, user2\_mnt, for store user2\_FS, is available for user2. However, the the underlying filesystem data is the same for user2 as for user1.

```

user2@tank> select pathname from dbfs_content;

PATHNAME
-----
/user2_mnt
/user2_mnt/.sfs/tools
/user2_mnt/.sfs/snapshots
/user2_mnt/.sfs/content
/user2_mnt/.sfs/attributes

```

```

/user2_mnt/.sfs/RECYCLE
/user2_mnt/.sfs

user2@tank> connect user1
Connected.

user1@tank> select pathname from dbfs_content;

PATHNAME
-----
/user1_mnt
/user1_mnt/.sfs/tools
/user1_mnt/.sfs/snapshots
/user1_mnt/.sfs/content
/user1_mnt/.sfs/attributes
/user1_mnt/.sfs/RECYCLE
/user1_mnt/.sfs

```

**12. In filesystem user1\_FS, user1 creates file xxx.**

```

user1@tank> var ret number;
user1@tank> var data blob;
user1@tank> exec :ret := dbms_fuse.fs_create('/user1_mnt/xxx', content =>
:data);
user1@tank> select :ret from dual;
      :RET
-----
      0

```

**13. [Optional] Write to file xxx, created in the previous step.**

```

user1@tank> var buf varchar2(100);
user1@tank> exec :buf := 'hello world';
user1@tank> exec dbms_lob.writeappend(:data, length(:buf),
utl_raw.cast_to_raw(:buf));
user1@tank> commit;

```

**14. [Optional] Show that file xxx exists, and contains the appended data.**

```

user1@tank> select pathname, utl_raw.cast_to_varchar2(filedata)
from dbfs_content where filedata is not null;

```

```

PATHNAME
-----
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_VARCHAR2 (FILEDATA)
-----
/user1_mnt/xxx
hello world

```

**15. User user2 sees the same file in their own DBFS-specific pathname and mount prefix.**

```

user1@tank> connect user2
Connected.

user2@tank> select pathname, utl_raw.cast_to_varchar2(filedata) from
dbfs_content where filedata is not null;

```

```

PATHNAME
-----
UTL_RAW.CAST_TO_VARCHAR2 (FILEDATA)
-----

```

```
/user2_mnt/xxx
hello world
```

After the export and register pairing completes, both users behave as equals with regard to their usage of the underlying tables. The `exportFilesystem()` procedure manages the necessary grants for access to the same data, which is shared between schemas. After `user1` calls `exportFilesystem()`, the filesystem access may be granted to any user with `DBFS_ROLE`. Note that a different role can be specified.

Subsequently, `user2` may create a new DBFS filesystem that shares the same underlying storage as the `user1_FS` filesystem, by invoking `dbms_dbfs_sfs.registerFilesystem()`, `dbms_dbfs_sfs.registerStore()`, and `dbms_dbfs_sfs.mountStore()` procedure calls.

When multiple RDBMS users share a filesystem, they must ensure that all RDBMS users unregister their interest in the filesystem before the owner (here, `user1`) drops the filesystem.

Oracle does not recommend that the root user run the DBFS.

## Performing DBFS Diagnostics

The `dbfs_client` supports multiple levels of tracing to help diagnose problems. The `dbfs_client` can either output traces to a file or to `/var/log/messages` using the `syslog` daemon on Linux. When tracing to a file, it keeps two trace files on disk. `dbfs_client` rotates the trace files automatically and limits disk usage to 20 MB.

By default, tracing is turned off except for critical messages which are always logged to `/var/log/messages`.

If `dbfs_client` is not able to connect to the Oracle Database, enable tracing using `trace_level` and `trace_file` options. Tracing prints additional messages to log file for easier debugging.

DBFS uses Oracle Database for storing files. Sometimes Oracle server issues are propagated to `dbfs_client` as errors. If there is a `dbfs_client` error, please see the Oracle server logs to see if that is the root cause.

## Managing DBFS Client Failover

In cases of failure of one database instance in an Oracle RAC cluster, `dbfs_client` can failover to one of the other existing database instances. For `dbfs_client` failover to work correctly, you must modify the Oracle database service and specify failover parameters, as demonstrated in [Example 6-5](#).

### Example 6-5 Enabling DBFS Client Failover Events

```
exec DBMS_SERVICE.MODIFY_SERVICE(service_name => 'service_name',
                                aq_ha_notifications => true,
                                failover_method => 'BASIC',
                                failover_type => 'SELECT',
                                failover_retries => 180,
                                failover_delay => 1);
```

To ensure no data loss during failover of the DBFS connection after a failure of the back-end Oracle database instance, specify the `-o failover` mount option, as demonstrated in [Example 6-6](#). In this case, cached 'writes' may be lost if the client loses the connection. However, back-end failover to other Oracle RAC instances or standby databases does not cause lost writes.

**Example 6–6 Preventing Data Loss During Failover Events**

```
$ dbfs_client database_user@database_server -o failover /mnt/dbfs
```

## Sharing and Caching DBFS

It is possible to have multiple copies of `dbfs_client` accessing the same shared file system. The sharing and caching semantics are similar to NFS. Like NFS, the default mode caches writes on the client and flushes them after a timeout, or the user closes the file. Also like NFS, writes to a file are only visible to clients that open the file after the writer closed the file. This behavior is commonly referred to as *close-to-open cache consistency*.

To bypass client side write caching, specify `O_SYNC` when the file is opened. Writes in the cache can be forced to disk by calling `fsync`.

## Backing up DBFS

There are two alternatives for backing up DBFS. In the first one, you must back up the tables that underly the file system at the database level. Alternatively, use a file system backup utility, such as Oracle Secure Backup, through a mount point.

This section contains the following topics:

- ["Backing up DBFS at the Database Level"](#) on page 6-14
- ["Backing up DBFS through a File System Utility"](#) on page 6-14

### Backing up DBFS at the Database Level

An advantage of backing up the tables at the database level is that the files in the file system are always consistent with the relational data in the database. A full restore and recover of the database also fully restores and recovers the file system with no data loss. During a point-in-time recovery of the database, the files are recovered to the specified time. As usual with database backup, modifications that occur during the backup do not affect the consistency of a restore. The entire restored file system is always consistent with respect to a specified time stamp.

### Backing up DBFS through a File System Utility

The advantage of backing up the file system using a file system backup utility is that individual files can be restored from backup more easily. Any changes made to the restored files after the last backup are lost.

You must specify the `allow_root` mount option if backups are scheduled using the Oracle Secure Backup Administrative Server.

## Improving Small File Performance of DBFS

Like any shared file system, the performance of DBFS for small files lags the performance of a local file system. Each file data or metadata operation in DBFS must go through the `FUSE` user mode file system, and then be forwarded across the network to the database. Therefore, each operation that is not cached on the client takes a few milliseconds to run in DBFS.

For operations that involve an input/output (IO) to disk, the time delay overhead is masked by the wait for the disk IO. Naturally, larger IOs have a lower percentage overhead than smaller IOs. The network overhead is more noticeable for operations that do not issue a disk IO.

When you compare the operations on a few small files with a local file system, the overhead is not noticeable, but operations that affect thousands of small files incur a much more noticeable overhead. For example, listing a single directory or looking at a single file produce near instantaneous response, while searching across a directory tree with many thousands of files results in a larger relative overhead.

## Enabling Advanced SecureFiles LOB Features for DBFS

DBFS offers the advanced features available with SecureFiles LOBs: compression, deduplication, encryption, and partitioning. For example, DBFS can be configured as a compressed file system with partitioning. At the time of creating a file system, you must specify the set of enabled features for the file system. See [Chapter 4, "Using Oracle SecureFiles LOBs"](#) for more information about the features of SecureFiles LOBs.

### **Example 6–7 Enabling Advanced Secure Files LOB Features for DBFS**

```
$ sqlplus @dbfs_create_filesystem_advanced tablespace_name file_systemname
  [compress-high | compress-medium | compress-low | nocompress]
  [deduplicate | nodeduplicate]
  [encrypt | noencrypt]
  [partition | non-partition]
```



---

---

## DBFS Content API

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Overview of DBFS Content API](#)
- [Stores and Package DBMS\\_DBFS\\_CONTENT](#)

### Overview of DBFS Content API

The DBFS Content API is a collection of methods that provide a file system-like abstraction. It is backed by one or more DBFS Store Providers. The "Content" in the DBFS Content API is file plus metadata and it can either map to a SecureFiles BLOB (and other columns) in a table or be dynamically created by user-written plug-ins in Java or PL/SQL that run inside the database. This latter form is what is referred to as a "provider."

DBFS Content API comes with a SecureFiles-based store provider implementation (DBMS\_DBFS\_SFS) to allow creation of SecureFiles LOB-based file systems. Additionally, applications can read and write content that is stored in other (third party) stores through the standard DBFS Content API interface.

Examples of possible providers include:

- Content applications like Content DB.
- Packaged applications that want to surface data through files.
- Custom applications that want to leverage the file system interface. For example, an application that stores medical images.

### Stores and Package DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT

A store is a collection of documents, each identified by a unique absolute path name, represented as a '/' followed by one or more component names that are separated by a '/'. Some stores may implement only a flat namespace, others might implement directories or folders implicitly, while still others may implement a comprehensive file system-like collection of entities. These may include hierarchical directories, files, symbolic links, hard links, references, and so on. They often include a rich set of metadata associated with documents, and a rich set of behaviors with respect to security, access control, locking, versioning, content addressing, retention control, and so on.

Because stores are typically designed and evolve independently of each other, applications that use a specific store are either written and packaged by the developers of the store, or else require the user to employ a store-specific API. This often requires

a detailed knowledge of the schema of the database tables that are used to implement the store itself.

The DBFS Content API is a client-side programmatic API package, `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT`, that abstracts out the common features of various stores into a simple and minimalist interface that can be used to build portable client applications while being insulated from store-specific libraries and implementations.

The DBFS Content API aggregates the path namespace of one or more stores into a single unified namespace, using the first component of the path name to disambiguate, and presents this namespace to client applications. This allows clients to access the underlying documents using either a full absolute path name represented by a single string (`/store_name/store_specific_path_name`), or a store-qualified path name represented by a string tuple (`store_name, /store_specific_path_name`).

The DBFS Content API then takes care of correctly dispatching various operations on path names to the appropriate stores, and integrating the results back into the client-desired namespace.

Store providers must conform to the service provider interface (SPI) as declared by the package `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI`. The SPI is not a client-side API and serves as a private contract between the implementation of the DBFS Content API and various stores that have to be plugged into it.

The DBFS Content API defines client-visible behavior, both normal and exceptional, of various store operations, while allowing different stores to implement as rich a set of features as they choose. The API allows stores to self-describe their capabilities and allows intelligent client applications to tune their behavior based on these capabilities rather than hard-code logic specific to stores identified by name or by implementation.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` package

## Getting Started with DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT Package

`DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` is part of the Oracle Database, starting with Oracle Database 11g Release 2, and does not have to be installed.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### DBFS Content API Role

Access to the Content operational and administrative API (packages, types, tables, and so on) is available through `dbfs_role`. This role can be granted to all users as needed.

### Path Name Constants and Types

`PATH_MAX` is the maximum length of an absolute path name visible to clients. `NAME_MAX` is the maximum length of any individual component of an absolute path name visible to clients. These constants are modeled after their SecureFiles LOB Store counterparts.

PL/SQL types `path_t` and `name_t` are portable aliases for strings that can represent path names and component names.

### Content Properties

Every path name in a store is associated with a set of properties. For simplicity and generality, each property is identified by a string name, has a string value, possibly `null` if not set or undefined or unsupported by a specific store implementation, and a



value typecode, a numeric discriminant for the actual type of value held in the value string.

Coercing property values to strings has the advantage of making the various interfaces uniform and compact, and can even simplify implementation of the underlying stores. However, this has the disadvantage of the potential for information loss during conversions to and from strings.

- It is expected that clients and stores use well-defined database conventions for these conversions, and use the `typecode` field as appropriate.
- `PROPNAME_MAX` is the maximum length of a property name, and `PROPVAL_MAX` is the maximum length of the string value of a property.
- PL/SQL types `propname_t` and `propval_t` are portable aliases for strings that can represent property names and values. A typecode is a numeric value (see the various constants defined in `dbms_types`) representing the true type of a string-coerced property value. Not all typecodes defined in `dbms_types` are necessarily even supportable in stores. Simple scalar types (numbers, dates, timestamps, and so on) can be depended upon by clients and must be implemented by stores.

Because standard RDBMS typecodes are positive integers, the DBFS Content API allows negative integers to represent client-defined types by negative typecodes. These typecodes do not conflict with standard typecodes, and are made persistent and returned to the client as needed, but need not be interpreted by the DBFS Content API or any particular store. Portable client applications must not use user-defined typecodes as a back-door way of passing information to specific stores.

- The `dbms_dbfs_content_property_t` object type describes a single (name, value, typecode) property tuple. All properties: standard, optional, and user-defined, are described through such tuples.
- `dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t` is a variable-sized array of property tuples. These two types are used by both the client-facing APIs and by the store providers for the DBFS Content API.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` constants and properties, and *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_PROPERTY_T` package.

## Path Name Types

Stores can store and provide access to four types of entities:

- `type_file` is a regular file that stores content as a logically linear sequence of bytes accessed as a BLOB.
- `type_directory` is a container of other path name types, including file types.
- `type_link` is a symbolic link that is an uninterpreted string value associated with a path name. Because symbolic links may represent path names that fall outside the scope of any given store, or even the entire aggregation of stores managed by the DBFS Content API, or may not even represent path names, clients must be careful in creating symbolic links and stores must be careful in trying to resolve these links internally.
- `type_reference` is a hard link, always a valid path name alias, to content.

Not all stores must implement all directories, links, or references. See ["Store Features"](#) on page 7-4, and *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` constants and path name types.

## Store Features

In order to provide a common programmatic interface to as many different types of stores as possible, the DBFS Content API leaves some of the behavior of various operations to individual store providers to define and implement. However, it is still important to provide client-side programmers with an API that is sufficiently rich and conducive to portable applications.

The DBFS Content API achieves this by allowing different store providers (and different stores) to describe themselves as a feature set (a bit mask indicating which features they support and which ones they do not).

Using the feature set, it is possible, although tricky, for client applications to compensate for the feature deficiencies of specific stores by implementing additional logic on the client side, and deferring complex operations to stores capable of supporting them.

- `feature_folders` is set if the store supports folders (or directories) as part of hierarchical path names.
- `feature_foia` is set if implicit folder operations within the store (performed as part of a client-requested operation) runs inside autonomous transactions. In general, the use of autonomous transactions is a compromise between simplicity in the implementation and client-controlled transaction scope for all operations, at the cost of greatly reduced concurrency (`feature_foia` not set), and more complex implementation and smaller client-controlled transaction scope, at the benefit of greatly increased concurrency (`feature_foia` set).

Access to read-only or read-mostly stores should not be greatly affected by this feature.

- `feature_acls` is set if the store supports access control lists (ACLs) and internal authorization and checking based on these ACLs. ACLs are standard properties, but a store may do nothing more than store and retrieve the ACLs without interpreting them in any way.
- `feature_links` or `feature_link_deref` are set if the store supports symbolic links, and if certain types of symbolic links, such as specifically non-absolute path names, can be internally resolved by the store itself.
- `feature_references` is set if the store supports hard links.
- `feature_locking` is set if the store supports user-level locks, read-only, write-only, or read-write, that can be applied on various items of the store, and if the store uses these lock settings to control various types of accesses to the locked items. User-level locks are orthogonal to transaction locks and persist beyond the scope of any specific transaction, session, or connection. This implies that the store itself may not be able to clean up after dangling locks, and client-applications must perform any garbage collection.
- `feature_lock_hierarchy` is set if the store allows a user-lock to control access to the entire sub-tree under the locked path name. A simpler locking model would have locking semantics that apply only to a specific path name, and depend on the locks placed on its parents or children, unless the requested operation implicitly modifies these parents or children.
- `feature_lock_convert` is set if the store supports upgrade and downgrade of locks from one mode to another.
- `feature_versioning` is set if the store supports at least a linear versioning and version management. Different versions of the same path name are identified by

monotonic version numbers, with a version-nonqualified path name representing the latest version.

- `feature_version_path` is set if the store supports a hierarchical namespace for different versions of a path name.
- `feature_soft_deletes` is set if the store supports a soft-delete, deleting a path name and making it invisible to normal operations, but retaining the ability to restore the path name at a later time if it has not been overwritten by a new create operation. The store also supports purging soft-deleted path names, making them truly deleted, and navigation modes that show soft-deleted items.
- `feature_hashing` is set if the store automatically computes and maintains some type of a secure hash of the contents of a path name, typically a `type_file` path.
- `feature_hash_lookup` is set if the store allows content-based addressing, or the ability to locate a content item based not on its path name but on its content hash.
- `feature_filtering` is set if the store allows clients to pass a filter function, a PL/SQL function that conforms to a specific function signature, that returns a logical boolean indicating if a given store item satisfies a selection predicate. Stores that support filtering may be able to more efficiently perform item listing, directory navigation, and deletions by embedding the filtering logic inside their implementation. If filtering is not supported, clients can retrieve more items than necessary and perform the filtering checks themselves, although less efficiently.

A filter predicate is a function with the following signature:

```
function filterFunction(
    path          in    varchar2,
    store_name    in    varchar2,
    opcode        in    integer,
    item_type     in    integer,
    properties    in    dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t,
    content       in    blob)
return integer;
```

Any PL/SQL function conforming to this signature can examine the contents and properties of a store item, and decide if the item satisfies the selection criterion for the current operation. A return value of `true` (non-zero) results in the DBFS Content API processing the item as part of the current operation; a return value of `false` (zero or null) results in the item being skipped entirely from processing.

- `feature_searching` is set if the store allows clients to pass a text-search filter query to locate `type_file` path names based on their content. Stores that support searching may use indexes to accelerate such searches; otherwise, clients must build their own indexes, or else search a potentially larger set of items to locate the ones of interest for the current search.
- `feature_asof` is set if the store allows clients to use a flashback timestamp in query operations (non-mutating `getPath()`, `list`, `search`).
- `feature_provider_props` is set if the store allows per-operation properties (that control the behavior of the store with respect to the current operation, as opposed to properties associated with individual items).

*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT Constants - Store Features.

## Lock Types

Stores that support locking should implement three types of locks: `lock_read_only`, `lock_write_only`, `lock_read_write`.

User locks (one of the three types) can be associated with a user-supplied `lock_data`. This is not interpreted by the store, but can be used by client applications for their own purposes (for example, the user data could indicate the time at which the lock was placed, assuming some part of the client application is interested in later using this information to control its actions, for example, garbage collecting stale locks or explicitly break locks).

In the simplest locking model, a `lock_read_only` prevents all explicit modifications to a path name (but allows implicit modifications, and changes to parent/child path names). A `lock_write_only` prevents all explicit reads to the path name (but allows implicit reads, and reads to parent/child path names). A `lock_read_write` allows both.

All locks are associated with a principal user who performs the locking operation; stores that support locking are expected to preserve this information, and use it to perform read/write lock checking (see `opt_locker`).

More complex lock models: multiple read-locks, lock-scoping across path name hierarchies, lock conversions, group-locking, and so on, are possible but currently not defined by the DBFS Content API.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` constants and lock types.

## Standard Properties

Standard properties are well-defined, mandatory properties associated with all content path names that all stores must support, in the manner described by the DBFS Content API, with some concessions such as a read-only store need not implement a `modification_time` or `creation_time`; stores created against tables with a fixed schema may choose reasonable defaults for as many of these properties as needed, and so on.

All standard properties informally use the `std:` namespace. Clients and stores should avoid using this namespace to define their own properties because this may cause conflicts in the future.

The menu of the following standard properties is expected to be fairly stable over time.

- `std_access_time` (TYPECODE\_TIMESTAMP in UTC)  
The time of last access of the contents of a path name.
- `std_acl` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
The access control list (in standard ACL syntax) associated with the path name.
- `std_canonical_path` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
The canonical store-specific path name of an item, suitably cleaned up (leading/, trailing / collapsed, trimmed, and so on).
- `std_change_time` (TYPECODE\_TIMESTAMP in UTC)  
The time of last change to the metadata of a path name.
- `std_children` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
The number of child directories or folders a directory or folder path has (this property should be available in providers that support `feature_folders`).

- `std_content_type` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
The client-supplied mime-type(s) (in standard RFC syntax) describing the (typically `type_file`) path name. The content type is not necessarily interpreted by the store.
- `std_creation_time` (TYPECODE\_TIMESTAMP in UTC)  
The time at which the item was created (once set, this value never changes for the lifetime of the path name).
- `std_deleted` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER as a boolean)  
Set to a non-zero number if the path name has been soft-deleted (see above for this feature), but not yet purged.
- `std_guid` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
A store-specific unique identifier for a path name. Clients must not depend on the GUID being unique across different stores, but a given (*store-name*, *store-specific-pathname*) has a stable and unique GUID for its lifetime.
- `std_length` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
The length of the content (BLOB) of a `type_file` or `type_reference` path, or the length of the referent of a `type_link` symbolic link. Directories do not have a well-defined length and stores are free to set this property to zero, null, or any other value they choose.
- `std_modification_time` (TYPECODE\_TIMESTAMP in UTC)  
The time of last change to the data associated with a path name. Change to the content of a `type_file` or `type_reference` path, the referent of the `type_link` path, and addition or deletion of immediate children in a `type_directory` path, all constitute data changes.
- `std_owner` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
A client-supplied (or implicit) owner name for the path name. The owner name may be used along with the current principal for access checks by stores that support ACLs and or locking.
- `std_parent_guid` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
A store-specific unique identifier for the parent of a path name. Clients must not depend on the GUID being unique across different stores, but a given (*store-name*, *store-specific-pathname*) has a stable and unique GUID for its lifetime.
- `std_parent_guid (pathname == std_guid(parent(pathname)))`
- `std_referent` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
The content of the symbolic link of a `type_link` path; null otherwise. As mentioned before, the `std_referent` can be an arbitrary string and must not necessarily be interpreted as path name by clients (or such interpretation should be done with great care).

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT constants and standard properties.

### Optional Properties

Optional properties are well-defined but non-mandatory properties associated with all content path names that all stores are free to support (but only in the manner

described by the DBFS Content API). Clients should be prepared to deal with stores that support none of the optional properties.

All optional properties informally use the `opt` namespace. Clients and stores must avoid using this namespace to define their own properties because this can cause conflicts in the future.

The menu of the following optional properties is expected to be expand over time.

- `opt_hash_type` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
The type of hash provided in the `opt_hash_value` property; see `dbms_crypto` for possible options.
- `opt_hash_value` (TYPECODE\_RAW)  
The hash value of type `opt_hash_type` describing the content of the path name.
- `opt_lock_count` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
The number of (compatible) locks placed on a path name. If different principals are allowed to place compatible (read) locks on a path, the `opt_locker` must specify all lockers (with repeats so that lock counts can be correctly maintained).
- `opt_lock_data` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
The client-supplied user-data associated with a user lock, uninterpreted by the store.
- `opt_locker` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
The implicit or client-specified principal(s) that applied a user lock on a path name.
- `opt_lock_status` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
One of the values (`lock_read_only`, `lock_write_only`, `lock_read_write`) describing the type of lock currently applied on a path name.
- `opt_version` (TYPECODE\_NUMBER)  
A sequence number for linear versioning of a path name.
- `opt_version_path` (TYPECODE\_VARCHAR2)  
A version path name for hierarchical versioning of a path name.

*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` constants and optional properties.

### Property Access Flags

DBFS Content API methods to get and set properties can use combinations of property access flags to fetch properties from different namespaces in a single API call.

- `prop_none`  
Used when the client is not interested in any properties, and is invoking the content access method for other reasons, such as path name existence, lockability validation, data access, and so on.
- `prop_std`  
Used when the client is interested in the standard properties; all standard properties are retrieved if this flag is specified.
- `prop_opt`

Used when the client is interested in the optional properties; all optional properties are retrieved if this flag is specified.

- `prop_usr`

Used when the client is interested in the user-defined properties; all user-defined properties are retrieved if this flag is specified.

- `prop_all`

An alias for the combination of all standard, optional, and user-defined properties.

- `prop_data`

Used when the client is interested only in data access, and does not care about properties.

- `prop_spc`

Used when the client is interested in a mix-and-match of different subsets of various property namespaces; the names of the specific properties to fetch are passed into the DBFS Content API method call as arguments, and only these property values are fetched and returned to the client. This is useful in cases where there are a very large number of properties potentially accessible, but the client is interested in only a small number of them, and knows the names of those properties beforehand.

`prop_spc` is applicable only to the various `getPath()` operations. Other operations that specify properties simply ignore `prop_spc` specifications.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` constants and property access flags.

## Exceptions

DBFS Content API operations can raise any one of the following top-level exceptions.

Clients can program against these specific exceptions in their error handlers without worrying about the specific store implementations of the underlying error signalling code.

Store service providers, for their part, should do their best to trap and wrap any internal exceptions into one of the following exception types, as appropriate.

*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` constants and optional codes.

## Property Bundles

- The `property_t` record type describes a single (value, typecode) property value tuple; the property name is implied (see `properties_t` in the next code snippet).
- `properties_t` is a name-indexed hash table of property tuples. The implicit hash-table association between the index and the value allows the client to build up the full `dbms_dbfs_content_property_t` tuples for a `properties_t`.

There is an approximate correspondence between `dbms_dbfs_content_property_t` and `property_t`. The former is a SQL object type that describes the full property tuple, while the latter is a PL/SQL record type that describes only the property value component.

There is an approximate correspondence between `dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t` and `properties_t`. The former is a SQL nested table type, while the latter is a PL/SQL hash table type.

Dynamic SQL calling conventions force the use of SQL types, but PL/SQL code may be implemented more conveniently in terms of the hash-table types.

DBFS Content API provides convenient utility functions to convert between `dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t` and `properties_t` (see next code snippet).

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `PROPERTY_T` record type.

### Store Descriptors

- A `store_t` is a record that describes a store registered with, and managed by the DBFS Content API (see the Administrative APIs in the next section).
- A `mount_t` is a record that describes a store mount point and its properties.

Clients can query the DBFS Content API for the list of available stores, determine which store handles accesses to a given path name, and determine the feature set for the store.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `STORE_T` record type.

## Administrative and Query APIs

Administrative clients and content providers are expected to register content stores with the DBFS Content API. Additionally, administrative clients are expected to mount stores into the top-level namespace of their choice.

The registration and unregistration of a store is separated from the mount and unmount of a store because it is possible for the same store to be mounted multiple times at different mount points (and this is under client control).

The administrative methods in `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` are merely wrappers that delegate to the matching methods in `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_ADMIN`. Clients can use the methods in either package to perform administrative operation.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for the summary of `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` package methods.

## Registering a Content Store

Procedure `REGISTERSTORE()` registers a new store backed by a provider that uses `provider_package` as the store service provider (conforming to the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI` package signature).

This method is designed for use by service providers after they have created a new store. Store names must be unique.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `REGISTERSTORE()` method.

## Unregistering A Content Store

Procedure `UNREGISTERSTORE()` unregisters a previously registered store, invalidating all mount points associated with it. Once unregistered, all access to the store and its mount points are not guaranteed to work, although consistent read may provide a temporary illusion of continued access.

If the `ignore_unknown` argument is `true`, attempts to unregister unknown stores does not raise an exception.



See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `UNREGISTERSTORE()` method.

## Mounting a Registered Store

Procedure `MOUNTSTORE()` mounts a registered store and binds it to the mount point.

Once mounted, access to path names of the form `/store_mount/xyz` is redirected to `store_name` and its content provider.

Store mount points must be unique, and a syntactically valid path name component (that is, a `name_t` with no embedded `/`).

If a mount point is not specified (that is, is `null`), the DBFS Content API attempts to use the store name itself as the mount point name (subject to the uniqueness and syntactic constraints).

A special empty mount point is available for single stores, that is, a scenario where the DBFS Content API manages a single back-end store. In such cases, the client can directly deal with full path names of the form `/xyz` because there is no ambiguity in how to redirect these accesses.

Single mount points are indicated by the `singleton` boolean argument, and the `store_mount` argument is ignored.

The same store can be mounted multiple times, obviously at different mount points.

Mount properties can be used to specify the DBFS Content API execution environment, that is, default values of the principal, owner, ACL, and `asof`, for a particular mount point. Mount properties can also be used to specify a read-only store.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `MOUNTSTORE()` method.

## Unmounting a Previously Mounted Store

Procedure `UNMOUNTSTORE()` unmounts a previously mounted store, either by name or by mount point. Single stores can be unmounted only by store name because they have no mount points. Attempting to unmount a store by name unmounts all mount points associated with the store.

Once unmounted, all access to the store or mount-point is not guaranteed to work although consistent read may provide a temporary illusion of continued access. If the `ignore_unknown` argument is `true`, attempts to unregister unknown stores or mounts does not raise an exception.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `UNMOUNTSTORE` method.

## List all Available Stores and Their Features

The `LISTSTORE()` function lists all the available stores. The `store_mount` field of the returned records is set to `null` because mount points are separate from stores themselves

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `LISTSTORES` Function.

## List all Available Mount Points

Function `LISTMOUNTS()` lists all available mount points, their backing stores, and the store features. A single mount results in a single returned row, with its `store_mount` field set to `null`.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `LISTMOUNTS()` method.

## Look-up Specific Stores and Their Features

The `GETSTOREBYXXX()` and `GETFEATUREBYXXX()` functions look up the path name, store name, or mount point of the store.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` methods.

## DBFS Content API Space Usage

Clients can query file system space usage statistics using the `SPACEUSAGE()` method. Providers are expected to support this method for their stores, and to make a best effort determination of space usage, especially if the store consists of multiple tables, indexes, LOBs, and so on.

- `blksize` is the natural tablespace block size that holds the store; if multiple tablespaces with different block sizes are used, any valid block size is acceptable.
- `tbytes` is the total size of the store in bytes, and `fbytes` is the free or unused size of the store in bytes. These values are computed over all segments that comprise the store.
- `nfile`, `ndir`, `nlink`, and `nref` count the number of currently available files, directories, links, and references in the store.

Because database objects can grow dynamically, it is not easy to estimate the division between free space and used space.

A space usage query on the top level root directory returns a combined summary of the space usage of all available distinct stores under it (if the same store is mounted multiple times, it is counted only once).

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `SPACEUSAGE()` method.

## DBFS Content API Session Defaults

Normal client access to the DBFS Content API executes with an implicit context that consists of:

- the `principal` invoking the current operation,
- the `owner` for all new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation,
- the `ACL` for all new elements created (implicitly or explicitly) by the current operation,
- the `ASOF` timestamp at which the underlying read-only operation (or its read-only sub-components) execute.

All of this information can be passed in explicitly through arguments to the various DBFS Content API method calls, allowing the client fine-grained control over individual operations.

The DBFS Content API also allows clients to set session duration defaults for the context that is automatically inherited by all operations for which the defaults are not explicitly overridden.

All of the context defaults start out as `null`, and can be cleared by setting them to `null`.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` methods.

## DBFS Content API Interface Versioning

To allow for the DBFS Content API itself to evolve, an internal numeric API version increases with each change to the public API.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `GETVERSION()` method.

## DBFS Content API Notes on Path Names

Clients of the DBFS Content API refer to store items through absolute path names. These path names may be full (a single string of the form `/mount_point/pathname`), or store-qualified (a tuple of the form `(store_name, pathname)`, where the path name is rooted within the store namespace).

Clients may use either naming scheme as it suits them, and can use both naming methods within their programs.

If path names are returned by DBFS Content API calls, the exact values being returned depend on the naming scheme used by the client in the call. For example, a listing or search on a fully qualified directory name returns items with their fully qualified path names, while a listing or search on a store-qualified directory name returns items whose path names are store-specific, and the store-qualification is implied.

The implementation of the DBFS Content API internally manages the normalization and inter-conversion between these two naming schemes.

## DBFS Content API Creation Operations

The DBFS Content API allows clients to create directory, file, link, and reference elements (subject to store feature support).

All of the creation methods require a valid path name, and can optionally specify properties to be associated with the path name as it is created. It is also possible for clients to fetch back item properties after the creation completes, so that automatically generated properties, such as `std_creation_time`, are immediately available to clients. The exact set of properties fetched back is controlled by the various `prop_XXX` bit masks in `prop_flags`.

Links and references require an additional path name to associate with the primary path name. File path names can optionally specify a BLOB value to use to initially populate the underlying file content, the provided BLOB may be any valid LOB, either temporary or permanent. On creation, the underlying LOB is returned to the client if `prop_data` is specified in `prop_flags`.

Non-directory path names require that their parent directory be created first. Directory path names themselves can be recursively created. This means that the path name hierarchy leading up to a directory can be created in one call.

Attempts to create paths that exist produces an error; the one exception is path names that are soft-deleted. In these cases, the soft-deleted item is implicitly purged, and the new item creation is attempted.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT()` methods.

## DBFS Content API Deletion Operations

The DBFS Content API allows clients to delete directory, file, link, and reference elements, subject to store feature support.

By default, the deletions are permanent, and remove successfully deleted items on transaction commit. However, repositories may also support soft-delete features. If requested by the client, soft-deleted items are retained by the store. They are not, however, typically visible in normal listings or searches. Soft-deleted items may be restored, or explicitly purged.

Directory path names may be recursively deleted; the path name hierarchy below a directory may be deleted in one call. Non-recursive deletions can be performed only on empty directories. Recursive soft-deletions apply the soft-delete to all of the items being deleted.

Individual path names or all soft-deleted path names under a directory may be restored or purged using the `RESTOREXXX()` and `PURGEXXX()` methods.

Providers that support filtering can use the provider filter to identify subsets of items to delete; this makes most sense for bulk operations such as `deleteDirectory()`, `RESTOREALL()`, and `PURGEALL()`, but all of the deletion-related operations accept a filter argument.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` methods.

## DBFS Content API Path Get and Put Operations

Existing path items may be accessed for query or for update, and modified by simple `GETXXX()` and `PUTXXX()` methods.

All path names allow their metadata to be read and modified. On completion of the call, the client can request that specific properties are fetched through `prop_flags`.

File path names allow their data to be read and modified. On completion of the call, the client can request a new BLOB locator through the `prop_data` bit masks in `prop_flags`; these may be used to continue data access.

Files can also be read and written without using BLOB locators, by explicitly specifying logical offsets, buffer amounts and a suitably sized buffer.

Update accesses must specify the `forUpdate` flag. Access to link path names may be implicitly and internally dereferenced by stores, subject to feature support, if the `deref` flag is specified. Oracle does not recommend this practice because symbolic links are not guaranteed to resolve.

The read method `GETPATH()` where `forUpdate` is `false` accepts a valid `asof` timestamp parameter that can be used by stores to implement flashback-style queries.

Mutating versions of the `GETPATH()` and the `PUTPATH()` methods do not support `asof` modes of operation.

The DBFS Content API does not have an explicit `COPY()` operation because a copy is easily implemented as a combination of a `GETPATH()` followed by a `CREATEXXX()` with appropriate data or metadata transfer across the calls. This allows copies across stores, while an internalized copy operation cannot provide this facility.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` methods.

## DBFS Content API Rename and Move Operations

Path names can be renamed or moved, possibly across directory hierarchies and mount points, but only within the same store.

Non-directory path names previously accessible by `oldPath` are renamed as a single item subsequently accessible by `newPath`, assuming that `newPath` does not exist.

If `newPath` exists and is not a directory, the rename implicitly deletes the existing item before renaming `oldPath`. If `newPath` exists and is a directory, `oldPath` is moved into the target directory.

Directory path names previously accessible by `oldPath` are renamed by moving the directory and all of its children to `newPath` (if it does not exist) or as children of `newPath` (if it exists and is a directory).

Because the semantics of rename and move with respect to non-existent or existent and non-directory or directory targets is complex, clients may choose to implement complex rename and move operation as a sequence of simpler moves or copies.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.RENAMEPATH()` methods.

## Directory Listings

- A `list_item_t` is a (path name, component name, type) tuple representing a single element in a directory listing.
- A `path_item_t` is a tuple describing a (store, mount) qualified path in a content store, with all standard and optional properties associated with it.
- A `prop_item_t` is a tuple describing a (store, mount) qualified path in a content store, with all user-defined properties associated with it, expanded out into individual (name, value, type) tuples.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of data structures.

## DBFS Content API Directory Navigation and Search

Clients of the DBFS Content API can list or search the contents of directory path names, optionally recursively in sub-directories, optionally seeing soft-deleted items, optionally using `flashback asof` a provided timestamp, and optionally filtering items in and out within the store based on list or search predicates.

The DBFS Content API currently returns only list items; the client is expected to explicitly use one of the `getPath()` methods to access the properties or content associated with an item, as appropriate.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` methods.

## DBFS Content API Locking Operations

Clients of the DBFS Content API can apply user-level locks to any valid path name, subject to store feature support, associate the lock with user data, and subsequently unlock these path names. The status of locked items is available through various optional properties.

It is the responsibility of the store, assuming it supports user-defined lock checking, to ensure that lock and unlock operations are performed in a consistent manner.

*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT methods.

## DBFS Content API Abstract Operations

All of the operations in the DBFS Content API are represented as abstract opcodes. Clients can use these opcodes to directly and explicitly invoke the CHECKACCESS () method to verify if a particular operation can be invoked by a given principal on a particular path name.

An op\_acl () is an implicit operation invoked during an op\_create () or op\_put () call, which specifies a std\_acl property. The operation tests to see if the principal is allowed to set or change the ACL of a store item.

Soft-deletion, purge, and restore operations are all represented by op\_delete () .

The source and destination operations of a rename or move operation are separated, although stores are free to unify these opcodes and to also treat a rename as a combination of delete and create.

op\_store is a catch-all category for miscellaneous store operations that do not fall under any of the other operational APIs.

See "[DBFS Content API Access Checks](#)" on page 7-16 and *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT Constants - Operation Codes.

## DBFS Content API Access Checks

Function CHECKACCESS () checks if a given path name (path, pathtype, store\_name) can be manipulated by an operation, such as the various op\_xxx opcodes) by principal.

This is a convenience function for the client; a store that supports access control still internally performs these checks to guarantee security.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT methods.

## DBFS Content API Path Normalization

Function NORMALIZEPATH () performs the following steps:

1. Verifies that the path name is absolute (starts with a /).
2. Collapses multiple consecutive /s into a single /.
3. Strips trailing /s.
4. Breaks store-specific normalized path names into two components: the parent path name and the trailing component name.

5. Breaks fully qualified normalized path names into three components: store name, parent path name, and trailing component name.

Note that the root path / is special: its parent path name is also /, and its component name is null. In fully qualified mode, it has a null store name unless a singleton mount has been created, in which case the appropriate store name is returned.

The return value is always the completely normalized store-specific or fully qualified path name.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.RENAMEPATH()` methods.

## DBFS Content API Statistics Support

DBFS Content API statistics are expensive to collect and maintain persistently. DBFS has support for buffering statistics in memory for a maximum of `flush_time` centiseconds or a maximum of `flush_count` operations, whichever limit is reached first), at which time the buffers are implicitly flushed to disk.

Clients can also explicitly invoke a flush using `flushStats`. An implicit flush also occurs when statistics collection is disabled.

`setStats` is used to enable and disable statistics collection; the client can optionally control the flush settings by specifying non-null values for the time and count parameters.

*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` methods.

## DBFS Content API Tracing Support

DBFS Content API tracing is a generic tracing facility that may be used by any DBFS Content API user (both clients and providers). The DBFS Content API dispatcher itself uses the tracing facility.

Trace information is written to the foreground trace file, with varying levels of detail as specified by the trace level arguments. The global trace level consists of two components: `severity` and `detail`. These can be thought of as additive bit masks.

The `severity` allows the separation of top-level as compared to low-level tracing of different components, and allows the amount of tracing to be increased as needed. There are no semantics associated with different levels, and users are free to set the trace level at any severity they choose, although a good rule of thumb would be to use severity 1 for top-level API entry and exit traces, severity 2 for internal operations, and severity 3 or greater for very low-level traces.

The `detail` controls how much additional information the trace reports with each trace record: timestamps, short-stack, and so on. [Example 7-1](#) demonstrates how to enable tracing using the DBFS Content APIs.

### Example 7-1 DBFS Content Tracing

```
function    getTrace
            return integer;
procedure  setTrace(
            trclvl    in            integer);
function   traceEnabled(
            sev       in            integer)
            return integer;
procedure  trace(
```

```
sev          in          integer,  
msg0        in          varchar2,  
msg1        in          varchar default '',  
msg2        in          varchar default '',  
msg3        in          varchar default '',  
msg4        in          varchar default '',  
msg5        in          varchar default '',  
msg6        in          varchar default '',  
msg7        in          varchar default '',  
msg8        in          varchar default '',  
msg9        in          varchar default '',  
msg10       in          varchar default '' );
```

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT methods.

## Resource and Property Views

The following views describe the structure and properties of Content API.

- The DBFS\_CONTENT views; see *Oracle Database Reference*
- The DBFS\_CONTENT\_PROPERTIES views; see *Oracle Database Reference*



---

---

## DBFS SecureFiles Store

This section contains the following topics:

- [The DBFS SecureFiles Store Package, DBMS\\_DBFS\\_SFS](#)
- [Using a DBFS SecureFiles Store File System](#)

### The DBFS SecureFiles Store Package, DBMS\_DBFS\_SFS

This package is a store provider for the DBFS Content API, and conforms to the Provider SPI defined in `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI`, in *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

### Creating and Registering a New SecureFiles Store

Procedure `CREATEFILESYSTEM()` creates a new SecureFiles Store file system store `store_name` in schema `schema_name` (defaulting to the current schema) as table `tbl_name`, with the table (and internal indexes) in tablespace `tbl_tbs` (defaulting to the schema's default tablespace), and its lob column in tablespace `lob_tbs` (defaulting to `tbl_tbs`).

If `use_bf` is `true`, a BasicFiles LOB is used, otherwise a SecureFiles LOB is used.

`props` is a table of (name, value, typecode) tuples that can be used to configure the store properties. Currently, no such properties are defined or used, but the placeholder exists for future versions of the reference implementation.

If the `create_only` argument is `true`, the file system is created, but not registered with the current user -- a separate call to `DBMS_DBFS_SFS_ADMIN.registerFilesystem` (by the same users or by other users) is needed to make the file system visible for provider operations.

The procedure executes like a DDL (auto-commits before and after its execution). The method `createStore()` is a wrapper around `createFilesystem()`.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*, for details on using `DBMS_DBFS_SFS`.

### Initializing or Re-initializing a SecureFiles Store

Procedure `INITIFS()` truncates and re-initializes the table associated with the SecureFiles Store `store_name`. The procedure executes like a DDL, auto-committing before and after its execution.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_SFS` methods.

## Unregister and Drop A SecureFiles Store File System Store

All stores referring to the file system are removed from the metadata tables, and the underlying file system table is itself dropped. The procedure executes like a DDL, auto-committing before and after its execution.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*, for details of the `DBMS_DBFS_SFS` methods.

## Using a DBFS SecureFiles Store File System

This section describes how to create a SecureFiles Store file system.

### Permissions Management

#### To manage permissions:

1. Create or pick DBFS Content API target users.

Assume that you use the DBFS Content API as database user/password as `user1/password1`, `user2/password2`, and `sfs_demo/password3`. At minimum, these database users must have the `CREATE SESSION`, `RESOURCE`, and `CREATE VIEW` privileges.

Always use a regular database user for all operational access to the Content API and stores. Never use the `SYS` or `SYSTEM` users, or the `SYSDBA` / `SYSOPER` roles for DBFS Content API operations.

2. Grant the `dbfs_role` to each of these users. The `dbfs_role` controls who is authorized to use the DBFS Content API, and indirectly confers additional privileges to the target users.

Without this role, the DBFS Content API is not available to a database user. A user with suitable administrative privileges (or `SYSDBA`) can grant the role to additional users as needed.

```
connect / as sysdba
grant dbfs_role to user1;
grant dbfs_role to user2;
grant dbfs_role to sfs_demo;
```

This sets up the DBFS Content API for any database user who has the `dbfs_role`.

Because of the way roles, access control, and definer and invoker rights interact in the database, it may be necessary to explicitly grant various permissions (almost always execute permissions) on DBFS Content API types (SQL types with the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_prefix`) and packages (typically only `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` and `DBMS_DBFS_SFS`) to users who might otherwise have the `dbfs_role`.

These explicit, direct grants are normal and to be expected, and can be provided as needed and on demand.

## Creating a SecureFiles File System Store

### To create a SecureFiles File System Store:

1. Create the necessary stores for access using the DBFS CAPI:

```
declare
begin
  dbms_dbfs_sfs.createFilesystem(
    store_name => 'FS1',
    tbl_name => 'T1',
    tbl_tbs => null,
    use_bf => false
  );
  commit;
end;
/
```

were:

- `store_name` is any arbitrary, user-unique name.
- `tbl_name` is a valid table name, created in the current schema.
- `tbl_tbs` is a valid tablespace name used for the store table and its dependent segments, such as indexes, lob, nested tables. The default is `NULL`, and specifies a tablespace of the current schema.

2. Register these file systems with the DBFS CAPI as new stores managed by the SecureFiles Store.

```
connect sfs_demo/*****
declare
begin
  dbms_dbfs_content.registerStore(
    store_name => 'FS1',
    provider_name => 'anything',
    provider_package => 'dbms_dbfs_sfs'
  );
  commit;
end;
/
```

This operation associates the SecureFiles Store `FS1` with the `dbms_dbfs_sfs` provider.

where:

- `store_name` is SecureFiles Store `FS1` that uses table `SFS_DEMO.T1`.
- `provider_name` is ignored.
- `provider_package` is `dbms_dbfs_sfs`, for SecureFiles Store reference provider.

3. Mount the stores at suitable mount-points.

```
connect sfs_demo/*****
declare
begin
  dbms_dbfs_content.mountStore(
    store_name => 'FS1',
    store_mount => 'mnt1'
  );
end;
```

```
        commit;
    end;
/
```

where:

- `store_name` is SecureFiles Store FS1 that uses table `SFS_DEMO.T1`.
  - `store_mount` is the mount point.
4. [Optional] To see the results of the preceding steps, you can use one of the following statements.

- verify SecureFiles Store tables and file systems

```
select * from table(dbms_dbfs_sfs.listTables);
select * from table(dbms_dbfs_sfs.listFilesystems);
```

- verify ContentAPI Stores and mounts

```
select * from table(dbms_dbfs_content.listStores);
select * from table(dbms_dbfs_content.listMounts);
```

- verify SecureFiles Store features

```
var fs1f number;
exec :fs1f := dbms_dbfs_content.getFeaturesByName('FS1');
select * from table(dbms_dbfs_content.decodeFeatures(:fs1f));
```

- verify resource and property views

```
select * from dbfs_content;
select * from dbfs_content_properties;
```

You should never directly access tables that hold data for SecureFiles Store file systems, even through the `DBMS_DBFS_SFS` package methods. The correct way to access the file systems is using the DBFS Content API, (`DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` methods) for procedural operations, and through the resource and property views (`dbfs_content` and `dbfs_content_properties`) for SQL operations.

## Comparing SecureFiles LOBs to BasicFiles LOBs

SecureFiles LOBs are only available in Oracle Database 11g Release 1 and higher. They are not available in earlier releases.

Compatibility must be at least 11.1.0.0 to use SecureFiles LOBs.

Specify `use_bf => false` in `DBMS_DBFS_SFS.CREATEFILESYSTEM` to use SecureFiles LOBs.

Specify `use_bf => true` in `DBMS_DBFS_SFS.CREATEFILESYSTEM` to use BasicFiles LOBs.

## Initializing SecureFiles Store File Systems

Initialize and re-initialize a SecureFiles Store file system store. The following example uses file system FS1, and table "SFS\_DEMO"."T1".

```
connect sfs_demo/*****;
exec dbms_dbfs_content.initFS(store_name => 'FS1');
```

## Drop SecureFiles Store File Systems

### To drop a SecureFiles Store file system

#### 1. Unmount the stores.

```
connect sfs_demo/*****;
declare
begin
  dbms_dbfs_content.unmountStore(
    store_name => 'FS1',
    store_mount => '&#8216;mnt1&#8217;');
  commit;
end;
/
```

where:

- `store_name` is SecureFiles Store FS1 that uses table `SFS_DEMO.T1`.
- `store_mount` is the mount point.

#### 2. Unregister the stores.

```
connect sfs_demo/*****;
exec dbms_dbfs_content.unregisterStore(store_name => 'FS1');
commit;
```

where `store_name` is SecureFiles Store FS1 that uses table `SFS_DEMO.T1`.

#### 3. Drop the file system.

```
connect sfs_demo/*****;
exec dbms_dbfs_sfs.dropFilesystem(store_name => 'FS1');
commit;
```

where `store_name` is SecureFiles Store FS1 that uses table `SFS_DEMO.T1`.

## Working with DBFS Content API

Assuming the above steps have been executed to set up the DBFS Content API, and to create and mount at least one SecureFiles Store reference file system under the mount point `/mnt1`, you can create a new file and directory elements as demonstrated in [Example 8-1](#).

### **Example 8-1 Working with DBFS Content API**

```
connect foo/*****

declare
  ret integer;
  b blob;
  str varchar2(1000) := '' || chr(10) ||

'#include <stdio.h>' || chr(10) ||
'' || chr(10) ||
'int main(int argc, char** argv)' || chr(10) ||
'{' || chr(10) ||
'  (void) printf("hello world\n");' || chr(10) ||
'  return 0;' || chr(10) ||
'}' || chr(10) ||
```

```
'';  
  
begin  
  ret := dbms_fuse.fs_mkdir('/mnt1/src');  
  ret := dbms_fuse.fs_creat('/mnt1/src/hello.c', content => b);  
  dbms_lob.writeappend(b, length(str), utl_raw.cast_to_raw(str));  
  commit;  
end;  
/  
show errors;  
  
-- verify newly created directory and file  
select pathname, pathtype, length(filedata),  
       utl_raw.cast_to_varchar2(filedata)  
from dbfs_content  
   where pathname like '/mnt1/src%'  
      order by pathname;
```

The file system can be populated and accessed from PL/SQL with `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT`. The file system can be accessed read-only from SQL using the `dbfs_content` and `dbfs_content_properties` views.

The file system can be populated and accessed through FUSE, using regular file system APIs and UNIX utilities, or by the standalone `dbfs_client` tool (in environments where FUSE is either unavailable or not set up).

---

---

## DBFS Hierarchical Store

This section discusses hierarchical store wallet management, and provides specifics of the RDMS\_DBFS\_HS PL/SQL package.

This section contains the following topics:

- [Wallet Management](#)
- [Managing Storage with DBMS\\_DBFS\\_HS](#)
- [Methods of DBMS\\_DBFS\\_HS Package](#)
- [User View for DBFS Hierarchical Store](#)
- [Examples Using DBMS\\_DBFS\\_HS](#)

### Wallet Management

The command-line utility `mkstore` creates wallets and adds aliases for the secret store. Use the following commands to create and manage wallets:

Creating wallet:

```
mkstore -wrl wallet_location -create
```

Adding KEY alias. Specify the `access_key` and `secret_key` by enclosing it within single quotes.

```
mkstore -wrl wallet_location -createCredential alias 'access_key' 'secret_key'
```

For example:

```
mkstore -wrl /home/user1/mywallet -createCredential mykey 'abc' 'xyz'
```

Deleting KEY alias:

```
mkstore -wrl wallet_location -deleteCredential alias
```

For example:

```
mkstore -wrl /home/user1/mywallet -deleteCredential mykey
```

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Advanced Security Administrator's Guide* for more about creation and management of wallets

## Managing Storage with DBMS\_DBFS\_HS

The Oracle Database File System Hierarchical Store package (DBMS\_DBFS\_HS) is a store provider for DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT that supports hierarchical storage for DBFS content. The DBFS Hierarchical Store (DBFS HS) package stores content in external storage devices like tape or the Amazon S3 web service and associated metadata (or properties) in the database. The DBFS HS may cache frequently accessed content in database table(s) to improve performance.

The DBMS\_DBFS\_HS package can be used in conjunction with the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT package to implement Hierarchical Storage Management for SecureFiles LOBs utilizing DBFS Links. Using the package, less frequently used data is migrated to a cheaper external device like tape, achieving significant reduction in storage costs by using the more expensive database disk only for more frequently accessed data. The DBMS\_DBFS\_HS package can also be plugged in as a store provider into the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT package to implement a tape file system, if the associated external storage device is tape, or a cloud file system, if the associated external storage device is the Amazon S3 storage service.

The DBMS\_DBFS\_HS package provides you the ability to use tape as a storage tier when doing Information Lifecycle Management (ILM) for database tables or content. The package also supports other forms of storage targets including Web Services like Amazon S3. This service enables users to store data in the database on tape and other forms of storage that were previously not supported by Oracle. The data on tape or Amazon S3 is part of the Oracle Database and can be accessed by all standard APIs, but only through the database.

DBMS\_DBFS\_HS provides the primitives for an Information Lifecycle Management solution. All the important primitives such as CREATE, PUT, GET, and DELETE, as defined by the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT\_SPI interface are implemented by the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS package.

DBMS\_DBFS\_HS implements the methods defined in DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT\_SPI. It also has some additional interfaces needed to manage the external storage device and the cache associated with each store.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*, for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS Package

### Constants for DBMS\_DBFS\_HS Package

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of constants used by DBMS\_DBFS\_HS PL/SQL package

### Methods of DBMS\_DBFS\_HS Package

Table 9–1 summarizes the methods of the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS PL/SQL package.

**Table 9–1 Methods of the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS PL/SQL Packages**

Method	Description
<a href="#">CREATESTORE()</a> on page 9-3	Creates a DBFS HS store.
<a href="#">DROPSTORE()</a> on page 9-3	Deletes a previously created DBFS HS store.
<a href="#">RECONFIGCACHE()</a> on page 9-3	Reconfigures the parameters of the database cache used by the store.



**Table 9–1 (Cont.) Methods of the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS PL/SQL Packages**

Method	Description
<a href="#">SETSTOREPROPERTY()</a> on page 9-4	Associates name/value properties with a registered Hierarchical Store.
<a href="#">GETSTOREPROPERTY()</a> on page 9-5	Retrieves the values of a property of a store in the database.
<a href="#">CREATEBUCKET()</a> on page 9-5	Creates an AWS bucket, for use with the <code>STORETYPE_AMAZON3</code> store.
<a href="#">STOREPUSH()</a> on page 9-5	Pushes locally cached data to an archive store.
<a href="#">CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES()</a> on page 9-5	Removes files that are created on the external storage device if they have no current content.
<a href="#">REGISTERSTORECOMMAND()</a> on page 9-5	Registers commands (messages) for a store so they are sent to the Media Manager of an external storage device.
<a href="#">DEREGSTORECOMMAND()</a> on page 9-5	Removes a command (message) that was associated with a store.
<a href="#">SENDCOMMAND()</a> on page 9-5	Sends a command (message) to the Media Manager of an external storage device.

## CREATESTORE()

This method enables users to create a new DBFS HS store named `store_name` of type `store_type` (`STORETYPE_TAPE` or `STORETYPE_AMAZONS3`) in schema `schema_name` (defaulting to the current schema) under the ownership of invoking session user `.tbl_name` in tablespace `tbs_space` that holds store entries in the database. `cache_size` amount of space to be used to cache the content.

Store names must be unique for an owner. But the same store names can be used for different stores owned by different owners.

Currently `CREATESTORE()` sets certain properties of the store to default values. The user can use the methods `SETSTOREPROPERTY()` and `RECONFIGCACHE()` to appropriately change the property values and to set other properties of the store.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## DROPSTORE()

This method deletes a previously created DBFS HS store with the name `store_name` and owned by the invoking `session_user`.

This method unregisters the store from the DBFS Content API, the `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT` package. All files in the given store are deleted from the store (tape or Amazon S3 web service). The database table holding the store's entries in the database is also dropped by this method.

This method executes like a DDL (auto-commit before and after its execution).

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## RECONFIGCACHE()

This procedure reconfigures the parameters of the database cache being used by the store.

The Hierarchical Store uses a level 1 cache and a level 2 cache. The level 1 cache subsumes most of the working set and the level 2 cache is used to perform bulk writes to the backend device.

The DBMS\_DBFS\_HS package optimistically tries to allocate more than one tarball's worth of size for level 2 cache to facilitate concurrency, though a minimum of one tarball size is necessary for level 2 cache.

The values for cumulative cache size and LOB cache quota determine allocation of space for the two caches. If values are not provided, a user might see an `INSUFFICIENT CACHE` exception. In that case, it is better to revise the cache parameters in order to have a working store.

If this subprogram successfully executes, its actions cannot be rolled back by the user. In that case, the user must call `RECONFIGCACHE` again with new or modified parameters.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## SETSTOREPROPERTY()

This method associates properties with a store registered with the Hierarchical Store. Each property is a name value pair.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information about this method, and *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS constants used by this method.

Note that the DBFS hierarchical store has the ability to store its files in compressed form. Compression can be enabled by means of the property `PROPNAME_COMPRESSLVL`. This property specifies the compression level to be used in compressing the files. It can be one of the following four allowed values: `PROPVAL_COMPLVL_NONE` indicates no compression, `PROPVAL_COMPLVL_LOW` indicates LOW compression, `PROPVAL_COMPLVL_MEDIUM` indicates MEDIUM compression, and `PROPVAL_COMPLVL_HIGH` indicates HIGH compression.

In general, the compression level `LOW` is expected to have the best performance while still providing a good compression ratio. Compression level `MEDIUM` and compression level `HIGH` are expected to provide a significantly better compression ratio but compression time can be correspondingly longer. It is recommended to use `NONE` or `LOW` when write performance is critical such as when files in the DBFS HS store are updated frequently. If space is critical and the best possible compression ratio is desired, `MEDIUM` or `HIGH` should be used.

Note that files are compressed as they are paged out of the cache into the staging area (before they are subsequently pushed into the back end tape/ S3 storage). Therefore, compression also benefits by storing smaller files in the staging area and thereby effectively increasing the total available capacity of the staging area.

Regarding `PROPNAME_ENABLECLEANUPONDELETE` behavior, a job is created for each store by the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS to remove the unused files from the external storage. By default, the job is enabled for `STORETYPE_AMAZONS3` and is disabled for `STORETYPE_TAPE`. If the `ENABLECLEANUPONDELETE` property is set to `TRUE`, the job is enabled; if the property is set to `FALSE`, the job is disabled. If enabled, the job runs at an interval of one hour by default. The DBMS\_SCHEDULER package can be used to modify the schedule. The name of the job can be obtained by querying `USER_DBFS_HS_FIXED_PROPERTIES` for `prop_name = 'DELJOB_NAME'`.

## GETSTOREPROPERTY()

This method retrieves the values of a property, identified by `PropertyName`, of a store in the database.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## CREATEBUCKET()

The S3 bucket, associated with a store of type `STORETYPE_AMAZONS3`, must exist when the DBFS HS tries to move content into that bucket.

One way of creating the S3 bucket is to use the `DBMS_DBFS_HS.CREATEBUCKET` method. The `PROPNAME_BUCKET` property of the store must be set before this method is called.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## STOREPUSH()

This pushes locally cached data to the archive store identified by `storename`.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## CLEANUPUNUSEDBACKUPFILES()

This method removes files created on the external storage device that have no currently used data (content) in them. This method can be executed periodically (perhaps once a week) to clear space on the external storage device. Asynchronously deleting content from the external storage device is useful because it has minimal impact on OLTP performance. Periodic scheduling can be implemented using the `DBMS_SCHEDULER` package.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## REGISTERSTORECOMMAND()

A client uses this method to register commands (messages) for a store with the DBFS HS to be sent to the Media Manager for the external storage device associated with the store. These commands are sent before the next read or write of content. When the DBFS HS wants to push or get data to or from the storage device, it begins an API session to talk to the device. After beginning the session, it sends all registered commands, for that particular device, to the device before writing or getting any data.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## DEREGSTORECOMMAND()

This method removes a command (message) that had been previously associated with a store through the `REGISTERSTORECOMMAND`.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## SENDCOMMAND()

This sends a command (message) to be executed on the Media Manager of the external storage device.

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for more information.

## User View for DBFS Hierarchical Store

This view for DBFS Hierarchical Store is available:

### USER\_DBFS\_HS\_FILES

This view shows the files archived by this user, and their location on the back end device.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Reference*, USER\_DBFS\_HS\_FILES view

## Examples Using DBMS\_DBFS\_HS

For you to be able to use package DBMS\_DBFS\_HS, you must be granted `dbfs_role` by the DBA.

### Setting up the Store

#### To set up the store:

1. Call `createStore`.

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.createStore( store_name, store_type, tbl_name, tbs_name,  
cache_size, lob_cache_quota, optimal_tarball_size, schema_name);
```

2. Set mandatory and optional properties using the following interface:

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.setStoreProperty(StoreName, PropertyName, PropertyValue);
```

For `store_type = STORETYPE_TAPE`, mandatory properties are:

```
PROPNAME_DEVICELIBRARY, PROPNAME_MEDIAPool, PROPNAME_CACHESIZE.
```

`PROPNAME_CACHESIZE` is already set by `createStore`.

You can change the value of `PROPNAME_CACHESIZE` using `setStoreProperty`.

Optional properties are:

```
PROPNAME_OPTTARBALLSIZE, PROPNAME_READCHUNKSIZE, PROPNAME_WRITECHUNKSIZE,  
PROPNAME_STREAMABLE.
```

For `store_type = STORETYPE_AMAZONS3` mandatory properties are:

```
PROPNAME_DEVICELIBRARY, PROPNAME_CACHESIZE, PROPNAME_S3HOST, PROPNAME_BUCKET,  
PROPNAME_LICENSEID, PROPNAME_WALLET.
```

`PROPNAME_CACHESIZE` is set by `createStore`. You can change the value of `PROPNAME_CACHESIZE` using `setStoreProperty`.

Optional properties are:

```
PROPNAME_OPTTARBALLSIZE, PROPNAME_READCHUNKSIZE, PROPNAME_WRITECHUNKSIZE,  
PROPNAME_STREAMABLE, PROPNAME_HTTPPROXY.
```

3. Register the store with DBFS Content API using:

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.registerStore(store_name, provider_name, provider_package);
```

4. Mount the stores for access using:

```
DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT.mountStore(store_name, store_mount, singleton,principal,
```

```
owner, acl, asof, read_only);
```

## Using the Hierarchical Store

The Hierarchical Store can be used as an independent file system or as an archive solution for SecureFiles LOBs.

### Using Hierarchical Store as a File System

Use the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT package to create, update, read, and delete file system entries in the store.

Refer to the documentation of DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT for details.

### Using Hierarchical Store as an Archive Solution For SecureFiles LOBs

Use the DBMS\_LOB package to archive SecureFiles LOBs in Tape or S3 store.

Refer to the documentation of DBMS\_LOB for details.

To free space in the cache or to force cache resident contents to be written to external storage device, call:

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.storePush(store_name);
```

### Dropping a Hierarchical Store

Call:

```
DBMS_DBFS_HS.dropStore(store_name, opt_flags);
```

## Example: Using Amazon S3

The following example program configures and uses an Amazon S3 store.

Valid values must be substituted in some places, indicated by <...>, for the program to run successfully.

Please refer to DBMS\_DBFS\_HS documentation for complete details about the methods and their parameters.

```
Rem Example to configure and use an Amazon S3 store.
Rem
Rem huser should be a valid database user who has been granted
Rem the role dbfs_role.

connect huser/huser

Rem The following block sets up a STORETYPE_AMAZONS3 store with
Rem DBMS_DBFS_HS acting as the store provider.

declare
storename varchar2(32) ;
tblname varchar2(30) ;
tbsname varchar2(30) ;
lob_cache_quota number := 0.8 ;
cachesz number ;
ots number ;
begin
cachesz := 50 * 1048576 ;
ots := 1048576 ;
storename := 's3store10' ;
tblname := 's3tbl10' ;
```

```
tbsname := '<TBS_3>' ; -- Substitute a valid tablespace name

-- Create the store.
-- Here tbsname is the tablespace used for the store,
-- tblname is the table holding all the store entities,
-- cachesz is the space used by the store to cache content
--   in the tablespace,
-- lob_cache_quota is the fraction of cachesz allocated
--   to level-1 cache and
-- ots is minimum amount of content that is accumulated
--   in level-2 cache before being stored in AmazonS3
dbms_dbfs_hs.createStore(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.STORETYPE_AMAZONS3,
    tblname, tbsname, cachesz,
    lob_cache_quota, ots) ;

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_SBTLIBRARY,
    '<ORACLE_HOME/work/libosbws11.so>');
-- Substitute your ORACLE_HOME path

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_S3HOST,
    's3.amazonaws.com') ;

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_BUCKET,
    'oras3bucket10') ;

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_WALLET,
    'LOCATION=file:<ORACLE_HOME>/work/wlt CREDENTIAL_ALIAS=a_key') ;
-- Substitute your ORACLE_HOME path

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_LICENSEID,
    '<xxxxxxxxxxxxxxxx>') ; -- Substitute a valid SBT license id

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_HTTPPROXY,
    '<http://www-proxy.mycompany.com:80/>') ;
-- Substitute valid value. If a proxy is not used,
-- then this property need not be set.

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_COMPRESSLEVEL,
    'NONE') ;

dbms_dbfs_hs.createbucket(storename) ;

-- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
-- for details about this method
dbms_dbfs_content.registerstore(
```

```

    storename,
    's3prvder10',
    'dbms_dbfs_hs' );

-- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
-- for details about this method
dbms_dbfs_content.mountstore(
    storename,
    's3mnt10' );
end ;
/

Rem The following code block does file operations
Rem using DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT on the store configured
Rem in the previous code block

connect hsuser/hsuser

declare
path varchar2(256) ;
path_pre varchar2(256) ;
mount_point varchar2(32) ;
store_name varchar2(32) ;
prop1 dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t ;
prop2 dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t ;
mycontent blob := empty_blob() ;
buffer varchar2(1050) ;
rawbuf raw(1050) ;
outcontent blob := empty_blob() ;
itemtype integer ;
pflag integer ;
filecnt integer ;
iter integer ;
offset integer ;
rawlen integer ;
begin

    mount_point := '/s3mnt10' ;
    store_name := 's3store10' ;
    path_pre := mount_point || '/file' ;

    -- We create 10 empty files in the following loop
    filecnt := 0 ;
    loop
        exit when filecnt = 10 ;
        path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
        mycontent := empty_blob() ;
        prop1 := null ;

        -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
        -- for details about this method
        dbms_dbfs_content.createFile(
            path, prop1, mycontent) ; -- Create the file

        commit ;
        filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
    end loop ;

    -- We populate the newly created files with content
    -- in the following loop

```

```

pflag := dbms_dbfs_content.prop_data +
         dbms_dbfs_content.prop_std +
         dbms_dbfs_content.prop_opt ;

buffer := 'Oracle provides an integrated management ' ||
         'solution for managing Oracle database with ' ||
         'a unique top-down application management ' ||
         'approach. With new self-managing ' ||
         'capabilities, Oracle eliminates time-' ||
         'consuming, error-prone administrative ' ||
         'tasks, so database administrators can ' ||
         'focus on strategic business objectives ' ||
         'instead of performance and availability ' ||
         'fire drills. Oracle Management Packs for ' ||
         'Database provide significant cost and time-' ||
         'saving capabilities for managing Oracle ' ||
         'Databases. Independent studies demonstrate ' ||
         'that Oracle Database is 40 percent easier ' ||
         'to manage over DB2 and 38 percent over ' ||
         'SQL Server.';

rawbuf := utl_raw.cast_to_raw(buffer) ;
rawlen := utl_raw.length(rawbuf) ;
offset := 1 ;
filecnt := 0 ;
loop
  exit when filecnt = 10 ;
  path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
  prop1 := null;

  -- Append buffer to file
  -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
  -- for details about this method
  dbms_dbfs_content.putpath(
    path, prop1, rawlen,
    offset, rawbuf) ;

  commit ;
  filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
end loop ;

-- Clear out level 1 cache
dbms_dbfs_hs.flushCache(store_name) ;
commit ;

-- Do write operation on even-numbered files.
-- Do read operation on odd-numbered files.
filecnt := 0 ;
loop
  exit when filecnt = 10;
  path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
  if mod(filecnt, 2) = 0 then
    -- Get writable file
    -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
    -- for details about this method
    dbms_dbfs_content.getPath(
      path, prop2, outcontent, itemtype,
      pflag, null, true) ;

    buffer := 'Agile businesses want to be able to ' ||

```



```

        'quickly adopt new technologies, whether ' ||
        'operating systems, servers, or '      ||
        'software, to help them stay ahead of ' ||
        'the competition. However, change often ' ||
        'introduces a period of instability into ' ||
        'mission-critical IT systems. Oracle '  ||
        'Real Application Testing-with Oracle ' ||
        'Database 11g Enterprise Edition-allows ' ||
        'businesses to quickly adopt new '     ||
        'technologies while eliminating the '   ||
        'risks associated with change. Oracle '  ||
        'Real Application Testing combines a '   ||
        'workload capture and replay feature '  ||
        'with an SQL performance analyzer to '  ||
        'help you test changes against real-life ' ||
        'workloads, and then helps you fine-tune ' ||
        'the changes before putting them into'  ||
        'production. Oracle Real Application '  ||
        'Testing supports older versions of '    ||
        'Oracle Database, so customers running ' ||
        'Oracle Database 9i and Oracle Database ' ||
        '10g can use it to accelerate their '   ||
        'database upgrades. ';

rawbuf := utl_raw.cast_to_raw(buffer) ;
rawlen := utl_raw.length(rawbuf) ;

-- Modify file content
-- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
-- for details about this method
dbms_lob.write(outcontent, rawlen, 10, rawbuf);
commit ;
else
-- Read the file
-- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
-- for details about this method
dbms_dbfs_content.getPath(
    path, prop2, outcontent, itemtype, pflag) ;
end if ;
filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
end loop ;

-- Delete the first 2 files
filecnt := 0;

loop
    exit when filecnt = 2 ;
    path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
    -- Delete file
    -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
    -- for details about this method
    dbms_dbfs_content.deleteFile(path) ;
    commit ;
    filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
end loop ;

-- Move content staged in database to Amazon S3 store
dbms_dbfs_hs.storePush(store_name) ;
commit ;

```

```
end ;  
/
```

## Example: Using Tape

The following example program configures and uses a tape store.

Valid values must be substituted in some places, indicated by <...>, for the program to run successfully.

Please refer to the DBMS\_DBFS\_HS documentation for complete details about the methods and their parameters.

```
Rem Example to configure and use a Tape store.  
Rem  
Rem hsuser should be a valid database user who has been granted  
Rem the role dbfs_role.
```

```
connect hsuser/hsuser
```

```
Rem The following block sets up a STORETYPE_TAPE store with  
Rem DBMS_DBFS_HS acting as the store provider.
```

```
declare  
storename varchar2(32) ;  
tblname varchar2(30) ;  
tbsname varchar2(30) ;  
lob_cache_quota number := 0.8 ;  
cachesz number ;  
ots number ;  
begin  
cachesz := 50 * 1048576 ;  
ots := 1048576 ;  
storename := 'tapestore10' ;  
tblname := 'tapetbl10' ;  
tbsname := '<TBS_3>' ; -- Substitute a valid tablespace name  
  
-- Create the store.  
-- Here tbsname is the tablespace used for the store,  
-- tblname is the table holding all the store entities,  
-- cachesz is the space used by the store to cache content  
--   in the tablespace,  
-- lob_cache_quota is the fraction of cachesz allocated  
--   to level-1 cache and  
-- ots is minimum amount of content that is accumulated  
--   in level-2 cache before being stored in AmazonS3  
dbms_dbfs_hs.createStore(  
    storename,  
    dbms_dbfs_hs.STORETYPE_TAPE,  
    tblname, tbsname, cachesz,  
    lob_cache_quota, ots) ;  
  
dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(  
    storename,  
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_SBTLIBRARY,  
    '<ORACLE_HOME/work/libobkuniq.so>') ;  
-- Substitute your ORACLE_HOME path  
  
dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(  
    storename,
```

```

    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_MEDIAPool,
    '<0>') ; -- Substitute valid value

dbms_dbfs_hs.setstoreproperty(
    storename,
    dbms_dbfs_hs.PROPNAME_COMPRESSLEVEL,
    'NONE') ;

-- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
-- for details about this method
dbms_dbfs_content.registerstore(
    storename,
    'tapeprvder10',
    'dbms_dbfs_hs') ;

-- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
-- for details about this method
dbms_dbfs_content.mountstore(storename, 'tapemnt10') ;
end ;
/

Rem The following code block does file operations
Rem using DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT on the store configured
Rem in the previous code block

connect hsuser/hsuser

declare
    path varchar2(256) ;
    path_pre varchar2(256) ;
    mount_point varchar2(32) ;
    store_name varchar2(32) ;
    prop1 dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t ;
    prop2 dbms_dbfs_content_properties_t ;
    mycontent blob := empty_blob() ;
    buffer varchar2(1050) ;
    rawbuf raw(1050) ;
    outcontent blob := empty_blob() ;
    itemtype integer ;
    pflag integer ;
    filecnt integer ;
    iter integer ;
    offset integer ;
    rawlen integer ;
begin

    mount_point := '/tapemnt10' ;
    store_name := 'tapestore10' ;
    path_pre := mount_point || '/file' ;

-- We create 10 empty files in the following loop
filecnt := 0 ;
loop
    exit when filecnt = 10 ;
    path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
    mycontent := empty_blob() ;
    prop1 := null ;

    -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation

```

```

-- for details about this method
dbms_dbfs_content.createFile(
    path, prop1, mycontent) ; -- Create the file

    commit ;
    filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
end loop ;

-- We populate the newly created files with content
-- in the following loop
pflag := dbms_dbfs_content.prop_data +
         dbms_dbfs_content.prop_std +
         dbms_dbfs_content.prop_opt ;

buffer := 'Oracle provides an integrated management ' ||
         'solution for managing Oracle database with ' ||
         'a unique top-down application management ' ||
         'approach. With new self-managing ' ||
         'capabilities, Oracle eliminates time-' ||
         'consuming, error-prone administrative ' ||
         'tasks, so database administrators can ' ||
         'focus on strategic business objectives ' ||
         'instead of performance and availability ' ||
         'fire drills. Oracle Management Packs for ' ||
         'Database provide significant cost and time-' ||
         'saving capabilities for managing Oracle ' ||
         'Databases. Independent studies demonstrate ' ||
         'that Oracle Database is 40 percent easier ' ||
         'to manage over DB2 and 38 percent over ' ||
         'SQL Server.';

rawbuf := utl_raw.cast_to_raw(buffer) ;
rawlen := utl_raw.length(rawbuf) ;
offset := 1 ;
filecnt := 0 ;
loop
    exit when filecnt = 10 ;
    path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
    prop1 := null;

    -- Append buffer to file
    -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
    -- for details about this method
    dbms_dbfs_content.putpath(
        path, prop1, rawlen,
        offset, rawbuf) ;

    commit ;
    filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
end loop ;

-- Clear out level 1 cache
dbms_dbfs_hs.flushCache(store_name) ;
commit ;

-- Do write operation on even-numbered files.
-- Do read operation on odd-numbered files.
filecnt := 0 ;
loop
    exit when filecnt = 10;

```

```

path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
if mod(filecnt, 2) = 0 then
  -- Get writable file
  -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
  -- for details about this method
  dbms_dbfs_content.getPath(
    path, prop2, outcontent, itemtype,
    pflag, null, true) ;

  buffer := 'Agile businesses want to be able to ' ||
            'quickly adopt new technologies, whether ' ||
            'operating systems, servers, or ' ||
            'software, to help them stay ahead of ' ||
            'the competition. However, change often ' ||
            'introduces a period of instability into ' ||
            'mission-critical IT systems. Oracle ' ||
            'Real Application Testing-with Oracle ' ||
            'Database 11g Enterprise Edition-allows ' ||
            'businesses to quickly adopt new ' ||
            'technologies while eliminating the ' ||
            'risks associated with change. Oracle ' ||
            'Real Application Testing combines a ' ||
            'workload capture and replay feature ' ||
            'with an SQL performance analyzer to ' ||
            'help you test changes against real-life ' ||
            'workloads, and then helps you fine-tune ' ||
            'the changes before putting them into ' ||
            'production. Oracle Real Application ' ||
            'Testing supports older versions of ' ||
            'Oracle Database, so customers running ' ||
            'Oracle Database 9i and Oracle Database ' ||
            '10g can use it to accelerate their ' ||
            'database upgrades. ';

  rawbuf := utl_raw.cast_to_raw(buffer) ;
  rawlen := utl_raw.length(rawbuf) ;

  -- Modify file content
  -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
  -- for details about this method
  dbms_lob.write(outcontent, rawlen, 10, rawbuf);
  commit ;
else
  -- Read the file
  -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation
  -- for details about this method
  dbms_dbfs_content.getPath(
    path, prop2, outcontent, itemtype, pflag) ;
end if ;
filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
end loop ;

-- Delete the first 2 files
filecnt := 0;

loop
  exit when filecnt = 2 ;
  path := path_pre || to_char(filecnt) ;
  -- Delete file
  -- Please refer to DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT documentation

```

```
-- for details about this method
dbms_dbfs_content.deleteFile(path) ;
commit ;
filecnt := filecnt + 1 ;
end loop ;

-- Move content staged in database to Amazon S3 store
dbms_dbfs_hs.storePush(store_name) ;
commit ;

end ;
/
```

---

---

## Creating a DBFS Store

This chapter contains this topic:

- [Package DBMS\\_DBFS\\_CONTENT\\_SPI](#)

### Package DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT\_SPI

The Oracle Database File System Content Store Provider Interface (DBFS Content SPI) describes an internal contract between the implementation of the DBFS Content API, package body `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT`, and individual content providers.

Because PL/SQL does not allow a compile-time declarative type conformation between package signatures, store providers must informally conform to the SPI. This means that you must implement the SPI using a package that at minimum contains all of the methods specified by `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI`, with the same method signatures and semantics. These provider packages may implement other methods and expose other interfaces, but the DBFS Content API itself does not use these interfaces.

Because the Provider SPI is merely a contract specification, there is no package body for `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT_SPI`, and it is not possible to actually invoke any methods using this package.

The SPI references various elements (constants, types, exceptions) defined by the DBFS Content API (package `DBMS_DBFS_CONTENT`).

Additionally, there is an almost one-to-one correspondence between the client API exported by the DBFS Content API and the Content API that the DBFS Content API itself expects to work against.

The main distinction in the method-naming conventions is that all path name references are always store-qualified, that is, the notion of mount points and full absolute path names have been normalized and converted to store-qualified path names by the DBFS Content API before it invokes any of the Provider SPI methods.

Because the DBFS Content API and Provider SPI is a one-to-many pluggable architecture, the DBFS Content API uses dynamic SQL to invoke methods in the Provider SPI; this may lead to runtime errors.

There are no explicit initial or final methods to indicate when the DBFS Content API plugs and unplugs a particular Provider SPI. Provider SPIs must be able to auto-initialize themselves at any SPI entry point.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details of the DBMS\_DBFS\_CONTENT\_SPI package.
- See the file `dbmscapi.sql` for more information.



# Part III

---

## Application Design

This part covers issues that you must consider when designing LOB applications.

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 11, "LOB Storage"](#)
- [Chapter 12, "Advanced Design Considerations"](#)
- [Chapter 13, "Overview of Supplied LOB APIs"](#)
- [Chapter 14, "Performance Guidelines"](#)



This chapter describes issues specific to tables that contain LOB columns, with both the `SECUREFILE` and `BASICFILE` parameters. If a feature applies to only one of the two kinds of LOB, it is so stated.

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Creating Tables That Contain LOBs](#)
- [Choosing a LOB Column Data Type](#)
- [LOB Storage Parameters](#)
- [Indexing LOB Columns](#)
- [Manipulating LOBs in Partitioned Tables](#)
- [LOBs in Index Organized Tables](#)
- [Restrictions for LOBs in Partitioned Index-Organized Tables](#)
- [Updating LOBs in Nested Tables](#)

## Creating Tables That Contain LOBs

When creating tables that contain LOBs, use the guidelines described in the following sections:

### Initializing Persistent LOBs to NULL or Empty

You can set a persistent LOB — that is, a LOB column in a table, or a LOB attribute in an object type that you defined— to be NULL or empty:

- *Setting a Persistent LOB to NULL:* A LOB set to NULL has no locator. A NULL value is stored in the row in the table, not a locator. This is the same process as for all other data types.
- *Setting a Persistent LOB to Empty:* By contrast, an empty LOB stored in a table is a LOB of zero length that has a locator. So, if you `SELECT` from an empty LOB column or attribute, then you get back a locator which you can use to populate the LOB with data using supported programmatic environments, such as OCI or PL/SQL (`DBMS_LOB`). See [Chapter 13, "Overview of Supplied LOB APIs"](#) for more information on supported environments.

Details for these options are given in the following discussions.

### Setting a Persistent LOB to NULL

You may want to set a persistent LOB value to NULL upon inserting the row in cases where you do not have the LOB data at the time of the INSERT or if you want to use a SELECT statement, such as the following, to determine whether the LOB holds a NULL value:

```
SELECT COUNT (*) FROM print_media WHERE ad_graphic IS NOT NULL;
```

```
SELECT COUNT (*) FROM print_media WHERE ad_graphic IS NULL;
```

Note that you cannot call OCI or DBMS\_LOB functions on a NULL LOB, so you must then use an SQL UPDATE statement to reset the LOB column to a non-NULL (or empty) value.

The point is that you cannot make a function call from the supported programmatic environments on a LOB that is NULL. These functions only work with a locator, and if the LOB column is NULL, then there is no locator in the row.

### Setting a Persistent LOB to Empty

You can initialize a persistent LOB to EMPTY rather than NULL. Doing so, enables you to obtain a locator for the LOB instance without populating the LOB with data. To set a persistent LOB to EMPTY, use the SQL function EMPTY\_BLOB() or EMPTY\_CLOB() in the INSERT statement:

```
INSERT INTO a_table VALUES (EMPTY_BLOB());
```

As an alternative, you can use the RETURNING clause to obtain the LOB locator in one operation rather than calling a subsequent SELECT statement:

```
DECLARE
    Lob_loc BLOB;
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO a_table VALUES (EMPTY_BLOB()) RETURNING blob_col INTO Lob_loc;
    /* Now use the locator Lob_loc to populate the BLOB with data */
END;
```

## Initializing LOBs

You can initialize the LOBs in print\_media by using the following INSERT statement:

```
INSERT INTO print_media VALUES (1001, EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(), NULL,
    EMPTY_BLOB(), EMPTY_BLOB(), NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);
```

This sets the value of ad\_sourcetext, ad\_fltextn, ad\_composite, and ad\_photo to an empty value, and sets ad\_graphic to NULL.

## Initializing Persistent LOB Columns and Attributes to a Value

You can initialize the LOB column or LOB attributes to a value that contains more than 4G bytes of data, the limit before release 10.2.

**See Also:** [Chapter 20, "Data Interface for Persistent LOBs"](#)

## Initializing BFILEs to NULL or a File Name

A BFILE can be initialized to NULL or to a filename. To do so, you can use the BFILENAME() function.

**See Also:** ["BFILENAME and Initialization"](#) on page 21-5.

## Restriction on First Extent of a LOB Segment

The first extent of any segment requires *at least 2 blocks* (if `FREELIST GROUPS` was 0). That is, the initial extent size of the segment should be at least 2 blocks. LOBs segments are different because they need *at least 3 blocks* in the first extent. If you try to create a LOB segment in a permanent dictionary managed tablespace with `initial = 2` blocks, then it still works because it is possible for segments in permanent dictionary-managed tablespaces to override the default storage setting of the tablespaces.

But if uniform locally managed tablespaces or dictionary managed tablespaces of the temporary type, or locally managed temporary tablespaces have an extent size of 2 blocks, then LOB segments cannot be created in these tablespaces. This is because in these tablespace types, extent sizes are fixed and the default storage setting of the tablespaces is not ignored.

## Choosing a LOB Column Data Type

When selecting a data type, consider the following three topics:

### LOBs Compared to LONG and LONG RAW Types

[Table 11–1](#) lists the similarities and differences between LOBs, LONGs, and LONG RAW types.

**Table 11–1** *LOBs Vs. LONG RAW*

LOB Data Type	LONG and LONG RAW Data Type
You can store multiple LOBs in a single row	You can store only one LONG or LONG RAW in each row.
LOBs can be attributes of a user-defined data type	This is not possible with either a LONG or LONG RAW
Only the LOB locator is stored in the table column; BLOB and CLOB data can be stored in separate tablespaces and BFILE data is stored as an external file.	In the case of a LONG or LONG RAW the entire value is stored in the table column.
For inline LOBs, the database stores LOBs that are less than approximately 4000 bytes of data in the table column.	
When you access a LOB column, you can choose to fetch the locator or the data.	When you access a LONG or LONG RAW, the entire value is returned.
A LOB can be up to 128 terabytes or more in size depending on your block size.	A LONG or LONG RAW instance is limited to 2 gigabytes in size.
There is greater flexibility in manipulating data in a random, piece-wise manner with LOBs. LOBs can be accessed at random offsets.	Less flexibility in manipulating data in a random, piece-wise manner with LONG or LONG RAW data. LONGs must be accessed from the beginning to the desired location.
You can replicate LOBs in both local and distributed environments.	Replication in both local and distributed environments is not possible with a LONG or LONG RAW (see <i>Oracle Database Advanced Replication</i> )

## Storing Varying-Width Character Data in LOBs

Varying-width character data in CLOB and NCLOB data types is stored in an internal format that is compatible with UCS2 Unicode character set format. This ensures that there is no storage loss of character data in a varying-width format. Also note the following if you are using LOBs to store varying-width character data:

- You can create tables containing CLOB and NCLOB columns even if you use a varying-width CHAR or NCHAR database character set.
- You can create a table containing a data type that has a CLOB attribute regardless of whether you use a varying-width CHAR database character set.

## Implicit Character Set Conversions with LOBs

For CLOB and NCLOB instances used in OCI (Oracle Call Interface), or any of the programmatic environments that access OCI functionality, character set conversions are implicitly performed when translating from one character set to another.

The `DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE` API, performs an implicit conversion from binary data to character data when loading to a CLOB or NCLOB. With the exception of `DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE`, LOB APIs do not perform implicit conversions from binary data to character data.

For example, when you use the `DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE` API to populate a CLOB or NCLOB, you are populating the LOB with binary data from a BFILE. In this case, you must perform character set conversions on the BFILE data before calling `DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE`.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for more detail on character set conversions.

---

---

**Note:** The database character set cannot be changed from a single-byte to a multibyte character set if there are populated user-defined CLOB columns in the database tables. The national character set cannot be changed between AL16UTF16 and UTF8 if there are populated user-defined NCLOB columns in the database tables.

---

---

## LOB Storage Parameters

This section summarizes LOB storage characteristics to consider when designing tables with LOB storage. For a discussion of `SECUREFILE` parameters:

**See Also:**

- ["Using CREATE TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs"](#) on page 4-2
- ["Using ALTER TABLE with SecureFiles LOBs"](#) on page 4-13

## Inline and Out-of-Line LOB Storage

LOB columns store locators that reference the location of the actual LOB value. Depending on the column properties you specify when you create the table, and depending the size of the LOB, actual LOB values are stored either in the table row (inline) or outside of the table row (out-of-line).

LOB values are stored out-of-line when any of the following situations apply:

- If you explicitly specify `DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW` for the LOB storage clause when you create the table.
- If the size of the LOB is greater than approximately 4000 bytes (4000 minus system control information), regardless of the LOB storage properties for the column.
- If you update a LOB that is stored out-of-line and the resulting LOB is less than approximately 4000 bytes, it is still stored out-of-line.

LOB values are stored inline when any of the following conditions apply:

- When the size of the LOB stored in the given row is small, approximately 4000 bytes or less, and you either explicitly specify `ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW` or the LOB storage clause when you create the table, or when you do not specify this parameter (which is the default).
- When the LOB value is `NULL` (regardless of the LOB storage properties for the column).

Using the default LOB storage properties (inline storage) can allow for better database performance; it avoids the overhead of creating and managing out-of-line storage for smaller LOB values. If LOB values stored in your database are frequently small in size, then using inline storage is recommended.

---



---

**Note:**

- LOB locators are always stored in the row.
  - A LOB locator always exists for any LOB instance regardless of the LOB storage properties or LOB value - `NULL`, empty, or otherwise.
  - If the LOB is created with `DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW` properties and the BasicFiles LOB holds any data, then a minimum of one `CHUNK` of out-of-line storage space is used; even when the size of the LOB is less than the `CHUNK` size.
  - If a LOB column is initialized with `EMPTY_CLOB()` or `EMPTY_BLOB()`, then no LOB value exists, not even `NULL`. The row holds a LOB locator only. No additional LOB storage is used.
  - LOB storage properties do not affect `BFILE` columns. `BFILE` data is always stored in operating system files outside the database.
- 
- 

## Defining Tablespace and Storage Characteristics for Persistent LOBs

When defining LOBs in a table, you can explicitly indicate the tablespace and storage characteristics for each *persistent LOB* column.

To create a BasicFiles LOB, the `BASICFILE` keyword is optional but is recommended for clarity, as shown in the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE ContainsLOB_tab (n NUMBER, c CLOB)
  lob (c) STORE AS BASICFILE segname (TABLESPACE lobtbs1 CHUNK 4096
    PCTVERSION 5
    NOCACHE LOGGING
    STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS 5)
  );
```

For SecureFiles, the `SECUREFILE` keyword is necessary, as shown in the following example (assuming `TABLESPACE lobtbs1` is `ASSM`):

```
CREATE TABLE ContainsLOB_tab1 (n NUMBER, c CLOB)
  lob (c) STORE AS SECUREFILE sfsegname (TABLESPACE lobtbs1
    RETENTION AUTO
    CACHE LOGGING
    STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS 5)
  );
```

---

**Note:** There are no tablespace or storage characteristics that you can specify for *external* LOBs (BFILES) as they are not stored in the database.

---

If you must modify the LOB storage parameters on an existing LOB column, then use the `ALTER TABLE . . . MOVE` statement. You can change the `RETENTION`, `PCTVERSION`, `CACHE`, `NOCACHE LOGGING`, `NOLOGGING`, or `STORAGE` settings. You can also change the `TABLESPACE` using the `ALTER TABLE . . . MOVE` statement.

### Assigning a LOB Data Segment Name

As shown in the in the previous example, specifying a name for the LOB data segment makes for a much more intuitive working environment. When querying the LOB data dictionary views `USER_LOBS`, `ALL_LOBS`, `DBA_LOBS` (see *Oracle Database Reference*), you see the LOB data segment that you chose instead of system-generated names.

## LOB Storage Characteristics for LOB Column or Attribute

LOB storage characteristics that can be specified for a LOB column or a LOB attribute include the following:

- `TABLESPACE`
- `PCTVERSION` or `RETENTION`  
Note that you can specify either `PCTVERSION` or `RETENTION` for BasicFiles LOBs, but not both. For SecureFiles, only the `RETENTION` parameter can be specified.
- `CACHE/NOCACHE/CACHE READS`
- `LOGGING/NOLOGGING`
- `CHUNK`
- `ENABLE/DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW`
- `STORAGE`

For most users, defaults for these storage characteristics are sufficient. If you want to fine-tune LOB storage, then consider the following guidelines.

**See Also:** "STORAGE clause" and "RETENTION parameter" in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*

## TABLESPACE and LOB Index

Best performance for LOBs can be achieved by specifying storage for LOBs in a tablespace different from the one used for the table that contains the LOB. If many different LOBs are accessed frequently, then it may also be useful to specify a separate tablespace for each LOB column or attribute in order to reduce device contention.

The LOB index is an internal structure that is strongly associated with LOB storage. This implies that a user may not drop the LOB index and rebuild it.



---



---

**Note:** The LOB index cannot be altered.

---



---

The system determines which tablespace to use for LOB data and LOB index depending on your specification in the LOB storage clause:

- If you do *not* specify a tablespace for the LOB data, then the tablespace of the table is used for the LOB data and index.
- If you specify a tablespace for the LOB data, then both the LOB data and index use the tablespace that was specified.

### Tablespace for LOB Index in Non-Partitioned Table

When creating a table, if you specify a tablespace for the LOB index for a non-partitioned table, then your specification of the tablespace is ignored and the LOB index is co-located with the LOB data. Partitioned LOBs do not include the LOB index syntax.

Specifying a separate tablespace for the LOB storage segments enables a decrease in contention on the tablespace of the table.

## PCTVERSION

When a BasicFiles LOB is modified, a new version of the BasicFiles LOB page is produced in order to support consistent read of prior versions of the BasicFiles LOB value.

PCTVERSION is the percentage of all used BasicFiles LOB data space that can be occupied by old versions of BasicFiles LOB data pages. As soon as old versions of BasicFiles LOB data pages start to occupy more than the PCTVERSION amount of used BasicFiles LOB space, Oracle Database tries to reclaim the old versions and reuse them. In other words, PCTVERSION is the percent of used BasicFiles LOB data blocks that is available for versioning old BasicFiles LOB data.

PCTVERSION has a default of 10 (%), a minimum of 0, and a maximum of 100.

To decide what value PCTVERSION should be set to, consider the following:

- How often BasicFiles LOBs are updated?
- How often the updated BasicFiles LOBs are read?

[Table 11–2, "Recommended PCTVERSION Settings"](#) provides some guidelines for determining a suitable PCTVERSION value given an update percentage of 'X'.

**Table 11–2 Recommended PCTVERSION Settings**

BasicFiles LOB Update Pattern	BasicFiles LOB Read Pattern	PCTVERSION
Updates X% of LOB data	Reads updated LOBs	X%
Updates X% of LOB data	Reads LOBs but not the updated LOBs	0%
Updates X% of LOB data	Reads both updated and non-updated LOBs	2X%
Never updates LOB	Reads LOBs	0%

If your application requires several BasicFiles LOB updates concurrent with heavy reads of BasicFiles LOB columns, then consider using a higher value for PCTVERSION, such as 20%.

Setting `PCTVERSION` to twice the default value allows more free pages to be used for old versions of data pages. Because large queries may require consistent reads of BasicFiles LOB columns, it may be useful to retain old versions of BasicFiles LOB pages. In this case, BasicFiles LOB storage may grow because the database does not reuse free pages aggressively.

If persistent BasicFiles LOB instances in your application are created and written just once and are primarily read-only afterward, then updates are infrequent. In this case, consider using a lower value for `PCTVERSION`, such as 5% or lower.

The more infrequent and smaller the BasicFiles LOB updates are, the less space must be reserved for old copies of BasicFiles LOB data. If existing BasicFiles LOBs are known to be read-only, then you could safely set `PCTVERSION` to 0% because there would never be any pages needed for old versions of data.

## RETENTION Parameter for BasicFiles LOBs

As an alternative to the `PCTVERSION` parameter, you can specify the `RETENTION` parameter in the LOB storage clause of the `CREATE TABLE` or `ALTER TABLE` statement. Doing so, configures the LOB column to store old versions of LOB data for a *period of time*, rather than using a percentage of the table space. For example:

```
CREATE TABLE ContainsLOB_tab (n NUMBER, c CLOB)
  lob (c) STORE AS BASICFILE segname (TABLESPACE lobtbs1 CHUNK 4096
    RETENTION
    NOCACHE LOGGING
    STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS 5)
  );
```

The `RETENTION` parameter is designed for use with `UNDO` features of the database, such as Flashback Versions Query. When a LOB column has the `RETENTION` property set, old versions of the LOB data are retained for the amount of time specified by the `UNDO_RETENTION` parameter.

Note the following with respect to the `RETENTION` parameter:

- `UNDO SQL` is not enabled for LOB columns as it is with other data types. You must set the `RETENTION` property on a LOB column to use Undo SQL on LOB data.
- You cannot set the value of the `RETENTION` parameter explicitly. The amount of time for retention of LOB versions is determined by the `UNDO_RETENTION` parameter.
- Usage of the `RETENTION` parameter is only supported in Automatic Undo Management mode. You must configure your table for use with Automatic Undo Management before you can set `RETENTION` on a LOB column. ASSM is required for LOB `RETENTION` to be in effect for BasicFiles LOBs. The `RETENTION` parameter of the SQL (in the `STORE AS` clause) is silently ignored if the BasicFiles LOB resides in an MSSM tablespace.
- The LOB storage clause can specify `RETENTION` or `PCTVERSION`, but not both.

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* for more information on using flashback features of the database.
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for details on LOB storage clause syntax.

## RETENTION Parameter for SecureFiles

Specifying the `RETENTION` parameter for SecureFiles indicates that the database manages consistent read data for the SecureFiles storage dynamically, taking into account factors such as the `UNDO` mode of the database.

- Specify `MAX` if the database is in `FLASHBACK` mode to limit the size of the LOB `UNDO` retention in bytes. If you specify `MAX`, then you must also specify the `MAXSIZE` clause in the `storage_clause`.
- Specify `MIN` if the database is in `FLASHBACK` mode to limit the `UNDO` retention duration for the specific LOB segment to `n` seconds.
- Specify `AUTO` if you want to retain `UNDO` sufficient for consistent read purposes only. This is the default.
- Specify `NONE` if no `UNDO` is required for either consistent read or flashback purposes.

The default `RETENTION` for SecureFiles is `AUTO`.

## CACHE / NOCACHE / CACHE READS

When creating tables that contain LOBs, use the cache options according to the guidelines in [Table 11-3, "When to Use CACHE, NOCACHE, and CACHE READS"](#):

**Table 11-3 When to Use CACHE, NOCACHE, and CACHE READS**

Cache Mode	Read	Write
<code>CACHE READS</code>	Frequently	Once or occasionally
<code>CACHE</code>	Frequently	Frequently
<code>NOCACHE</code> (default)	Once or occasionally	Never

### CACHE / NOCACHE / CACHE READS: LOB Values and Buffer Cache

- `CACHE`: Oracle places LOB pages in the buffer cache for faster access.
- `NOCACHE`: As a parameter in the `STORE AS` clause, `NOCACHE` specifies that LOB values are not brought into the buffer cache.
- `CACHE READS`: LOB values are brought into the buffer cache only during read and not during write operations.

`NOCACHE` is the default for both SecureFiles and BasicFiles LOBs.

---

**Note:** Using the `CACHE` option results in improved performance when reading and writing data from the LOB column. However, it can potentially age other non-LOB pages out of the buffer cache prematurely.

---

## LOGGING / NOLOGGING Parameter for BasicFiles LOBs

`[NO]LOGGING` has a similar application with regard to using LOBs as it does for other table operations. In the usual case, if the `[NO]LOGGING` clause is omitted, then this means that neither `NOLOGGING` nor `LOGGING` is specified and the logging attribute of the table or table partition defaults to the logging attribute of the tablespace in which it resides.

For LOBs, there is a further alternative depending on how `CACHE` is stipulated.

- **CACHE is specified** and [NO]LOGGING clause is omitted. LOGGING is automatically implemented (because you cannot have CACHE NOLOGGING).
- **CACHE is not specified** and [NO]LOGGING clause is omitted. The process defaults in the same way as it does for tables and partitioned tables. That is, the [NO]LOGGING value is obtained from the tablespace in which the LOB segment resides.

The following issues should also be kept in mind.

### **LOBs Always Generate Undo for LOB Index Pages**

Regardless of whether LOGGING or NOLOGGING is set, LOBs never generate rollback information (undo) for LOB data pages because old LOB data is stored in versions. Rollback information that is created for LOBs tends to be small because it is only for the LOB index page changes.

### **When LOGGING is Set Oracle Generates Full Redo for LOB Data Pages**

NOLOGGING is intended to be used when a customer does not care about media recovery. Thus, if the disk/tape/storage media fails, then you cannot recover your changes from the log because the changes were never logged.

**NOLOGGING is Useful for Bulk Loads or Inserts.** For instance, when loading data into the LOB, if you do not care about redo and can just start the load over if it fails, set the LOB data segment storage characteristics to NOCACHE NOLOGGING. This provides good performance for the initial load of data.

Once you have completed loading data, if necessary, use ALTER TABLE to modify the LOB storage characteristics for the LOB data segment for normal LOB operations, for example, to CACHE or NOCACHE LOGGING.

---

---

**Note:** CACHE implies that you also get LOGGING.

---

---

## **LOGGING/FILESYSTEM\_LIKE\_LOGGING for SecureFiles**

NOLOGGING or LOGGING has a similar application with regard to using SecureFiles as LOGGING/NOLOGGING does for other table operations. In the usual case, if the logging\_clause is omitted, then the SecureFiles inherits its logging attribute from the tablespace in which it resides. In this case, if NOLOGGING is the default value, the SecureFiles defaults to FILESYSTEM\_LIKE\_LOGGING.

---

---

**Note:** Using the CACHE option results in improved performance when reading and writing data from the LOB column. However, it can potentially age other non-LOB pages out of the buffer cache prematurely.

---

---

### **CACHE Implies LOGGING**

For SecureFiles, there is a further alternative depending on how CACHE is specified:

- CACHE is specified and the LOGGING clause is omitted, then LOGGING is used.
- CACHE is not specified and the logging\_clause is omitted. Then the process defaults in the same way as it does for tables and partitioned tables. That is, the LOGGING value is obtained from the tablespace in which the LOB value resides. If

the tablespace is `NOLOGGING`, then the `SecureFiles` defaults to `FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING`.

The following issues should also be kept in mind.

### SecureFiles and an Efficient Method of Generating REDO and UNDO

This means that Oracle Database determines if it is more efficient to generate `REDO` and `UNDO` for the change to a block, similar to heap blocks, or if it generates a version and full `REDO` of the new block similar to `BasicFiles` LOBs.

### FILESYSTEM\_LIKE\_LOGGING is Useful for Bulk Loads or Inserts

For instance, when loading data into the LOB, if you do not care about `REDO` and can just start the load over if it fails, set the LOB data segment storage characteristics to `FILESYSTEM_LIKE_LOGGING`. This provides good performance for the initial load of data.

Once you have completed loading data, if necessary, use `ALTER TABLE` to modify the LOB storage characteristics for the LOB data segment for normal LOB operations. For example, to `CACHE` or `NOCACHE LOGGING`.

## CHUNK

A chunk is one or more Oracle blocks. You can specify the chunk size for the `BasicFiles` LOB when creating the table that contains the LOB. This corresponds to the data size used by Oracle Database when accessing or modifying the LOB value. Part of the chunk is used to store system-related information and the rest stores the LOB value. The API you are using has a function that returns the amount of space used in the LOB chunk to store the LOB value. In PL/SQL use `DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE`. In OCI, use `OCILobGetChunkSize()`.

---

**Note:** If the tablespace block size is the same as the database block size, then `CHUNK` is also a multiple of the database block size. The default `CHUNK` size is equal to the size of one tablespace block, and the maximum value is 32K.

---

**See Also:** ["Terabyte-Size LOB Support"](#) on page 12-21 for information about maximum LOB sizes

### Choosing the Value of CHUNK

Once the value of `CHUNK` is chosen (when the LOB column is created), it cannot be changed. Hence, it is important that you choose a value which optimizes your storage and performance requirements. For `SecureFiles` `CHUNK` is an advisory size and is provided for backward compatibility purposes.

**Space Considerations** The value of `CHUNK` does not matter for LOBs that are stored inline. This happens when `ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW` is set, and the size of the LOB locator and the LOB data is less than approximately 4000 bytes. However, when the LOB data is stored out-of-line, it always takes up space in multiples of the `CHUNK` parameter. This can lead to a large waste of space if your data is small, but the `CHUNK` is set to a large number. [Table 11-4, "Data Size and CHUNK Size"](#) illustrates this point:

**Table 11–4 Data Size and CHUNK Size**

<b>Data Size</b>	<b>CHUNK Size</b>	<b>Disk Space Used to Store the LOB</b>	<b>Space Utilization (Percent)</b>
3500 enable storage in row	irrelevant	3500 in row	100
3500 disable storage in row	32 KB	32 KB	10
3500 disable storage in row	4 KB	4 KB	90
33 KB	32 KB	64 KB	51
2 GB +10	32 KB	2 GB + 32 KB	99+

**Performance Considerations** Accessing lobs in big chunks is more efficient. You can set `CHUNK` to the data size most frequently accessed or written. For example, if only one block of LOB data is accessed at a time, then set `CHUNK` to the size of one block. If you have big LOBs, and read or write big amounts of data, then choose a large value for `CHUNK`.

### Set INITIAL and NEXT to Larger than CHUNK

If you explicitly specify storage characteristics for the LOB, then make sure that `INITIAL` and `NEXT` for the LOB data segment storage are set to a size that is larger than the `CHUNK` size. For example, if the database block size is 2KB and you specify a `CHUNK` of 8KB, then make sure that `INITIAL` and `NEXT` are bigger than 8KB and preferably considerably bigger (for example, at least 16KB).

Put another way: If you specify a value for `INITIAL`, `NEXT`, or the LOB `CHUNK` size, then make sure they are set in the following manner:

- `CHUNK <= NEXT`
- `CHUNK <= INITIAL`

## ENABLE or DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW Clause

You use the `ENABLE | DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW` clause to indicate whether the LOB should be stored inline (in the row) or out-of-line.

---

**Note:** You may not alter this specification once you have made it: if you `ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW`, then you cannot alter it to `DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW` and vice versa.

---

The default is `ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW`.

## Guidelines for ENABLE or DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW

The maximum amount of LOB data stored in the row is the maximum `VARCHAR2` size (4000). This includes the control information and the LOB value. If you indicate that the LOB should be stored in the row, once the LOB value and control information is larger than approximately 4000, then the LOB value is automatically moved out of the row.

This suggests the following guidelines:

The default, `ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW`, is usually the best choice for the following reasons:

- **Small LOBs:** If the LOB is small (less than approximately 4000 bytes), then the whole LOB can be read while reading the row without extra disk I/O.
- **Large LOBs:** If the LOB is big (greater than approximately 4000 bytes), then the control information is still stored in the row if ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW is set, even after moving the LOB data out of the row. This control information could enable us to read the out-of-line LOB data faster.

However, in some cases DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW is a better choice. This is because storing the LOB in the row increases the size of the row. This impacts performance if you are doing a lot of base table processing, such as full table scans, multi-row accesses (range scans), or many UPDATE/SELECT to columns other than the LOB columns.

## Indexing LOB Columns

This section discusses different techniques you can use to index LOB columns.

---



---

**Note:** After you move a LOB column any existing table indexes must be rebuilt.

---



---

## Using Domain Indexing on LOB Columns

You might be able to improve the performance of queries by building indexes specifically attuned to your domain. Extensibility interfaces provided with the database allow for domain indexing, a framework for implementing such domain specific indexes.

---



---

**Note:** You cannot build a B-tree or bitmap index on a LOB column.

---



---

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Cartridge Developer's Guide* for information on building domain specific indexes.

## Indexing LOB Columns Using a Text Index

Depending on the nature of the contents of the LOB column, one of the Oracle Text options could also be used for building indexes. For example, if a text document is stored in a CLOB column, then you can build a text index to speed up the performance of text-based queries over the CLOB column.

**See Also:** *Oracle Text Reference* for more information regarding Oracle Text options.

## Function-Based Indexes on LOBs

A function-based index is an index built on an expression. It extends your indexing capabilities beyond indexing on a column. A function-based index increases the variety of ways in which you can access data.

Function-based indexes cannot be built on nested tables or LOB columns. However, you can build function-based indexes on VARRAYs.

Like extensible indexes and domain indexes on LOB columns, function-based indexes are also automatically updated when a DML operation is performed on the LOB

column. Function-based indexes are also updated when any extensible index is updated.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide* for more information on using function-based indexes.

## Extensible Indexing on LOB Columns

The database provides *extensible indexing*, a feature which enables you to define new index types as required. This is based on the concept of cooperative indexing where a data cartridge and the database build and maintain indexes for data types such as text and spatial for example, for On-line-Analytical Processing (OLAP).

The cartridge is responsible for defining the index structure, maintaining the index content during load and update operations, and searching the index during query processing. The index structure can be stored in Oracle as heap-organized, or an index-organized table, or externally as an operating system file.

To support this structure, the database provides an *indextype*. The purpose of an *indextype* is to enable efficient search and retrieval functions for complex domains such as text, spatial, image, and OLAP by means of a data cartridge. An *indextype* is analogous to the sorted or bit-mapped index types that are built-in within the Oracle Server. The difference is that an *indextype* is implemented by the data cartridge developer, whereas the Oracle kernel implements built-in indexes. Once a new *indextype* has been implemented by a data cartridge developer, end users of the data cartridge can use it just as they would built-in *indextypes*.

When the database system handles the physical storage of domain indexes, data cartridges

- Define the format and content of an index. This enables cartridges to define an index structure that can accommodate a complex data object.
- Build, delete, and update a domain index. The cartridge handles building and maintaining the index structures. Note that this is a significant departure from the medicine indexing features provided for simple SQL data types. Also, because an index is modeled as a collection of tuples, in-place updating is directly supported.
- Access and interpret the content of an index. This capability enables the data cartridge to become an integral component of query processing. That is, the content-related clauses for database queries are handled by the data cartridge.

By supporting extensible indexes, the database significantly reduces the effort needed to develop high-performance solutions that access complex data types such as LOBs.

### Extensible Optimizer

The extensible optimizer functionality allows authors of user-defined functions and indexes to create statistics collections, selectivity, and cost functions. This information is used by the optimizer in choosing a query plan. The cost-based optimizer is thus extended to use the user-supplied information.

Extensible indexing functionality enables you to define new operators, index types, and domain indexes. For such user-defined operators and domain indexes, the extensible optimizer functionality allows users to control the three main components used by the optimizer to select an execution plan: *statistics*, *selectivity*, and *cost*.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Data Cartridge Developer's Guide*



## Oracle Text Indexing Support for XML

You can create Oracle Text indexes on CLOB columns and perform queries on XML data.

### See Also:

- *Oracle XML Developer's Kit Programmer's Guide*
- *Oracle Text Reference*
- *Oracle Text Application Developer's Guide*

## Manipulating LOBs in Partitioned Tables

You can partition tables that contain LOB columns. As a result, LOBs can take advantage of all of the benefits of partitioning including the following:

- LOB segments can be spread between several tablespaces to balance I/O load and to make backup and recovery more manageable.
- LOBs in a partitioned table become easier to maintain.
- LOBs can be partitioned into logical groups to speed up operations on LOBs that are accessed as a group.

This section describes some of the ways you can manipulate LOBs in partitioned tables.

## Partitioning a Table Containing LOB Columns

LOBs are supported in RANGE partitioned, LIST partitioned, and HASH partitioned tables. Composite heap-organized tables can also have LOBs.

You can partition a table containing LOB columns using the following techniques:

- When the table is created using the `PARTITION BY . . .` clause of the `CREATE TABLE` statement.
- Adding a partition to an existing table using the `ALTER TABLE . . . ADD PARTITION` clause.
- Exchanging partitions with a table that has partitioned LOB columns using the `ALTER TABLE . . . EXCHANGE PARTITION` clause. Note that `EXCHANGE PARTITION` can only be used when both tables have the same storage attributes, for example, both tables store LOBs out-of-line.

Creating LOB partitions at the same time you create the table (in the `CREATE TABLE` statement) is recommended. If you create partitions on a LOB column when the table is created, then the column can hold LOBs stored either inline or out-of-line LOBs.

After a table is created, new LOB partitions can only be created on LOB columns that are stored out-of-line. Also, partition maintenance operations, `SPLIT PARTITION` and `MERGE PARTITIONS`, only work on LOB columns that store LOBs out-of-line.

**See Also:** ["Restrictions for LOBs in Partitioned Index-Organized Tables"](#) on page 11-17 for additional information on LOB restrictions.

Note that once a table is created, storage attributes cannot be changed. See ["LOB Storage Parameters"](#) on page 11-4 for more information about LOB storage attributes.

## Creating an Index on a Table Containing Partitioned LOB Columns

To improve the performance of queries, you can create indexes on partitioned LOB columns. For example:

```
CREATE INDEX index_name
  ON table_name (LOB_column_1, LOB_column_2, ...) LOCAL;
```

Note that only domain and function-based indexes are supported on LOB columns. Other types of indexes, such as unique indexes are not supported with LOBs.

## Moving Partitions Containing LOBs

You can move a LOB partition into a different tablespace. This is useful if the tablespace is no longer large enough to hold the partition. To do so, use the ALTER TABLE ... MOVE PARTITION clause. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE current_table MOVE PARTITION partition_name
  TABLESPACE destination_table_space
  LOB (column_name) STORE AS (TABLESPACE current_tablespace);
```

## Splitting Partitions Containing LOBs

You can split a partition containing LOBs into two equally sized partitions using the ALTER TABLE ... SPLIT PARTITION clause. Doing so permits you to place one or both new partitions in a new tablespace. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE table_name SPLIT PARTITION partition_name
  AT (partition_range_upper_bound)
  INTO (PARTITION partition_name,
        PARTITION new_partition_name TABLESPACE new_tablespace_name
        LOB (column_name) STORE AS (TABLESPACE tablespace_name)
        ... ;
```

## Merging Partitions Containing LOBs

You can merge partitions that contain LOB columns using the ALTER TABLE ... MERGE PARTITIONS clause. This technique is useful for reclaiming unused partition space. For example:

```
ALTER TABLE table_name
  MERGE PARTITIONS partition_1, partition_2
  INTO PARTITION new_partition TABLESPACE new_tablespace_name
  LOB (column_name) store as (TABLESPACE tablespace_name)
  ... ;
```

## LOBs in Index Organized Tables

Index Organized Tables (IOTs) support internal and external LOB columns. For the most part, SQL DDL, DML, and piece wise operations on LOBs in IOTs produce the same results as those for normal tables. The only exception is the default semantics of LOBs during creation. The main differences are:

- **Tablespace Mapping:** By default, or unless specified otherwise, the LOB data and index segments are created in the tablespace in which the primary key index segments of the index organized table are created.
- **Inline as Compared to Out-of-Line Storage:** By default, all LOBs in an index organized table created without an overflow segment are stored out of line. In other words, if an index organized table is created without an overflow segment,

then the LOBs in this table have their default storage attributes as `DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW`. If you forcibly try to specify an `ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW` clause for such LOBs, then SQL raises an error.

On the other hand, if an overflow segment has been specified, then LOBs in index organized tables exactly mimic their semantics in conventional tables (see ["Defining Tablespace and Storage Characteristics for Persistent LOBs"](#) on page 11-5).

### Example of Index Organized Table (IOT) with LOB Columns

Consider the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE iotlob_tab (c1 INTEGER PRIMARY KEY, c2 BLOB, c3 CLOB, c4
VARCHAR2(20))
  ORGANIZATION INDEX
    TABLESPACE iot_ts
    PCTFREE 10 PCTUSED 10 INITRANS 1 MAXTRANS 1 STORAGE (INITIAL 4K)
    PCTTHRESHOLD 50 INCLUDING c2
OVERFLOW
  TABLESPACE ioto_ts
  PCTFREE 10 PCTUSED 10 INITRANS 1 MAXTRANS 1 STORAGE (INITIAL 8K) LOB (c2)
  STORE AS lobseg (TABLESPACE lob_ts DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW
    CHUNK 16384 PCTVERSION 10 CACHE STORAGE (INITIAL 2M)
    INDEX lobidx_c1 (TABLESPACE lobidx_ts STORAGE (INITIAL 4K)));
```

Executing these statements results in the creation of an index organized table `iotlob_tab` with the following elements:

- A primary key index segment in the tablespace `iot_ts`,
- An overflow data segment in tablespace `ioto_ts`
- Columns starting from column `C3` being explicitly stored in the overflow data segment
- BLOB (column `C2`) data segments in the tablespace `lob_ts`
- BLOB (column `C2`) index segments in the tablespace `lobidx_ts`
- CLOB (column `C3`) data segments in the tablespace `iot_ts`
- CLOB (column `C3`) index segments in the tablespace `iot_ts`
- CLOB (column `C3`) stored in line by virtue of the IOT having an overflow segment
- BLOB (column `C2`) explicitly forced to be stored out of line

---

**Note:** If no overflow had been specified, then both `C2` and `C3` would have been stored out of line by default.

---

Other LOB features, such as `BFILE`s and varying character width LOBs, are also supported in index organized tables, and their usage is the same as for conventional tables.

## Restrictions for LOBs in Partitioned Index-Organized Tables

LOB columns are supported in range-, list-, and hash-partitioned index-organized tables with the following restrictions:

- Composite partitioned index-organized tables are not supported.

- Relational and object partitioned index-organized tables (partitioned by range, hash, or list) can hold LOBs stored as follows; however, partition maintenance operations, such as `MOVE`, `SPLIT`, and `MERGE` are not supported with:
  - VARRAY data types stored as LOB data types
  - Abstract data types with LOB attributes
  - Nested tables with LOB types

**See Also:** Additional restrictions for LOB columns in general are given in "[LOB Rules and Restrictions](#)" on page 2-6.

## Updating LOBs in Nested Tables

To update LOBs in a nested table, you must lock the row containing the LOB explicitly. To do so, you must specify the `FOR UPDATE` clause in the subquery prior to updating the LOB value.

Note that locking the row of a parent table does not lock the row of a nested table containing LOB columns.

---

---

**Note:** Nested tables containing LOB columns are the only data structures supported for creating collections of LOBs. You cannot create a VARRAY of any LOB data type.

---

---

---

---

## Advanced Design Considerations

This chapter describes design considerations for more advanced application development issues.

This chapter contains these topics:

- [LOB Buffering Subsystem](#)
- [Opening Persistent LOBs with the OPEN and CLOSE Interfaces](#)
- [Read-Consistent Locators](#)
- [LOB Locators and Transaction Boundaries](#)
- [LOBs in the Object Cache](#)
- [Terabyte-Size LOB Support](#)
- [Guidelines for Creating Gigabyte LOBs](#)

### LOB Buffering Subsystem

The database provides a LOB buffering subsystem (LBS) for advanced OCI-based applications such as Data Cartridges, Web servers, and other client-based applications that must buffer the contents of one or more LOBs in the client address space. The client-side memory requirement for the buffering subsystem during its maximum usage is 512 KBytes. It is also the maximum amount that you can specify for a single read or write operation on a LOB that has been enabled for buffered access.

### Advantages of LOB Buffering

The advantages of buffering, especially for client applications that perform a series of small reads and writes (often repeatedly) to specific regions of the LOB, are:

- Buffering enables deferred writes to the server. You can buffer up several writes in the LOB buffer in the client address space and eventually *flush* the buffer to the server. This reduces the number of network round-trips from your client application to the server, and hence, makes for better overall performance for LOB updates.
- Buffering reduces the overall number of LOB updates on the server, thereby reducing the number of LOB versions and amount of logging. This results in better overall LOB performance and disk space usage.

### Guidelines for Using LOB Buffering

The following caveats apply to buffered LOB operations:

- **Explicitly flush LOB buffer contents.** The LOB buffering subsystem is not a cache. The contents of a LOB buffer are not always the same as the LOB value in the server. Unless you explicitly flush the contents of a LOB buffer, you do not see the results of your buffered writes reflected in the actual LOB on the server.
- **Error recovery for buffered LOB operations is your responsibility.** Owing to the deferred nature of the actual LOB update, error reporting for a particular buffered read or write operation is deferred until the next access to the server based LOB.
- **LOB Buffering is Single User, Single Threaded.** Transactions involving buffered LOB operations cannot migrate across user sessions — the LBS is a single user, single threaded system.
- **Maintain logical savepoints to rollback to.** Oracle does not guarantee transactional support for buffered LOB operations. To ensure transactional *semantics* for buffered LOB updates, you must maintain logical savepoints in your application to rollback all the changes made to the buffered LOB in the event of an error. You should always wrap your buffered LOB updates within a logical savepoint (see "[OCI Example of LOB Buffering](#)" on page 12-6).
- **Ensure LOB is not updated by another bypassing transaction.** In any given transaction, once you have begun updating a LOB using buffered writes, it is your responsibility to ensure that the same LOB is not updated through any other operation within the scope of the same transaction *that bypasses the buffering subsystem*.

You could potentially do this by using an SQL statement to update the server-based LOB. Oracle cannot distinguish, and hence prevent, such an operation. This seriously affects the correctness and integrity of your application.

- **Updating buffer-enabled LOB locators.** Buffered operations on a LOB are done through its locator, just as in the conventional case. A locator that is enabled for buffering provides a consistent read version of the LOB, until you perform a write operation on the LOB through that locator. See also, "[Read-Consistent Locators](#)" on page 12-10.

Once the locator becomes an updated locator by virtue of its being used for a buffered write, it always provides access to the most up-to-date version of the LOB *as seen through the buffering subsystem*. Buffering also imposes an additional significance to this updated locator; all further buffered writes to the LOB can be done *only through this updated locator*. Oracle returns an error if you attempt to write to the LOB through other locators enabled for buffering. See also, "[Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators](#)" on page 12-12.

- **Passing a buffer-enabled LOB locator an IN OUT or OUT parameter.** You can pass an updated locator that was enabled for buffering as an IN parameter to a PL/SQL procedure. However, passing an IN OUT or an OUT parameter, or an attempt to return an updated locator, produces an error.
- **You cannot assign an updated locator that was enabled for buffering to another locator.** There are different ways that assignment of locators may occur: through `OCILobAssign()`, through assignment of PL/SQL variables, through `OCIObjectCopy()` where the object contains the LOB attribute, and so on. Assigning a consistent read locator that was enabled for buffering to a locator that did not have buffering enabled, turns buffering on for the target locator. By the same token, assigning a locator that was not enabled for buffering to a locator that did have buffering enabled, turns buffering off for the target locator.

Similarly, if you `SELECT` into a locator for which buffering was originally enabled, then the locator becomes overwritten with the new locator value, thereby turning buffering off.

- **When two or more locators point to the same LOB do not enable both for buffering.** If two or more different locators point to the same LOB, then it is your responsibility to make sure that you do not enable both the locators for buffering. Otherwise Oracle does not guarantee the contents of the LOB.
- **Buffer-enable LOBs do not support appends that create zero-byte fillers or spaces.** Appending to the LOB value using buffered write(s) is allowed, but only if the starting offset of these write(s) is exactly one byte (or character) past the end of the BLOB (or CLOB/NCLOB). In other words, the buffering subsystem does not support appends that involve creation of zero-byte fillers or spaces in the server based LOB.
- **For CLOBs, Oracle requires the client side character set form for the locator bind variable be the same as that of the LOB in the server.** This is usually the case in most OCI LOB programs. The exception is when the locator is selected from a *remote* database, which may have a different character set form from the database which is currently being accessed by the OCI program. In such a case, an error is returned. If there is no character set form input by the user, then Oracle assumes it is `SQLCS_IMPLICIT`.

## LOB Buffering Subsystem Usage

Here are some details of the LOB buffering subsystem:

### LOB Buffer Physical Structure

Each user *session* has the following structure:

- Fixed page pool of 16 pages, shared by all LOBs accessed in buffering mode from that session.
- Each *page* has a fixed size of up to 32K bytes (not characters) where  $\text{page size} = n \times \text{CHUNK} \approx 32\text{K}$ .

A LOB buffer consists of one or more of these pages, up to a maximum of 16 in each session. The maximum amount that you ought to specify for any given buffered read or write operation is 512K bytes, remembering that under different circumstances the maximum amount you may read/write could be smaller.

### LOB Buffering Subsystem Usage Scenario

Consider that a LOB is divided into fixed-size, logical regions. Each page is mapped to one of these fixed size regions, and is in essence, their in-memory copy. Depending on the input `offset` and amount specified for a read or write operation, the database allocates one or more of the free pages in the page pool to the LOB buffer. A *free page* is one that has not been read or written by a buffered read or write operation.

For example, assuming a page size of 32KBytes:

- For an input offset of 1000 and a specified read/write amount of 30000, Oracle reads the first 32K byte region of the LOB into a page in the LOB buffer.
- For an input offset of 33000 and a read/write amount of 30000, the second 32K region of the LOB is read into a page.

- For an input offset of 1000, and a read/write amount of 35000, the LOB buffer contains *two* pages — the first mapped to the region 1 — 32K, and the second to the region 32K+1 — 64K of the LOB.

This mapping between a page and the LOB region is temporary until Oracle maps another region to the page. When you attempt to access a region of the LOB that is not available in full in the LOB buffer, Oracle allocates any available free page(s) from the page pool to the LOB buffer. If there are no free pages available in the page pool, then Oracle reallocates the pages as follows. It ages out the *least recently used* page among the *unmodified* pages in the LOB buffer and reallocates it for the current operation.

If no such page is available in the LOB buffer, then it ages out the least recently used page among the *unmodified* pages of *other* buffered LOBs in the same session. Again, if no such page is available, then it implies that all the pages in the page pool are *modified*, and either the currently accessed LOB, or one of the other LOBs, must be flushed. Oracle notifies this condition to the user as an error. Oracle *never* flushes and reallocates a modified page implicitly. You can either flush them explicitly, or discard them by disabling buffering on the LOB.

To illustrate the preceding discussion, consider two LOBs being accessed in buffered mode — L1 and L2, each with buffers of size 8 pages. Assume that 6 of the 8 pages in the L1 buffer are dirty, with the remaining 2 containing unmodified data read in from the server. Assume similar conditions in the L2 buffer. Now, for the next buffered operation on L1, Oracle reallocates the least recently used page from the two unmodified pages in the *L1 buffer*. Once all the 8 pages in the L1 buffer are used up for LOB writes, Oracle can service two more operations on L1 by allocating the two unmodified pages from the *L2 buffer* using the least recently used policy. But for any further buffered operations on L1 or L2, Oracle returns an error.

If all the buffers are dirty and you attempt another read from or write to a buffered LOB, then you receive the following error:

```
Error 22280: no more buffers available for operation
```

There are two possible causes:

1. All buffers in the buffer pool have been used up by previous operations.  
In this case, flush the LOBs through the locator that is being used to update the LOB.
2. You are trying to flush a LOB without any previous buffered update operations.  
In this case, write to the LOB through a locator enabled for buffering before attempting to flush buffers.

## Flushing the LOB Buffer

The term *flush* refers to a set of processes. Writing data to the LOB in the buffer through the locator transforms the locator into an *updated locator*. After you have updated the LOB data in the buffer through the updated locator, a flush call performs the following actions:

- Writes the dirty pages in the LOB buffer to the server-based LOB, thereby updating the LOB value.
- Resets the updated locator to be a read-consistent locator.
- Frees the flushed buffers or turns the status of the buffer pages back from dirty to unmodified.



After the flush, the locator becomes a read-consistent locator and can be assigned to another locator ( $L2 := L1$ ).

For instance, suppose you have two locators,  $L1$  and  $L2$ . Let us say that they are both *read-consistent locators* and consistent with the state of the LOB data in the server. If you then update the LOB by writing to the buffer,  $L1$  becomes an updated locator.  $L1$  and  $L2$  now refer to different versions of the LOB value. If you want to update the LOB in the server, then you must use  $L1$  to retain the read-consistent state captured in  $L2$ . The flush operation writes a new snapshot environment into the locator used for the flush. The important point to remember is that you must use the updated locator ( $L1$ ), when you flush the LOB buffer. Trying to flush a read-consistent locator generates an error.

The technique you use to flush the LOB buffer determines whether data in the buffer is cleared and has performance implications as follows:

- In the default mode, data is retained in the pages that were modified when the flush operation occurs. In this case, when you read or write to the same range of bytes, no round-trip to the server is necessary. Note that flushing the buffer, in this context, does not clear the data in the buffer. It also does not return the memory occupied by the flushed buffer to the client address space.

---



---

**Note:** Unmodified pages may now be aged out if necessary.

---



---

- In the second case, you set the flag parameter in `OCILOBFlushBuffer()` to `OCI_LOB_BUFFER_FREE` to free the buffer pages, and so return the memory to the client address space. Flushing the buffer using this technique updates the LOB value on the server, returns a read-consistent locator, and frees the buffer pages.

## Flushing the Updated LOB

It is very important to note that you must flush a LOB that has been updated through the LOB buffering subsystem in the following situations:

- Before committing the transaction
- Before migrating from the current transaction to another
- Before disabling buffering operations on a LOB
- Before returning from an external callout execution into the calling function, procedure, or method in PL/SQL

Note that when the external callout is called from a PL/SQL block and the locator is passed as a parameter, all buffering operations, including the enable call, should be made within the callout itself. In other words, adhere to the following sequence:

- Call the external callout
- Enable the locator for buffering
- Read or write using the locator
- Flush the LOB
- Disable the locator for buffering
- Return to the calling function, procedure, or method in PL/SQL

Remember that the database never implicitly flushes the LOB buffer.

## Using Buffer-Enabled Locators

Note that there are several cases in which you can use buffer-enabled locators and others in which you cannot.

- **When it is OK to Use Buffer-Enabled Locators:**
  - **OCI** — A locator that is enabled for buffering can only be used with the following OCI APIs:
 

```
OCILobRead2(), OCILobWrite2(), OCILobAssign(),
OCILobIsEqual(), OCILobLocatorIsInit(), OCILobCharSetId(),
OCILobCharSetForm()
```
- **When it is Not OK to Use Buffer-Enabled Locators:** The following OCI APIs return errors if used with a locator enabled for buffering:
  - **OCI** — `OCILobCopy2()`, `OCILobAppend()`, `OCILobErase2()`, `OCILobGetLength2()`, `OCILobTrim2()`, `OCILobWriteAppend2()`

These APIs also return errors when used with a locator which has not been enabled for buffering, but the LOB that the locator represents is being accessed in buffered mode through some other locator.
  - **PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB)** — An error is returned from `DBMS_LOB` APIs if the input lob locator has buffering enabled.
  - As in the case of all other locators, buffer-enabled locators cannot span transactions.

## Saving Locator State to Avoid a Reselect

Suppose you want to save the current state of the LOB before further writing to the LOB buffer. In performing updates while using LOB buffering, writing to an existing buffer does not make a round-trip to the server, and so does not refresh the snapshot environment in the locator. This would not be the case if you were updating the LOB directly without using LOB buffering. In that case, every update would involve a round-trip to the server, and so would refresh the snapshot in the locator.

Therefore to save the state of a LOB that has been written through the LOB buffer, follow these steps:

1. Flush the LOB, thereby updating the LOB and the snapshot environment in the locator (L1). At this point, the state of the locator (L1) and the LOB are the same.
2. Assign the locator (L1) used for flushing and updating to another locator (L2). At this point, the states of the two locators (L1 and L2), and the LOB are all identical.

L2 now becomes a read-consistent locator with which you are able to access the changes made through L1 up until the time of the flush, but not after. This assignment avoids incurring a round-trip to the server to reselect the locator into L2.

## OCI Example of LOB Buffering

The following OCI pseudocode example is based on the PM schema included with the Oracle Database Sample Schemas.

```
OCI_BLOB_buffering_program()
{
    int          amount;
    int          offset;
```

```

OCILobLocator lbs_loc1, lbs_loc2, lbs_loc3;
void          *buffer;
int           buf1;

-- Standard OCI initialization operations - logging on to
-- server, creating and initializing bind variables...

init_OCI();

-- Establish a savepoint before start of LOB buffering subsystem
-- operations
exec_statement("savepoint lbs_savepoint");

-- Initialize bind variable to BLOB columns from buffered
-- access:
exec_statement("select ad_composite into lbs_loc1 from Print_media
               where ad_id = 12001");
exec_statement("select ad_composite into lbs_loc2 from Print_media
               where ad_id = 12001 for update");
exec_statement("select ad_composite into lbs_loc2 from Print_media
               where ad_id = 12001 for update");

-- Enable locators for buffered mode access to LOB:
OCILobEnableBuffering(..., lbs_loc1);
OCILobEnableBuffering(..., lbs_loc2);
OCILobEnableBuffering(..., lbs_loc3);

-- Read 4K bytes through lbs_loc1 starting from offset 1:
amount = 4096; offset = 1; buf1 = 4096;
OCILobRead2(.., lbs_loc1, &amount, 0, offset, buffer, buf1, ..);
if (exception)
    goto exception_handler;
-- This reads the first 32K bytes of the LOB from
-- the server into a page (call it page_A) in the LOB
-- client-side buffer.
-- lbs_loc1 is a read-consistent locator.

-- Write 4K of the LOB through lbs_loc2 starting from
-- offset 1:
amount = 4096; offset = 1; buf1 = 4096;
buffer = populate_buffer(4096);
OCILobWrite2(.., lbs_loc2, &amount, 0, offset, buffer, buf1, ..);

if (exception)
    goto exception_handler;
-- This reads the first 32K bytes of the LOB from
-- the server into a new page (call it page_B) in the
-- LOB buffer, and modify the contents of this page
-- with input buffer contents.
-- lbs_loc2 is an updated locator.

-- Read 20K bytes through lbs_loc1 starting from
-- offset 10K
amount = 20480; offset = 10240;
OCILobRead2(.., lbs_loc1, &amount, 0, offset, buffer, buf1, ..);

if (exception)
    goto exception_handler;
-- Read directly from page_A into the user buffer.
-- There is no round-trip to the server because the

```

```
-- data is in the client-side buffer.

-- Write 20K bytes through lbs_loc2 starting from offset
-- 10K
amount = 20480; offset = 10240; bufl = 20480;
buffer = populate_buffer(20480);
OCILobWrite2(.., lbs_loc2, &amount, 0, offset, buffer, bufl, ..);

if (exception)
  goto exception_handler;
-- The contents of the user buffer are now written
-- into page_B without involving a round-trip to the
-- server. This avoids making a new LOB version on the
-- server and writing redo to the log.

-- The following write through lbs_loc3 also
-- results in an error:
amount = 20000; offset = 1000; bufl = 20000;
buffer = populate_buffer(20000);
OCILobWrite2(.., lbs_loc3, amount, 0, offset,buffer, bufl, ..);

if (exception)
  goto exception_handler;
-- No two locators can be used to update a buffered LOB
-- through the buffering subsystem

-- The following update through lbs_loc3 also
-- results in an error
OCILobFileCopy(.., lbs_loc3, lbs_loc2, ..);

if (exception)
  goto exception_handler;
-- Locators enabled for buffering cannot be used with
-- operations like Append, Copy, Trim and so on
-- When done, flush the LOB buffer to the server:
OCILobFlushBuffer(.., lbs_loc2, OCI_LOB_BUFFER_NOFREE);

if (exception)
  goto exception_handler;
-- This flushes all the modified pages in the LOB buffer,
-- and resets lbs_loc2 from updated to read-consistent
-- locator. The modified pages remain in the buffer
-- without freeing memory. These pages can be aged
-- out if necessary.

-- Disable locators for buffered mode access to LOB */
OCILobDisableBuffering(..., lbs_loc1);
OCILobDisableBuffering(..., lbs_loc2);
OCILobDisableBuffering(..., lbs_loc3);

if (exception)
  goto exception_handler;
-- This disables the three locators for buffered access,
-- and frees up the LOB buffer resources.
exception_handler:
handle_exception_reporting();
exec_statement("rollback to savepoint lbs_savepoint");
}
```

## Opening Persistent LOBs with the OPEN and CLOSE Interfaces

The OPEN and CLOSE interfaces enable you to explicitly open a persistent LOB instance. When you open a LOB instance with the OPEN interface, the instance remains open until you explicitly close the LOB using the CLOSE interface. The ISOPEN interface enables you to determine whether a persistent LOB is open.

Note that the open state of a LOB is associated with the LOB instance, not the LOB locator. The locator does not save any information indicating whether the LOB instance that it points to is open.

**See Also:** ["Opening and Closing LOBs"](#) on page 2-2.

### Index Performance Benefits of Explicitly Opening a LOB

Explicitly opening a LOB instance can benefit performance of a persistent LOB in an indexed column.

If you do not explicitly open the LOB instance, then every modification to the LOB implicitly opens and closes the LOB instance. Any triggers on a domain index are fired each time the LOB is closed. Note that in this case, any domain indexes on the LOB are updated as soon as any modification to the LOB instance is made; the domain index is always valid and can be used at any time.

When you explicitly open a LOB instance, index triggers do not fire until you explicitly close the LOB. Using this technique can increase performance on index columns by eliminating unneeded indexing events until you explicitly close the LOB. Note that any index on the LOB column is not valid until you explicitly close the LOB.

### Working with Explicitly Open LOB Instances

If you explicitly open a LOB instance, then you must close the LOB before you commit the transaction.

Committing a transaction on the open LOB instance causes an error. When this error occurs, the LOB instance is closed implicitly, any modifications to the LOB instance are saved, and the transaction is committed, but any indexes on the LOB column are not updated. In this situation, you must rebuild your indexes on the LOB column.

If you subsequently rollback the transaction, then the LOB instance is rolled back to its previous state, but the LOB instance is no longer explicitly open.

You must close any LOB instance that you explicitly open:

- Between DML statements that start a transaction, including SELECT ... FOR UPDATE and COMMIT
- Within an autonomous transaction block
- Before the end of a session (when there is no transaction involved)

If you do not explicitly close the LOB instance, then it is implicitly closed at the end of the session and no index triggers are fired.

Keep track of the open or closed state of LOBs that you explicitly open. The following actions cause an error:

- Explicitly opening a LOB instance that has been explicitly open earlier.
- Explicitly closing a LOB instance that is has been explicitly closed earlier.

This occurs whether you access the LOB instance using the same locator or different locators.

## Read-Consistent Locators

Oracle Database provides the same read consistency mechanisms for LOBs as for all other database reads and updates of scalar quantities. Refer to *Oracle Database Concepts* for general information about read consistency. Read consistency has some special applications to LOB locators that you must understand. These applications are described in the following sections.

### A Selected Locator Becomes a Read-Consistent Locator

A selected locator, regardless of the existence of the `FOR UPDATE` clause, becomes a *read-consistent locator*, and remains a read-consistent locator until the LOB value is updated through that locator. A read-consistent locator contains the snapshot environment as of the point in time of the `SELECT` operation.

This has some complex implications. Suppose you have created a read-consistent locator (L1) by way of a `SELECT` operation. In reading the value of the persistent LOB through L1, note the following:

- The LOB is read as of the point in time of the `SELECT` statement even if the `SELECT` statement includes a `FOR UPDATE`.
- If the LOB value is updated through a different locator (L2) in the same transaction, then L1 does not see the L2 updates.
- L1 does not see committed updates made to the LOB through *another* transaction.
- If the read-consistent locator L1 is copied to another locator L2 (for example, by a PL/SQL assignment of two locator variables — `L2 := L1`), then L2 becomes a read-consistent locator along with L1 and any data read is read *as of the point in time of the SELECT for L1*.

You can use the existence of multiple locators to access different transformations of the LOB value. However, in doing so, you must keep track of the different values accessed by different locators.

### Example of Updating LOBs and Read-Consistency

Read-consistent locators provide the same LOB value regardless of when the `SELECT` occurs.

The following example demonstrates the relationship between read-consistency and updating in a simple example. Using the `Print_media` table and PL/SQL, three CLOB instances are created as potential locators: `clob_selected`, `clob_update`, and `clob_copied`.

Observe these progressions in the code, from times t1 through t6:

- At the time of the first `SELECT INTO` (at t1), the value in `ad_sourcetext` is associated with the locator `clob_selected`.
- In the second operation (at t2), the value in `ad_sourcetext` is associated with the locator `clob_updated`. Because there has been no change in the value of `ad_sourcetext` between t1 and t2, both `clob_selected` and `clob_updated` are read-consistent locators that effectively have the same value even though they reflect snapshots taken at different moments in time.
- The third operation (at t3) copies the value in `clob_selected` to `clob_copied`. At this juncture, all three locators see the same value. The example demonstrates this with a series of `DBMS_LOB.READ()` calls.

- At time t4, the program uses `DBMS_LOB.WRITE()` to alter the value in `clob_updated`, and a `DBMS_LOB.READ()` reveals a new value.
- However, a `DBMS_LOB.READ()` of the value through `clob_selected` (at t5) reveals that it is a read-consistent locator, continuing to refer to the same value as of the time of its `SELECT`.
- Likewise, a `DBMS_LOB.READ()` of the value through `clob_copied` (at t6) reveals that it is a read-consistent locator, continuing to refer to the same value as `clob_selected`.

```
INSERT INTO PRINT_MEDIA VALUES (2056, 20020, EMPTY_BLOB(),
    'abcd', EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(), NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);
```

```
COMMIT;
```

```
DECLARE
    num_var          INTEGER;
    clob_selected    CLOB;
    clob_updated     CLOB;
    clob_copied      CLOB;
    read_amount      INTEGER;
    read_offset      INTEGER;
    write_amount     INTEGER;
    write_offset     INTEGER;
    buffer           VARCHAR2(20);
```

```
BEGIN
    -- At time t1:
    SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob_selected
        FROM Print_media
        WHERE ad_id = 20020;

    -- At time t2:
    SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob_updated
        FROM Print_media
        WHERE ad_id = 20020
        FOR UPDATE;

    -- At time t3:
    clob_copied := clob_selected;
    -- After the assignment, both the clob_copied and the
    -- clob_selected have the same snapshot as of the point in time
    -- of the SELECT into clob_selected

    -- Reading from the clob_selected and the clob_copied does
    -- return the same LOB value. clob_updated also sees the same
    -- LOB value as of its select:
    read_amount := 10;
    read_offset := 1;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_selected, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_selected value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcd'

    read_amount := 10;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_copied, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_copied value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcd'

    read_amount := 10;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
```

```
dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcd'

-- At time t4:
write_amount := 3;
write_offset := 5;
buffer := 'efg';
dbms_lob.write(clob_updated, write_amount, write_offset, buffer);

read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcdefg'

-- At time t5:
read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_selected, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
dbms_output.put_line('clob_selected value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcd'

-- At time t6:
read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_copied, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
dbms_output.put_line('clob_copied value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcd'
END;
/
```

## Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators

When you update the value of the persistent LOB through the LOB locator (L1), L1 (that is, the locator itself) is updated to contain the current snapshot environment *as of the time after the operation was completed* on the LOB value through locator L1. L1 is then termed an *updated locator*. This operation enables you to see your own changes to the LOB value on the next read through the same locator, L1.

---

---

**Note:** The snapshot environment in the locator is *not* updated if the locator is used to merely read the LOB value. It is only updated *when you modify* the LOB value through the locator using the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package or the OCI LOB APIs.

---

---

Any committed updates made by a different transaction are seen by L1 only if your transaction is a read-committed transaction and if you use L1 to update the LOB value after the other transaction committed.

---

---

**Note:** When you update a persistent LOB value, the modification is always made to the most current LOB value.

---

---

Updating the value of the persistent LOB through any of the available methods, such as OCI LOB APIs or PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package, updates the LOB value *and then reselects* the locator that refers to the new LOB value.



---



---

**Caution:** Once you have selected out a LOB locator by whatever means, you can read from the locator but not write into it.

Note that updating the LOB value through SQL is merely an UPDATE statement. It is up to you to do the reselect of the LOB locator or use the RETURNING clause in the UPDATE statement so that the locator can see the changes made by the UPDATE statement. Unless you reselect the LOB locator or use the RETURNING clause, you may think you are reading the latest value when this is not the case. For this reason you should *avoid mixing SQL DML with OCI and DBMS\_LOB piecewise operations*.

---



---

**See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference*

## Example of Updating a LOB Using SQL DML and DBMS\_LOB

Using table `Print_media` in the following example, a CLOB locator is created as `clob_selected`. Note the following progressions in the example, from times `t1` through `t3`:

- At the time of the first `SELECT INTO` (at `t1`), the value in `ad_sourcetext` is associated with the locator `clob_selected`.
- In the second operation (at `t2`), the value in `ad_sourcetext` is modified through the SQL UPDATE statement, without affecting the `clob_selected` locator. The locator still sees the value of the LOB as of the point in time of the original `SELECT`. In other words, the locator does not see the update made using the SQL UPDATE statement. This is illustrated by the subsequent `DBMS_LOB.READ()` call.
- The third operation (at `t3`) re-selects the LOB value into the locator `clob_selected`. The locator is thus updated with the latest snapshot environment which allows the locator to see the change made by the previous SQL UPDATE statement. Therefore, in the next `DBMS_LOB.READ()`, an error is returned because the LOB value is empty, that is, it does not contain any data.

```
INSERT INTO Print_media VALUES (3247, 20010, EMPTY_BLOB(),
    'abcd', EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(), NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);
```

```
COMMIT;
```

```
DECLARE
    num_var          INTEGER;
    clob_selected    CLOB;
    read_amount      INTEGER;
    read_offset      INTEGER;
    buffer           VARCHAR2(20);
```

```
BEGIN
```

```
    -- At time t1:
    SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob_selected
    FROM Print_media
    WHERE ad_id = 20010;

    read_amount := 10;
    read_offset := 1;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_selected, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_selected value: ' || buffer);
```

```

-- Produces the output 'abcd'

-- At time t2:
UPDATE Print_media SET ad_sourcetext = empty_clob()
  WHERE ad_id = 20010;
-- although the most current LOB value is now empty,
-- clob_selected still sees the LOB value as of the point
-- in time of the SELECT

read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_selected, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
dbms_output.put_line('clob_selected value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcd'

-- At time t3:
SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob_selected FROM Print_media WHERE
  ad_id = 20010;
-- the SELECT allows clob_selected to see the most current
-- LOB value

read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_selected, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
-- ERROR: ORA-01403: no data found
END;
/

```

## Example of Using One Locator to Update the Same LOB Value

---



---

**Note:** *Avoid updating the same LOB with different locators.* You may avoid many pitfalls if you use only one locator to update a given LOB value.

---



---

In the following example, using table `Print_media`, two CLOBs are created as potential locators: `clob_updated` and `clob_copied`.

Note these progressions in the example at times t1 through t5:

- At the time of the first `SELECT INTO` (at t1), the value in `ad_sourcetext` is associated with the locator `clob_updated`.
- The second operation (at time t2) copies the value in `clob_updated` to `clob_copied`. At this time, both locators see the same value. The example demonstrates this with a series of `DBMS_LOB.READ()` calls.
- At time t3, the program uses `DBMS_LOB.WRITE()` to alter the value in `clob_updated`, and a `DBMS_LOB.READ()` reveals a new value.
- However, a `DBMS_LOB.READ()` of the value through `clob_copied` (at time t4) reveals that it still sees the value of the LOB as of the point in time of the assignment from `clob_updated` (at t2).
- It is not until `clob_updated` is assigned to `clob_copied` (t5) that `clob_copied` sees the modification made by `clob_updated`.

```

INSERT INTO PRINT_MEDIA VALUES (2049, 20030, EMPTY_BLOB(),
  'abcd', EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(), NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);

COMMIT;

```

```
DECLARE
    num_var          INTEGER;
    clob_updated     CLOB;
    clob_copied      CLOB;
    read_amount      INTEGER;
    read_offset      INTEGER;
    write_amount     INTEGER;
    write_offset     INTEGER;
    buffer           VARCHAR2(20);
BEGIN
    -- At time t1:
    SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob_updated FROM PRINT_MEDIA
        WHERE ad_id = 20030
        FOR UPDATE;

    -- At time t2:
    clob_copied := clob_updated;
    -- after the assign, clob_copied and clob_updated see the same
    -- LOB value

    read_amount := 10;
    read_offset := 1;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcd'

    read_amount := 10;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_copied, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_copied value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcd'

    -- At time t3:
    write_amount := 3;
    write_offset := 5;
    buffer := 'efg';
    dbms_lob.write(clob_updated, write_amount, write_offset,
        buffer);

    read_amount := 10;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcdefg'

    -- At time t4:
    read_amount := 10;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_copied, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_copied value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcd'

    -- At time t5:
    clob_copied := clob_updated;

    read_amount := 10;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_copied, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_copied value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcdefg'
END;
/
```

## Example of Updating a LOB with a PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) Bind Variable

When a LOB locator is used as the source to update another persistent LOB (as in a SQL INSERT or UPDATE statement, the DBMS\_LOB.COPY routine, and so on), the snapshot environment in the source LOB locator determines the LOB value that is used as the source. If the source locator (for example L1) is a read-consistent locator, then the LOB value as of the time of the SELECT of L1 is used. If the source locator (for example L2) is an updated locator, then the LOB value associated with the L2 snapshot environment at the time of the operation is used.

In the following example, using the table `Print_media`, three CLOBs are created as potential locators: `clob_selected`, `clob_updated`, and `clob_copied`.

Note these progressions in the example at times `t1` through `t5`:

- At the time of the first SELECT INTO (at `t1`), the value in `ad_sourcetext` is associated with the locator `clob_updated`.
- The second operation (at `t2`) copies the value in `clob_updated` to `clob_copied`. At this juncture, both locators see the same value.
- Then (at `t3`), the program uses `DBMS_LOB.WRITE()` to alter the value in `clob_updated`, and a `DBMS_LOB.READ()` reveals a new value.
- However, a `DBMS_LOB.READ()` of the value through `clob_copied` (at `t4`) reveals that `clob_copied` does not see the change made by `clob_updated`.
- Therefore (at `t5`), when `clob_copied` is used as the source for the value of the INSERT statement, the value associated with `clob_copied` (for example, without the new changes made by `clob_updated`) is inserted. This is demonstrated by the subsequent `DBMS_LOB.READ()` of the value just inserted.

```
INSERT INTO PRINT_MEDIA VALUES (2056, 20020, EMPTY_BLOB(),
    'abcd', EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(), NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);
```

```
COMMIT;
```

```
DECLARE
```

```
    num_var          INTEGER;
    clob_selected    CLOB;
    clob_updated     CLOB;
    clob_copied      CLOB;
    read_amount      INTEGER;
    read_offset      INTEGER;
    write_amount     INTEGER;
    write_offset     INTEGER;
    buffer           VARCHAR2(20);
```

```
BEGIN
```

```
    -- At time t1:
    SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob_updated FROM PRINT_MEDIA
        WHERE ad_id = 20020
        FOR UPDATE;

    read_amount := 10;
    read_offset := 1;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
    -- Produces the output 'abcd'

    -- At time t2:
    clob_copied := clob_updated;
```

```

-- At time t3:
write_amount := 3;
write_offset := 5;
buffer := 'efg';
dbms_lob.write(clob_updated, write_amount, write_offset, buffer);

read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcdefg'
-- note that clob_copied does not see the write made before
-- clob_updated

-- At time t4:
read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_copied, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
dbms_output.put_line('clob_copied value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcd'

-- At time t5:
-- the insert uses clob_copied view of the LOB value which does
-- not include clob_updated changes
INSERT INTO PRINT_MEDIA VALUES (2056, 20022, EMPTY_BLOB(),
    clob_copied, EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(), NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL)
    RETURNING ad_sourcetext INTO clob_selected;

read_amount := 10;
dbms_lob.read(clob_selected, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
dbms_output.put_line('clob_selected value: ' || buffer);
-- Produces the output 'abcd'
END;
/

```

## LOB Locators and Transaction Boundaries

This section discusses the use of LOB locators in transactions and transaction IDs. A basic description of LOB locators and their operations is given in "[LOB Locators and BFILE Locators](#)" on page 2-3.

Note the following regarding LOB locators and transactions:

- Locators contain transaction IDs when:
  - You Begin the Transaction, Then Select Locator.* If you begin a transaction and subsequently select a locator, then the locator contains the transaction ID. Note that you can implicitly be in a transaction without explicitly beginning one. For example, `SELECT... FOR UPDATE` implicitly begins a transaction. In such a case, the locator contains a transaction ID.
- **Locators Do Not Contain Transaction IDs When...**
  - *You are Outside the Transaction, Then Select Locator.* By contrast, if you select a locator outside of a transaction, then the locator does not contain a transaction ID.
  - *When Selected Prior to DML Statement Execution.* A transaction ID is not assigned until the first DML statement executes. Therefore, locators that are selected prior to such a DML statement do not contain a transaction ID.

## Reading and Writing to a LOB Using Locators

You can always read the LOB data using the locator irrespective of whether the locator contains a transaction ID.

- *Cannot Write Using Locator:* If the locator contains a transaction ID, then you cannot write to the LOB outside of that particular transaction.
- *Can Write Using Locator:* If the locator *does not* contain a transaction ID, then you can write to the LOB after beginning a transaction either explicitly or implicitly.
- *Cannot Read or Write Using Locator With Serializable Transactions:* If the locator contains a transaction ID of an older transaction, and the current transaction is serializable, then you cannot read or write using that locator.
- *Can Read, Not Write Using Locator With Non-Serializable Transactions:* If the transaction is non-serializable, then you can read, but not write outside of that transaction.

The following examples show the relationship between locators and *non-serializable* transactions

## Selecting the Locator Outside of the Transaction Boundary

The following scenarios describe techniques for using locators in non-serializable transactions when the locator is selected outside of a transaction.

### First Scenario:

1. Select the locator with no current transaction. At this point, the locator does not contain a transaction id.
2. Begin the transaction.
3. Use the locator to read data from the LOB.
4. Commit or rollback the transaction.
5. Use the locator to read data from the LOB.
6. Begin a transaction. The locator does not contain a transaction id.
7. Use the locator to write data to the LOB. This operation is valid because the locator did not contain a transaction id prior to the write. After this call, the locator contains a transaction id.

### Second Scenario:

1. Select the locator with no current transaction. At this point, the locator does not contain a transaction id.
2. Begin the transaction. The locator does not contain a transaction id.
3. Use the locator to read data from the LOB. The locator does not contain a transaction id.
4. Use the locator to write data to the LOB. This operation is valid because the locator did not contain a transaction id prior to the write. After this call, the locator contains a transaction id. You can continue to read from or write to the LOB.
5. Commit or rollback the transaction. The locator continues to contain the transaction id.
6. Use the locator to read data from the LOB. This is a valid operation.

7. Begin a transaction. The locator contains the previous transaction id.
8. Use the locator to write data to the LOB. This write operation fails because the locator does not contain the transaction id that matches the current transaction.

## Selecting the Locator Within a Transaction Boundary

The following scenarios describe techniques for using locators in non-serializable transactions when the locator is selected within a transaction.

### Scenario 1:

1. Select the locator within a transaction. At this point, the locator contains the transaction id.
2. Begin the transaction. The locator contains the previous transaction id.
3. Use the locator to read data from the LOB. This operation is valid even though the transaction id in the locator does not match the current transaction.

**See Also:** ["Read-Consistent Locators"](#) on page 12-10 for more information about using the locator to read LOB data.

4. Use the locator to write data to the LOB. This operation fails because the transaction id in the locator does not match the current transaction.

### Scenario 2:

1. Begin a transaction.
2. Select the locator. The locator contains the transaction id because it was selected within a transaction.
3. Use the locator to read from or write to the LOB. These operations are valid.
4. Commit or rollback the transaction. The locator continues to contain the transaction id.
5. Use the locator to read data from the LOB. This operation is valid even though there is a transaction id in the locator and the transaction was previously committed or rolled back.
6. Use the locator to write data to the LOB. This operation fails because the transaction id in the locator is for a transaction that was previously committed or rolled back.

## LOB Locators Cannot Span Transactions

Modifying a persistent LOB value through the LOB locator using `DBMS_LOB`, `OCI`, or `SQL INSERT` or `UPDATE` statements changes the locator from a read-consistent locator to an updated locator. The `INSERT` or `UPDATE` statement automatically starts a transaction and locks the row. Once this has occurred, the locator cannot be used outside the current transaction to modify the LOB value. In other words, LOB locators that are used to write data cannot span transactions. However, the locator can be used to read the LOB value unless you are in a serializable transaction.

**See Also:** ["LOB Locators and Transaction Boundaries"](#) on page 12-17, for more information about the relationship between LOBs and transaction boundaries.

In the following example, a CLOB locator is created: `clob_updated`

- At the time of the first `SELECT INTO` (at t1), the value in `ad_sourcetext` is associated with the locator `clob_updated`.
- The second operation (at t2), uses the `DBMS_LOB.WRITE` function to alter the value in `clob_updated`, and a `DBMS_LOB.READ` reveals a new value.
- The `commit` statement (at t3) ends the current transaction.
- Therefore (at t4), the subsequent `DBMS_LOB.WRITE` operation fails because the `clob_updated` locator refers to a different (already committed) transaction. This is noted by the error returned. You must re-select the LOB locator before using it in further `DBMS_LOB` (and OCI) modify operations.

## Example of Locator Not Spanning a Transaction

```

INSERT INTO PRINT_MEDIA VALUES (2056, 20010, EMPTY_BLOB(),
    'abcd', EMPTY_CLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(), NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL);

COMMIT;

DECLARE
    num_var          INTEGER;
    clob_updated     CLOB;
    read_amount      INTEGER;
    read_offset      INTEGER;
    write_amount     INTEGER;
    write_offset     INTEGER;
    buffer           VARCHAR2(20);

BEGIN
    -- At time t1:
    SELECT      ad_sourcetext
    INTO        clob_updated
    FROM        PRINT_MEDIA
    WHERE       ad_id = 20010
    FOR UPDATE;
    read_amount := 10;
    read_offset := 1;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
    -- This produces the output 'abcd'

    -- At time t2:
    write_amount := 3;
    write_offset := 5;
    buffer := 'efg';
    dbms_lob.write(clob_updated, write_amount, write_offset, buffer);
    read_amount := 10;
    dbms_lob.read(clob_updated, read_amount, read_offset, buffer);
    dbms_output.put_line('clob_updated value: ' || buffer);
    -- This produces the output 'abcdefg'

    -- At time t3:
    COMMIT;

    -- At time t4:
    dbms_lob.write(clob_updated , write_amount, write_offset, buffer);
    -- ERROR: ORA-22990: LOB locators cannot span transactions

END;
```



/

## LOBs in the Object Cache

Consider these object cache issues for internal and external LOB attributes:

- Persistent LOB attributes: Creating an object in object cache, sets the LOB attribute to empty.

When you create an object in the object cache that contains a persistent LOB attribute, the LOB attribute is implicitly set to empty. You may not use this empty LOB locator to write data to the LOB. You must first flush the object, thereby inserting a row into the table and creating an empty LOB — that is, a LOB with 0 length. Once the object is refreshed in the object cache (use `OCI_PIN_LATEST`), the real LOB locator is read into the attribute, and you can then call the OCI LOB API to write data to the LOB.

- External LOB (`BFILE`) attributes: Creating an object in object cache, sets the `BFILE` attribute to `NULL`.

When creating an object with an external LOB (`BFILE`) attribute, the `BFILE` is set to `NULL`. It must be updated with a valid directory object name and file name before reading from the `BFILE`.

When you copy one object to another in the object cache with a LOB locator attribute, only the LOB *locator* is copied. This means that the LOB attribute in these two different objects contain exactly the same locator which refers to *one and the same* LOB *value*. Only when the target object is flushed is a separate, physical copy of the LOB value made, which is distinct from the source LOB value.

**See Also:** ["Example of Updating LOBs and Read-Consistency"](#) on page 12-10 for a description of what version of the LOB value is seen by each object if a write is performed through one of the locators.

Therefore, in cases where you want to modify the LOB that was the target of the copy, *you must flush the target object, refresh the target object, and then* write to the LOB through the locator attribute.

## Terabyte-Size LOB Support

Terabyte-size LOBs—LOBs up to a maximum size of 8 to 128 terabytes depending on your database block size—are supported by the following APIs:

- Java using JDBC (Java Database Connectivity)
- PL/SQL using the `DBMS_LOB` Package
- C using OCI (Oracle Call Interface)

You cannot create and use LOB instances of size greater than 4 gigabytes "terabyte-size LOBs"—in the following programmatic environments:

- COBOL using the Pro\*COBOL Precompiler
- C or C++ using the Pro\*C/C++ Precompiler
- Visual Basic using OO4O (Oracle Objects for OLE)

---

---

**Note:** Oracle Database does not support BFILEs larger than  $2^{64}-1$  bytes (UB8MAXVAL in OCI) in any programmatic environment. Any additional file size limit imposed by your operating system also applies to BFILEs.

---

---

## Maximum Storage Limit for Terabyte-Size LOBs

In supported environments, you can create and manipulate LOBs that are up to the maximum storage size limit for your database configuration.

Oracle Database lets you create tablespaces with block sizes different from the database block size, and the maximum size of a LOB depends on the size of the tablespace blocks. CHUNK is a parameter of LOB storage whose value is controlled by the block size of the tablespace in which the LOB is stored.

---

---

**Note:** The CHUNK parameter does not apply to SecureFiles. It is only used for BasicFiles LOBs.

---

---

When you create a LOB column, you can specify a value for CHUNK, which is the number of bytes to be allocated for LOB manipulation. The value must be a multiple of the tablespace block size, or Oracle Database rounds up to the next multiple. (If the tablespace block size is the same as the database block size, then CHUNK is also a multiple of the database block size.)

The maximum allowable storage limit for your configuration depends on the tablespace block size setting, and is calculated as (4 gigabytes - 1) times the value obtained from `DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE` or `OCILobGetChunkSize()`. This value, in number of bytes for BLOBs or number of characters for CLOBs, is actually less than the size of the CHUNK parameter due to internal storage overhead. With the current allowable range for the tablespace block size from 2K to 32K, the storage limit ranges from 8 terabytes to 128 terabytes.

For example, suppose your database block size is 32K bytes and you create a tablespace with a nonstandard block size of 8K. Further suppose that you create a table with a LOB column and specify a CHUNK size of 16K (which is a multiple of the 8K tablespace block size). Then the maximum size of a LOB in this column is (4 gigabytes - 1) \* 16K.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* for details on the initialization parameter setting for your database installation.
- ["CHUNK"](#) on page 11-11

This storage limit applies to all LOB types in environments that support terabyte-size LOBs. However, note that CLOB and NCLOB types are sized in characters, while the BLOB type is sized in bytes.

## Using Terabyte-Size LOBs with JDBC

You can use the LOB APIs included in the Oracle JDBC classes to access terabyte-size LOBs.

**See Also:** ["Using Java \(JDBC\) to Work With LOBs"](#) on page 13-28

## Using Terabyte-Size LOBs with the DBMS\_LOB Package

You can access terabyte-size LOBs with all APIs in the DBMS\_LOB PL/SQL package. Use DBMS\_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE to obtain the value to be used in reading and writing LOBs. The number of bytes stored in a chunk is actually less than the size of the CHUNK parameter due to internal storage overhead. The DBMS\_LOB.GET\_STORAGE\_LIMIT function returns the storage limit for your database configuration. This is the maximum allowable size for LOBs. BLOBs are sized in bytes, while CLOBs and NCLOBs are sized in characters.

---



---

**See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details on the initialization parameter setting for your database installation.

---



---

## Using Terabyte-Size LOBs with OCI

The Oracle Call Interface API provides a set of functions for operations on LOBs of all sizes. OCILobGetChunkSize() returns the value, in bytes for BLOBs, or in characters for CLOBs, to be used in reading and writing LOBs. For varying-width character sets, the value is the number of Unicode characters that fit. The number of bytes stored in a chunk is actually less than the size of the CHUNK parameter due to internal storage overhead. The function OCILobGetStorageLimit() returns the maximum allowable size, in bytes, of internal LOBs in the current database installation. If streaming mode is used, where the whole LOB is read, there is no requirement to get the chunk size.

---



---

**See Also:** *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*, the chapter "LOB and BFILE Operations", section "Using LOBs of Size Greater than 4GB" for details on OCI functions that support LOBs.

---



---

## Guidelines for Creating Gigabyte LOBs

To create gigabyte LOBs in supported environments, use the following guidelines to make use of all available space in the tablespace for LOB storage:

- **Single Data File Size Restrictions:** There are restrictions on the size of a single data file for each operating system. For example, Solaris 2.5 only allows operating system files of up to 2 gigabytes. Hence, add more data files to the tablespace when the LOB grows larger than the maximum allowed file size of the operating system on which your Oracle Database runs.
- **Set PCT INCREASE Parameter to Zero:** PCTINCREASE parameter in the LOB storage clause specifies the percent growth of the new extent size. When a LOB is being filled up piece by piece in a tablespace, numerous new extents get created in the process. If the extent sizes keep increasing by the default value of 50 percent every time, then extents become unmanageable and eventually waste space in the tablespace. Therefore, the PCTINCREASE parameter should be set to zero or a small value.
- **Set MAXEXTENTS to a Suitable Value or UNLIMITED:** The MAXEXTENTS parameter limits the number of extents allowed for the LOB column. A large number of extents are created incrementally as the LOB size grows. Therefore, the parameter should be set to a value that is large enough to hold all the LOBs for the column. Alternatively, you could set it to UNLIMITED.

- **Use a Large Extent Size:** For every new extent created, Oracle generates undo information for the header and other metadata for the extent. If the number of extents is large, then the rollback segment can be saturated. To get around this, choose a large extent size, say 100 megabytes, to reduce the frequency of extent creation, or commit the transaction more often to reuse the space in the rollback segment.

## Creating a Tablespace and Table to Store Gigabyte LOBs

The following example illustrates how to create a tablespace and table to store gigabyte LOBs.

```
CREATE TABLESPACE lobtbs1 DATAFILE '/your/own/data/directory/lobtbs_1.dat'
SIZE 2000M REUSE ONLINE NOLOGGING DEFAULT STORAGE (MAXEXTENTS UNLIMITED);
ALTER TABLESPACE lobtbs1 ADD DATAFILE
'/your/own/data/directory/lobtbs_2.dat' SIZE 2000M REUSE;

CREATE TABLE print_media_backup
(product_id NUMBER(6),
 ad_id NUMBER(6),
 ad_composite BLOB,
 ad_sourcetext CLOB,
 ad_finaltext CLOB,
 ad_fltextn NCLOB,
 ad_textdocs_ntab textdoc_tab,
 ad_photo BLOB,
 ad_graphic BLOB,
 ad_header adheader_typ)
NESTED TABLE ad_textdocs_ntab STORE AS textdocs_nestedtab5
LOB(ad_sourcetext) STORE AS (TABLESPACE lobtbs1 CHUNK 32768 PCTVERSION 0
                             NOCACHE NOLOGGING
                             STORAGE(INITIAL 100M NEXT 100M MAXEXTENTS
                             UNLIMITED PCTINCREASE 0));
```

Note the following with respect to this example:

- The storage clause in this example is specified in the CREATE TABLESPACE statement.
- You can specify the storage clause in the CREATE TABLE statement as an alternative.
- The storage clause is not allowed in the CREATE TEMPORARY TABLESPACE statement.
- Setting the PCTINCREASE parameter to 0 is recommended for gigabyte LOBs. For small, or medium size lobs, the default PCTINCREASE value of 50 is recommended as it reduces the number of extent allocations.

---

---

## Overview of Supplied LOB APIs

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Programmatic Environments That Support LOBs](#)
- [Comparing the LOB Interfaces](#)
- [Using PL/SQL \(DBMS\\_LOB Package\) to Work With LOBs](#)
- [Using OCI to Work With LOBs](#)
- [Using C++ \(OCI\) to Work With LOBs](#)
- [Using C/C++ \(Pro\\*C\) to Work With LOBs](#)
- [Using COBOL \(Pro\\*COBOL\) to Work With LOBs](#)
- [Using COM \(Oracle Objects for OLE\) to Work With LOBs](#)
- [Using Java \(JDBC\) to Work With LOBs](#)
- [Oracle Provider for OLE DB \(OraOLEDB\)](#)
- [Overview of Oracle Data Provider for .NET \(ODP.NET\)](#)

### Programmatic Environments That Support LOBs

[Table 13–1](#) lists the programmatic environments that support LOB functionality.

**See Also:** APIs for supported LOB operations are described in detail in the following chapters:

- [Chapter 19, "Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#)
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#)

**Table 13–1** Programmatic Environments That Support LOBs

Language	Precompiler or Interface Program	Syntax Reference	In This Chapter See...
PL/SQL	DBMS_LOB Package	<i>Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference</i>	"Using PL/SQL (DBMS_LOB Package) to Work With LOBs" on page 13-5.
C	Oracle Call Interface for C (OCI)	<i>Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide</i>	"Using OCI to Work With LOBs" on page 13-9.
C++	Oracle Call Interface for C++ (OCCI)	<i>Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide</i>	"Using C++ (OCCI) to Work With LOBs" on page 13-13.
C/C++	Pro*C/C++ Precompiler	<i>Pro*C/C++ Programmer's Guide</i>	"Using C/C++ (Pro*C) to Work With LOBs" on page 13-18.
COBOL	Pro*COBOL Precompiler	<i>Pro*COBOL Programmer's Guide</i>	"Using COBOL (Pro*COBOL) to Work With LOBs" on page 13-21.
COM	Oracle Objects For OLE (OO4O)	<i>Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide</i>	"Using COM (Oracle Objects for OLE) to Work With LOBs" on page 13-24."
Java	JDBC Application Programmatic Interface (API)	<i>Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference.</i>	"Using Java (JDBC) to Work With LOBs" on page 13-28.
ADO/OLE DB	Oracle Provider for OLE DB (OraOLEDB).	<i>Oracle Provider for OLE DB Developer's Guide</i>	"Oracle Provider for OLE DB (OraOLEDB)" on page 13-47
.NET	Oracle Data Provider for .NET (ODP.NET)	<i>Oracle Data Provider for .NET Developer's Guide</i>	"Overview of Oracle Data Provider for .NET (ODP.NET)" on page 13-48

## Comparing the LOB Interfaces

Table 13–2 and Table 13–3 compare the eight LOB programmatic interfaces by listing their functions and methods used to operate on LOBs. The tables are split in two simply to accommodate all eight interfaces. The functionality of the interfaces, with regards to LOBs, is described in the following sections.

**Table 13–2** Comparing the LOB Interfaces, 1 of 2

PL/SQL: DBMS_LOB (dbmslob.sql)	C (OCI) (ociap.h)	C++ (OCCI) (occiData.h). Also for Clob and Bfile classes.	Pro*C/C++ and Pro*COBOL
DBMS_LOB.COMPARE	N/A	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.INSTR	N/A	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR	N/A	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.APPEND	OCILobAppend()	Blob.append()	APPEND
N/A (use PL/SQL assign operator)	OCILobAssign()		ASSIGN
N/A	OCILobCharSetForm()	Clob.getCharsetForm (CLOB only)	N/A

**Table 13–2 (Cont.) Comparing the LOB Interfaces, 1 of 2**

<b>PL/SQL: DBMS_LOB (dbmslob.sql)</b>	<b>C (OCI) (ociap.h)</b>	<b>C++ (OCI) (occiData.h). Also for Clob and Bfile classes.</b>	<b>Pro*C/C++ and Pro*COBOL</b>
N/A	OCILobCharSetId()	Clob.getCharsetId()  (CLOB only)	N/A
DBMS_LOB.CLOSE	OCILobClose()	Blob.close()	CLOSE
N/A	N/A	Clob.closeStream()	N/A
DBMS_LOB.COPY	OCILobCopy2()	Blob.copy()	COPY
N/A	OCILobDisableBuffering()	N/A	DISABLE BUFFERING
N/A	OCILobEnableBuffering()	N/A	ENABLE BUFFERING
DBMS_LOB.ERASE	OCILobErase2()	N/A	ERASE
DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSE	OCILobFileClose()	Clob.close()	CLOSE
DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSEALL	OCILobFileCloseAll()	N/A	FILE CLOSE ALL
DBMS_LOB.FILEEXISTS	OCILobFileExist()	Bfile.fileExists()	DESCRIBE [FILEEXISTS]
DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE	OCILobGetChunkSize()	Blob.getChunkSize()	DESCRIBE [CHUNKSIZE]
DBMS_LOB.GET_STORAGE_LIMIT	OCILobGetStorageLimit()	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.GETOPTIONS	OCILobGetOptions()	Blob/Clob::getOptions	N/A
DBMS_LOB.FILEGETNAME	OCILobFileGetName()	Bfile.getFileName() and Bfile.getDirAlias()	DESCRIBE [DIRECTORY, FILENAME]
DBMS_LOB.FILEISOPEN	OCILobFileIsOpen()	Bfile.isOpen()	DESCRIBE [ISOPEN]
DBMS_LOB.FILEOPEN	OCILobFileOpen()	Bfile.open()	OPEN
N/A (use BFILENAME operator)	OCILobFileSetName()	Bfile.setName()	FILE SET
N/A	OCILobFlushBuffer()	N/A	FLUSH BUFFER
DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH	OCILobGetLength2()	Blob.length()	DESCRIBE [LENGTH]
N/A	OCILobIsEqual()	Use operator = ( )= /!=	N/A
DBMS_LOB.ISOPEN	OCILobIsOpen()	Blob.isOpen()	DESCRIBE [ISOPEN]
DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE	OCILobLoadFromFile2()	Use the overloadedcopy() method.	LOAD FROM FILE
N/A	OCILobLocatorIsInit()	Clob.isinitialized()	N/A
DBMS_LOB.OPEN	OCILobOpen()	Blob.open	OPEN
DBMS_LOB.READ	OCILobRead()	Blob.read	READ
DBMS_LOB.SETOPTIONS	OCILobSetOptions()	Blob/Clob::setOptions	N/A
DBMS_LOB.TRIM	OCILobTrim2()	Blob.trim	TRIM
DBMS_LOB.WRITE	OCILobWrite2	Blob.write	WRITEORALOB.
DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND	OCILobWriteAppend2()	N/A	WRITE APPEND
DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY	OCILobCreateTemporary()	N/A	N/A

**Table 13–2 (Cont.) Comparing the LOB Interfaces, 1 of 2**

<b>PL/SQL: DBMS_LOB (dbmslob.sql)</b>	<b>C (OCI) (ociap.h)</b>	<b>C++ (OCI) (occiData.h). Also for Clob and Bfile classes.</b>	<b>Pro*C/C++ and Pro*COBOL</b>
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY	OCILobFreeTemporary()	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY	OCILobIsTemporary()	N/A	N/A
N/A	OCILobLocatorAssign()	use operator = ( ) or copy constructor	N/A

**Table 13–3 Comparing the LOB Interfaces, 2 of 2**

<b>PL/SQL: DBMS_LOB (dbmslob.sql)</b>	<b>COM (OO4O)</b>	<b>Java (JDBC)</b>	<b>ODP.NET</b>
DBMS_LOB.COMPARE	ORALOB.Compare	Use DBMS_LOB.	OracleClob.Compare
DBMS_LOB.INSTR	ORALOB.Matchpos	position	OracleClob.Search
DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR	N/A	getBytes for BLOBs or BFILES  getSubString for CLOBs	N/A
DBMS_LOB.APPEND	ORALOB.Append	Use length and then putBytes() or PutString()	OracleClob.Append
OCILobAssign()	ORALOB.Clone	N/A [use equal sign]	OracleClob.Clone
OCILobCharSetForm()	N/A	N/A	N/A
OCILobCharSetId()	N/A	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.CLOSE	N/A	use DBMS_LOB.	OracleClob.Close
DBMS_LOB.COPY	ORALOB.Copy	Use read and write	OracleClob.CopyTo
OCILobDisableBuffering()	ORALOB.DisableBuffering	N/A	N/A
OCILobEnableBuffering()	ORALOB.EnableBuffering	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.ERASE	ORALOB.Erase	Use DBMS_LOB.	OracleClob.Erase
DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSE	ORABFILE.Close	closeFile	OracleBFile.CloseFile
DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSEALL	ORABFILE.CloseAll	Use DBMS_LOB.	N/A
DBMS_LOB.FILEEXISTS	ORABFILE.Exist	fileExists	OracleBFile.FileExists
DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE	N/A	getChunkSize	OracleClob.OptimumChunkSize
DBMS_LOB.FILEGETNAME	ORABFILE.DirectoryName	getDirAlias	OracleBFile.DirectoryName
	ORABFILE.FileName	getName	Oracle.BFile.FileName
DBMS_LOB.FILEISOPEN	ORABFILE.IsOpen	Use DBMS_LOB.ISOPEN	OracleBFile.IsOpen
DBMS_LOB.FILEOPEN	ORABFILE.Open	openFile	OracleBFile.OpenFile
OCILobFileSetName()	DirectoryName	Use BFILENAME	OracleBFile.DirectoryName
	FileName		Oracle.BFile.FileName
OCILobFlushBuffer()	ORALOB.FlushBuffer	N/A	N/A
DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH	ORALOB.Size	length	OracleClob.Length



**Table 13–3 (Cont.) Comparing the LOB Interfaces, 2 of 2**

PL/SQL: DBMS_LOB (dbmslob.sql)	COM (OO4O)	Java (JDBC)	ODP.NET
N/A	N/A	equals ()	N/A
DBMS_LOB.ISOPEN	ORALOB.IsOpen	use DBMS_LOB. ISOPEN ()	OracleClob.IsInChunkWriteMode
DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE	ORALOB. CopyFromBfile	Use read and then write	N/A
DBMS_LOB.OPEN	ORALOB.open	Use DBMS_LOB.OPEN ()	OracleClob.BeginChunkWrite
DBMS_LOB.READ	ORALOB.Read	BLOB or BFILE: getBytes () and getBinaryStream ()  CLOB: getString () and getSubString () and getCharacterStream ()	OracleClob.Read
DBMS_LOB.TRIM	ORALOB.Trim	Use DBMS_LOB.TRIM ()	OracleClob.SetLength
DBMS_LOB.WRITE	ORALOB.Write	BLOB: setBytes () and setBinaryStream ()  CLOB: setString () and setCharacterStream ()	OracleClob.Write
DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND	N/A	Use length() and then putString() or putBytes()	OracleClob.Append
DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPO RARY	N/A	N/A	OracleClob constructors
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORA RY	N/A	N/A	OracleClob.Dispose
DBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY	N/A	N/A	OracleClob.IsTemporary

## Using PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package) to Work With LOBs

The PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package can be used for the following operations:

- **Internal persistent LOBs and Temporary LOBs:** Read and modify operations, either entirely or in a piece-wise manner.
- **BFILES:** Read operations

**See Also:** *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for detailed documentation, including parameters, parameter types, return values, and example code.

### Provide a LOB Locator Before Running the DBMS\_LOB Routine

As described in more detail in the following, DBMS\_LOB routines work based on *LOB locators*. For the successful completion of DBMS\_LOB routines, you must provide an input locator representing a LOB that exists in the database tablespaces or external file system, *before* you call the routine.

- **Persistent LOBs:** First use SQL to define tables that contain LOB columns, and subsequently you can use SQL to initialize or populate the locators in these LOB columns.
- **External LOBs:** Define a DIRECTORY object that maps to a valid physical directory containing the external LOBs that you intend to access. These files must exist, and have READ permission for Oracle Server to process. If your operating system uses case-sensitive path names, then specify the directory in the correct case. See ["Directory Objects"](#) on page 21-3 for more information.

Once the LOBs are defined and created, you may then SELECT a LOB locator into a local PL/SQL LOB variable and use this variable as an input parameter to DBMS\_LOB for access to the LOB value.

Examples provided with each DBMS\_LOB routine illustrate this in the following sections.

## Guidelines for Offset and Amount Parameters in DBMS\_LOB Operations

The following guidelines apply to offset and amount parameters used in procedures in the DBMS\_LOB PL/SQL package:

- For character data—in all formats, fixed-width and varying-width—the amount and offset parameters are in characters. This applies to operations on CLOB and NCLOB data types.
- For binary data, the offset and amount parameters are in bytes. This applies to operations on BLOB data types.
- When using the following procedures:
  - DBMS\_LOB.LOADFROMFILE
  - DBMS\_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE
  - DBMS\_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE

you cannot specify an amount parameter with a value larger than the size of the BFILE you are loading from. To load the entire BFILE with these procedures, you must specify either the exact size of the BFILE, or the maximum allowable storage limit.

---

---

**See Also:**

- ["Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-6
  - ["Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-7
  - ["Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-9
- 
- 

- When using DBMS\_LOB.READ, the amount parameter can be larger than the size of the data. The amount should be less than or equal to the size of the buffer. The buffer size is limited to 32K.

**See Also:** ["Reading Data from a LOB"](#) on page 22-13

## Determining Character Set ID

To determine the character set ID, you must know the character set name (a user can select from the V\$NLS\_VALID\_VALUES view, which lists the names of the character

sets that are valid as database and national character sets). Then call the function `NLS_CHARSET_ID` with the desired character set name as the one string argument. The character set ID is returned as an integer. UTF16 does not work because it has no character set name. Use character set ID = 1000 for UTF16. Although UTF16 is not allowed as a database or national character set, the APIs in `DBMS_LOB` support it for database conversion purposes. `DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE` and other procedures in `DBMS_LOB` take character set ID, not character set name, as an input.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details and supported Unicode encodings in the chapter on `DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE`.
- *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*, Appendix A, for supported languages.

## PL/SQL Functions and Procedures for LOBs

PL/SQL functions and procedures that operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs are summarized in the following:

- To modify persistent LOB values, see [Table 13-4](#)
- To read or examine LOB values, see [Table 13-5](#)
- To create, free, or check on temporary LOBs, see [Table 13-6](#)
- For read-only functions on external LOBs (BFILEs), see [Table 13-7](#)
- To open or close a LOB, or check if LOB is open, see [Table 13-8](#)
- To perform archive management on SecureFiles, see "PL/SQL Packages for SecureFiles LOBs and DBFS" on page 4-24

## PL/SQL Functions and Procedures to Modify LOB Values

Here is a table of `DBMS_LOB` procedures:

**Table 13-4 PL/SQL: DBMS\_LOB Procedures to Modify LOB Values**

Function/Procedure	Description
APPEND	Appends the LOB value to another LOB
CONVERTTOBLOB	Converts a CLOB to a BLOB
CONVERTTOCLOB	Converts a BLOB to a CLOB
COPY	Copies all or part of a LOB to another LOB
ERASE	Erases part of a LOB, starting at a specified offset
FRAGMENT_DELETE	Delete the data from the LOB at the given offset for the given length
FRAGMENT_INSERT	Insert the given data (< 32KBytes) into the LOB at the given offset
FRAGMENT_MOVE	Move the given amount of bytes from the given offset to the new given offset
FRAGMENT_REPLACE	Replace the data at the given offset with the given data (< 32kBytes)
LOADFROMFILE	Load BFILE data into a persistent LOB
LOADCLOBFROMFILE	Load character data from a file into a LOB
LOADBLOBFROMFILE	Load binary data from a file into a LOB

**Table 13–4 (Cont.) PL/SQL: DBMS\_LOB Procedures to Modify LOB Values**

Function/Procedure	Description
SETOPTIONS	Sets LOB features (deduplication and compression)
TRIM	Trims the LOB value to the specified shorter length
WRITE	Writes data to the LOB at a specified offset
WRITEAPPEND	Writes data to the end of the LOB

## PL/SQL Functions and Procedures for Introspection of LOBs

**Table 13–5 PL/SQL: DBMS\_LOB Procedures to Read or Examine Internal and External LOB values**

Function/Procedure	Description
COMPARE	Compares the value of two LOBs
GETCHUNKSIZE	Gets the chunk size used when reading and writing. This only works on persistent LOBs and does not apply to external LOBs (BFILES).
GETLENGTH	Gets the length of the LOB value.
GETOPTIONS	Returns options (deduplication, compression, encryption) for SecureFiles.
GET_STORAGE_LIMIT	Gets the LOB storage limit for the database configuration.
INSTR	Returns the matching position of the nth occurrence of the pattern in the LOB.
ISSECUREFILE	Returns TRUE if the BLOB or CLOB locator passed to it is for a SecureFiles or FALSE if it is not.
READ	Reads data from the LOB starting at the specified offset.
SETOPTIONS	Sets options (deduplication and compression) for a SecureFiles, overriding the default LOB column settings. Incurs a server round trip.
SUBSTR	Returns part of the LOB value starting at the specified offset.

## PL/SQL Operations on Temporary LOBs

**Table 13–6 PL/SQL: DBMS\_LOB Procedures to Operate on Temporary LOBs**

Function/Procedure	Description
CREATETEMPORARY	Creates a temporary LOB
ISTEMPORARY	Checks if a LOB locator refers to a temporary LOB
FREETEMPORARY	Frees a temporary LOB

## PL/SQL Read-Only Functions and Procedures for BFILES

**Table 13–7 PL/SQL: DBMS\_LOB Read-Only Procedures for BFILES**

Function/Procedure	Description
FILECLOSE	Closes the file. Use CLOSE () instead.
FILECLOSEALL	Closes all previously opened files
FILEEXISTS	Checks if the file exists on the server

**Table 13–7 (Cont.) PL/SQL: DBMS\_LOB Read-Only Procedures for BFILEs**

Function/Procedure	Description
FILEGETNAME	Gets the directory object name and file name
FILEISOPEN	Checks if the file was opened using the input BFILE locators. Use ISOPEN() instead.
FILEOPEN	Opens a file. Use OPEN() instead.

## PL/SQL Functions and Procedures to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs

**Table 13–8 PL/SQL: DBMS\_LOB Procedures to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs**

Function/Procedure	Description
OPEN	Opens a LOB
ISOPEN	Sees if a LOB is open
CLOSE	Closes a LOB

These procedures are described in detail for specific LOB operations, such as, INSERT a row containing a LOB, in ["Opening Persistent LOBs with the OPEN and CLOSE Interfaces"](#) on page 12-9.

## Using OCI to Work With LOBs

Oracle Call Interface (OCI) LOB functions enable you to access and make changes to LOBs and to read data from BFILEs in C.

**See Also:** *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* chapter "LOB and BFILE Operations" for the details of all topics discussed in this section.

## Prefetching of LOB Data, Length, and Chunk Size

To improve OCI access of smaller LOBs, LOB data can be prefetched and cached while also fetching the locator. This applies to internal LOBs, temporary LOBs, and BFILEs.

## Setting the CSID Parameter for OCI LOB APIs

If you want to read or write data in 2-byte Unicode format, then set the `csid` (character set ID) parameter in `OCILobRead2()` and `OCILobWrite2()` to `OCI_UTF16ID`. The `csid` parameter indicates the character set id for the buffer parameter. You can set the `csid` parameter to any character set ID. If the `csid` parameter is set, then it overrides the `NLS_LANG` environment variable.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for information on the `OCIUnicodeToCharSet()` function and details on OCI syntax in general.
- *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for detailed information about implementing applications in different languages.

## Fixed-Width and Varying-Width Character Set Rules for OCI

In OCI, for *fixed-width* client-side character sets, the following rules apply:

- CLOBs and NCLOBs: offset and amount parameters are always in characters
- BLOBs and BFILEs: offset and amount parameters are always in bytes

The following rules apply only to *varying-width* client-side character sets:

- **Offset parameter:** Regardless of whether the client-side character set is varying-width, the offset parameter is always as follows:
  - CLOBs and NCLOBs: in characters
  - BLOBs and BFILEs: in bytes
- **Amount parameter:** The amount parameter is always as follows:
  - When referring to a server-side LOB: in characters
  - When referring to a client-side buffer: in bytes
- **OCIlobFileGetLength():** Regardless of whether the client-side character set is varying-width, the output length is as follows:
  - CLOBs and NCLOBs: in characters
  - BLOBs and BFILEs: in bytes
- **OCIlobRead2():** With client-side character set of varying-width, CLOBs and NCLOBs:
  - *Input amount* is in characters. Input amount refers to the number of characters to read from the server-side CLOB or NCLOB.
  - *Output amount* is in bytes. Output amount indicates how many bytes were read into the buffer `bufp`.
- **OCIlobWrite2():** With client-side character set of varying-width, CLOBs and NCLOBs:
  - *Input amount* is in bytes. The input amount refers to the number of bytes of data in the input buffer `bufp`.
  - *Output amount* is in characters. The output amount refers to the number of characters written into the server-side CLOB or NCLOB.

### Other Operations

For all other LOB operations, irrespective of the client-side character set, the amount parameter is in characters for CLOBs and NCLOBs. These include `OCIlobCopy2()`, `OCIlobErase2()`, `OCIlobLoadFromFile2()`, and `OCIlobTrim2()`. All these operations refer to the amount of LOB data on the server.

**See also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*

### NCLOBs in OCI

NCLOBs are allowed as parameters in methods.

### OCIlobLoadFromFile2() Amount Parameter

When using `OCIlobLoadFromFile2()` you cannot specify amount larger than the length of the BFILE. To load the entire BFILE, you can pass the value returned by `OCIlobGetStorageLimit()`.

## OCILobRead2() Amount Parameter

To read to the end of a LOB using `OCILobRead2()`, you specify an amount equal to the value returned by `OCILobGetStorageLimit()`. See ["Reading Data from a LOB"](#) on page 22-13 for more information.

## OCILobLocator Pointer Assignment

Special care must be taken when assigning `OCILobLocator` pointers in an OCI program—using the "=" assignment operator. Pointer assignments create a shallow copy of the LOB. After the pointer assignment, the source and target LOBs point to the same copy of data.

These semantics are different from using LOB APIs, such as `OCILobAssign()` or `OCILobLocatorAssign()` to perform assignments. When these APIs are used, the locators logically point to independent copies of data after assignment.

For temporary LOBs, before performing pointer assignments, you must ensure that any temporary LOB in the target LOB locator is freed by calling `OCIFreeTemporary()`. In contrast, when `OCILobLocatorAssign()` is used, the original temporary LOB in the target LOB locator variable, if any, is freed automatically before the assignment happens.

## LOB Locators in Defines and Out-Bind Variables in OCI

Before you reuse a LOB locator in a define or an out-bind variable in a SQL statement, you must free any temporary LOB in the existing LOB locator buffer using `OCIFreeTemporary()`.

## OCI Functions That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs

OCI functions that operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs are as follows:

- To modify persistent LOBs, see [Table 13-9](#)
- To read or examine LOB values, see [Table 13-10](#)
- To create or free temporary LOB, or check if Temporary LOB exists, see [Table 13-11](#)
- For read only functions on external LOBs (BFILEs), see [Table 13-12](#)
- To operate on LOB locators, see [Table 13-13](#)
- For LOB buffering, see [Table 13-14](#)
- To open and close LOBs, see [Table 13-15](#)

## OCI Functions to Modify Persistent LOB (BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB) Values

**Table 13-9** OCI Functions to Modify Persistent LOB (BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB) Values

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>OCILobAppend()</code>	Appends LOB value to another LOB.
<code>OCILobArrayWrite()</code>	Writes data using multiple locators in one round trip.
<code>OCILobCopy2()</code>	Copies all or part of a LOB to another LOB.
<code>OCILobErase2()</code>	Erases part of a LOB, starting at a specified offset.
<code>OCILobLoadFromFile2()</code>	Loads BFILE data into a persistent LOB.

**Table 13–9 (Cont.) OCI Functions to Modify Persistent LOB (BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB) Values**

Function/Procedure	Description
OCILOBSetContentType()	Sets a content string in a SecureFiles.
OCILOBSetOptions()	Enables option settings (deduplication and compression) for a SecureFiles.
OCILOBTrim2()	Truncates a LOB.
OCILOBWrite2()	Writes data from a buffer into a LOB, overwriting existing data.
OCILOBWriteAppend2()	Writes data from a buffer to the end of the LOB.

## OCI Functions to Read or Examine Persistent LOB and External LOB (BFILE) Values

**Table 13–10 OCI Functions to Read or Examine persistent LOB and external LOB (BFILE) Values**

Function/Procedure	Description
OCILOBArrayRead()	Reads data using multiple locators in one round trip.
OCILOBGetChunkSize()	Gets the chunk size used when reading and writing. This works on persistent LOBs and does not apply to external LOBs (BFILES).
OCILOBGetContentType()	Gets the content string for a SecureFiles.
OCILOBGetLength2()	Returns the length of a LOB or a BFILE.
OCILOBGetOptions()	Obtains the enabled settings (deduplication, compression, encryption) for a given SecureFiles.
OCILOBGetStorageLimit()	Gets the maximum length of an internal LOB.
OCILOBRead2()	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL LOB or a BFILE into a buffer.

## OCI Functions for Temporary LOBs

**Table 13–11 OCI Functions for Temporary LOBs**

Function/Procedure	Description
OCILOBCreateTemporary()	Creates a temporary LOB.
OCILOBIsTemporary()	Sees if a temporary LOB exists.
OCILOBFreeTemporary()	Frees a temporary LOB.

## OCI Read-Only Functions for BFILES

**Table 13–12 OCI Read-Only Functions for BFILES**

Function/Procedure	Description
OCILOBFileClose()	Closes an open BFILE.
OCILOBFileCloseAll()	Closes all open BFILES.
OCILOBFileExists()	Checks whether a BFILE exists.
OCILOBFileGetName()	Returns the name of a BFILE.
OCILOBFileIsOpen()	Checks whether a BFILE is open.
OCILOBFileOpen()	Opens a BFILE.



## OCI LOB Locator Functions

**Table 13–13 OCI LOB-Locator Functions**

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>OCILobAssign()</code>	Assigns one LOB locator to another.
<code>OCILobCharSetForm()</code>	Returns the character set form of a LOB.
<code>OCILobCharsetId()</code>	Returns the character set ID of a LOB.
<code>OCILobFileSetName()</code>	Sets the name of a BFILE in a locator.
<code>OCILobIsEqual()</code>	Checks whether two LOB locators refer to the same LOB.
<code>OCILobLocatorIsInit()</code>	Checks whether a LOB locator is initialized.

## OCI LOB-Buffering Functions

**Table 13–14 OCI LOB-Buffering Functions**

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>OCILobDisableBuffering()</code>	Disables the buffering subsystem use.
<code>OCILobEnableBuffering()</code>	Uses the LOB buffering subsystem for subsequent reads and writes of LOB data.
<code>OCILobFlushBuffer()</code>	Flushes changes made to the LOB buffering subsystem to the database (server).

## OCI Functions to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs

**Table 13–15 OCI Functions to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs**

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>OCILobOpen()</code>	Opens a LOB.
<code>OCILobIsOpen()</code>	Sees if a LOB is open.
<code>OCILobClose()</code>	Closes a LOB.

## OCI LOB Examples

Further OCI examples are provided in:

- [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#)
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#)

See also Appendix B, "OCI Demonstration Programs" in *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*, for further OCI demonstration script listings.

## Further Information About OCI

For further information and features of OCI, refer to the OTN Web site, <http://www.oracle.com/technology/> for OCI features and frequently asked questions.

## Using C++ (OCCI) to Work With LOBs

Oracle C++ Call Interface (OCCI) is a C++ API for manipulating data in an Oracle database. OCCI is organized as an easy-to-use set of C++ classes that enable a C++ program to connect to a database, run SQL statements, insert/update values in

database tables, retrieve results of a query, run stored procedures in the database, and access metadata of database schema objects. OCI also provides a seamless interface to manipulate objects of user-defined types as C++ class instances.

Oracle C++ Call Interface (OCCI) is designed so that you can use OCI and OCCI together to build applications.

The OCCI API provides the following advantages over JDBC and ODBC:

- OCCI encompasses more Oracle functionality than JDBC. OCCI provides all the functionality of OCI that JDBC does not provide.
- OCCI provides *compiled* performance. With compiled programs, the source code is written as close to the computer as possible. Because JDBC is an *interpreted* API, it cannot provide the performance of a compiled API. With an interpreted program, performance degrades as each line of code must be interpreted individually into code that is close to the computer.
- OCCI provides memory management with smart pointers. You do not have to be concerned about managing memory for OCCI objects. This results in robust higher performance application code.
- Navigational access of OCCI enables you to intuitively access objects and call methods. Changes to objects persist without writing corresponding SQL statements. If you use the client side cache, then the navigational interface performs better than the object interface.
- With respect to ODBC, the OCCI API is simpler to use. Because ODBC is built on the C language, OCCI has all the advantages C++ provides over C. Moreover, ODBC has a reputation as being difficult to learn. The OCCI, by contrast, is designed for ease of use.

You can use OCCI to make changes to an entire persistent LOB, or to pieces of the beginning, middle, or end of it, as follows:

- For reading from internal and external LOBs (BFILES)
- For writing to persistent LOBs

## OCCI Classes for LOBs

OCCI provides the following classes that allow you to use different types of LOB instances as objects in your C++ application:

- `Clob` class to access and modify data stored in internal CLOBs and NCLOBs
- `Blob` class to access and modify data stored in internal BLOBs
- `Bfile` class to access and read data stored in external LOBs (BFILES)

**See Also:** Syntax information on these classes and details on OCCI in general is available in the *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*.

### Clob Class

The `Clob` driver implements a CLOB object using an SQL LOB locator. This means that a CLOB object contains a logical pointer to the SQL CLOB data rather than the data itself.

The CLOB interface provides methods for getting the length of an SQL CLOB value, for materializing a CLOB value on the client, and getting a substring. Methods in the

`ResultSet` and `Statement` interfaces such as `getClob()` and `setClob()` allow you to access SQL CLOB values.

**See Also:** *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for detailed information on the `Clob` class.

### Blob Class

Methods in the `ResultSet` and `Statement` interfaces, such as `getBlob()` and `setBlob()`, allow you to access SQL BLOB values. The `Blob` interface provides methods for getting the length of a SQL BLOB value, for materializing a BLOB value on the client, and for extracting a part of the BLOB.

**See Also:**

- *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for detailed information on the `Blob` class methods and details on instantiating and initializing a `Blob` object in your C++ application.
- *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for detailed information about implementing applications in different languages.

### Bfile Class

The `Bfile` class enables you to instantiate a `Bfile` object in your C++ application. You must then use methods of the `Bfile` class, such as the `setName()` method, to initialize the `Bfile` object which associates the object properties with an object of type `BFILE` in a `BFILE` column of the database.

**See Also:** *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide* for detailed information on the `Blob` class methods and details on instantiating and initializing an `Blob` object in your C++ application.

## Fixed-Width Character Set Rules

In OCI, for *fixed-width* client-side character sets, the following rules apply:

- `Clob`: offset and amount parameters are always in characters
- `Blob`: offset and amount parameters are always in bytes
- `Bfile`: offset and amount parameters are always in bytes

## Varying-Width Character Set Rules

The following rules apply only to *varying-width* client-side character sets:

- **Offset parameter:** Regardless of whether the client-side character set is varying-width, the offset parameter is always as follows:
  - `Clob()`: in characters
  - `Blob()`: in bytes
  - `Bfile()`: in bytes
- **Amount parameter:** The amount parameter is always as follows:
  - `Clob`: in characters, when referring to a server-side LOB
  - `Blob`: in bytes, when referring to a client-side buffer
  - `Bfile`: in bytes, when referring to a client-side buffer

- **length()**: Regardless of whether the client-side character set is varying-width, the output length is as follows:
  - `Clob.length()`: in characters
  - `Blob.length()`: in bytes
  - `Bfile.length()`: in bytes
- **Clob.read() and Blob.read()**: With client-side character set of varying-width, CLOBs and NCLOBs:
  - **Input amount** is in characters. Input amount refers to the number of characters to read from the server-side CLOB or NCLOB.
  - **Output amount** is in bytes. Output amount indicates how many bytes were read into the OCI buffer parameter, `buffer`.
- **Clob.write() and Blob.write()**: With client-side character set of varying-width, CLOBs and NCLOBs:
  - **Input amount** is in bytes. Input amount refers to the number of bytes of data in the OCI input buffer, `buffer`.
  - **Output amount** is in characters. Output amount refers to the number of characters written into the server-side CLOB or NCLOB.

## Offset and Amount Parameters for Other OCI Operations

For all other OCI LOB operations, irrespective of the client-side character set, the *amount parameter* is in characters for CLOBs and NCLOBs. These include the following:

- `Clob.copy()`
- `Clob.erase()`
- `Clob.trim()`
- For LoadFromFile functionality, overloaded `Clob.copy()`

All these operations refer to the amount of LOB data on the server.

**See also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*

### NCLOBs in OCI

- NCLOB instances are allowed as parameters in methods
- NCLOB instances are allowed as attributes in object types.

## Amount Parameter for OCI LOB copy() Methods

The `copy()` method on `Clob` and `Blob` enables you to load data from a `BFILE`. You can pass one of the following values for the amount parameter to this method:

- An amount smaller than the size of the `BFILE` to load a portion of the data
- An amount equal to the size of the `BFILE` to load all of the data
- The `UB8MAXVAL` constant to load all of the `BFILE` data

You cannot specify an amount larger than the length of the `BFILE`.

## Amount Parameter for OCI read() Operations

The `read()` method on an `Clob`, `Blob`, or `Bfile` object, reads data from a `BFILE`. You can pass one of the following values for the amount parameter to specify the amount of data to read:

- An amount smaller than the size of the `BFILE` to load a portion of the data
- An amount equal to the size of the `BFILE` to load all of the data
- 0 (zero) to read until the end of the `BFILE` in streaming mode

You cannot specify an amount larger than the length of the `BFILE`.

## Further Information About OCI

### See Also:

- *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- <http://www.oracle.com/> search for articles and product information featuring OCI.

## OCI Methods That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILES

OCI methods that operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILES are as follows:

- To modify persistent LOBs, see [Table 13–16](#)
- To read or examine LOB values, see [Table 13–17](#)
- For read only methods on external LOBs (BFILES), see [Table 13–18](#)
- Other LOB OCI methods are described in [Table 13–19](#)
- To open and close LOBs, see [Table 13–20](#)

## OCI Methods to Modify Persistent LOB (BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB) Values

**Table 13–16** OCI Clob and Blob Methods to Modify Persistent LOB (BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB) Values

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>Blob/Clob.append()</code>	Appends CLOB or BLOB value to another LOB.
<code>Blob/Clob.copy()</code>	Copies all or part of a CLOB or BLOB to another LOB.
<code>Blob/Clob.copy()</code>	Loads BFILE data into a persistent LOB.
<code>Blob/Clob.trim()</code>	Truncates a CLOB or BLOB.
<code>Blob/Clob.write()</code>	Writes data from a buffer into a LOB, overwriting existing data.

## OCI Methods to Read or Examine Persistent LOB and BFILE Values

**Table 13–17** OCI Blob/Clob/Bfile Methods to Read or Examine persistent LOB and BFILE Values

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>Blob/Clob.getChunkSize()</code>	Gets the chunk size used when reading and writing. This works on persistent LOBs and does not apply to external LOBs (BFILES).
<code>Blob/Clob.getOptions()</code>	Obtains settings for existing and newly created LOBs.

**Table 13–17 (Cont.) OCCI Blob/Clob/Bfile Methods to Read or Examine persistent LOB and BFILE Values**

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>Blob/Clob.length()</code>	Returns the length of a LOB or a BFILE.
<code>Blob/Clob.read()</code>	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL LOB or a BFILE into a buffer.
<code>Blob/Clob.setOptions()</code>	Enables LOB settings for existing and newly created LOBs.

## OCCI Read-Only Methods for BFILES

**Table 13–18 OCCI Read-Only Methods for BFILES**

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>Bfile.close()</code>	Closes an open BFILE.
<code>Bfile.fileExists()</code>	Checks whether a BFILE exists.
<code>Bfile.getFileName()</code>	Returns the name of a BFILE.
<code>Bfile.getDirAlias()</code>	Gets the directory object name.
<code>Bfile.isOpen()</code>	Checks whether a BFILE is open.
<code>Bfile.open()</code>	Opens a BFILE.

## Other OCCI LOB Methods

**Table 13–19 Other OCCI LOB Methods**

Methods	Description
<code>Clob/Blob/Bfile.operator=()</code>	Assigns one LOB locator to another. Use = or the copy constructor.
<code>Clob.getCharSetForm()</code>	Returns the character set form of a LOB.
<code>Clob.getCharsetId()</code>	Returns the character set ID of a LOB.
<code>Bfile.setName()</code>	Sets the name of a BFILE.
<code>Clob/Blob/Bfile.operator==(())</code>	Checks whether two LOB refer to the same LOB.
<code>Clob/Blob/Bfile.isInitialized()</code>	Checks whether a LOB is initialized.

## OCCI Methods to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs

**Table 13–20 OCCI Methods to Open and Close Internal and External LOBs**

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>Clob/Blob/Bfile.Open()</code>	Opens a LOB
<code>Clob/Blob/Bfile.isOpen()</code>	Sees if a LOB is open
<code>Clob/Blob/Bfile.Close()</code>	Closes a LOB

## Using C/C++ (Pro\*C) to Work With LOBs

You can make changes to an entire persistent LOB, or to pieces of the beginning, middle or end of a LOB by using embedded SQL. You can access both internal and external LOBs for read purposes, and you can *write* to persistent LOBs.

Embedded SQL statements allow you to access data stored in BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs. These statements are listed in the following tables, and are discussed in greater detail later in the chapter.

**See Also:** *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* for detailed documentation, including syntax, host variables, host variable types and example code.

## First Provide an Allocated Input Locator Pointer That Represents LOB

Unlike locators in PL/SQL, locators in Pro\*C/C++ are mapped to locator pointers which are then used to refer to the LOB or BFILE value.

To successfully complete an embedded SQL LOB statement you must do the following:

1. Provide an *allocated* input locator pointer that represents a LOB that exists in the database tablespaces or external file system *before* you run the statement.
2. SELECT a LOB locator into a LOB locator pointer variable
3. Use this variable in the embedded SQL LOB statement to access and manipulate the LOB value

**See Also:** APIs for supported LOB operations are described in detail in:

- [Chapter 19, "Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#)
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#)

## Pro\*C/C++ Statements That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs

Pro\*C/C++ statements that operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, and NCLOBs are listed in the following tables:

- To modify persistent LOBs, see [Table 13–21](#)
- To read or examine LOB values, see [Table 13–22](#)
- To create or free temporary LOB, or check if Temporary LOB exists, see [Table 13–23](#)
- To operate close and 'see if file exists' functions on BFILEs, see [Table 13–24](#)
- To operate on LOB locators, see [Table 13–25](#)
- For LOB buffering, see [Table 13–26](#)
- To open or close LOBs or BFILEs, see [Table 13–27](#)

## Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements to Modify Persistent LOB Values

**Table 13–21** *Pro\*C/C++: Embedded SQL Statements to Modify Persistent LOB Values*

Statement	Description
APPEND	Appends a LOB value to another LOB.
COPY	Copies all or a part of a LOB into another LOB.
ERASE	Erases part of a LOB, starting at a specified offset.

**Table 13–21 (Cont.) Pro\*C/C++: Embedded SQL Statements to Modify Persistent LOB Values**

Statement	Description
LOAD FROM FILE	Loads BFILE data into a persistent LOB at a specified offset.
TRIM	Truncates a LOB.
WRITE	Writes data from a buffer into a LOB at a specified offset.
WRITE APPEND	Writes data from a buffer into a LOB at the end of the LOB.

## Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for Introspection of LOBs

**Table 13–22 Pro\*C/C++: Embedded SQL Statements for Introspection of LOBs**

Statement	Description
DESCRIBE [CHUNKSIZE]	Gets the chunk size used when writing. This works for persistent LOBs only. It does not apply to external LOBs (BFILES).
DESCRIBE [LENGTH]	Returns the length of a LOB or a BFILE.
READ	reads a specified portion of a non-NULL LOB or a BFILE into a buffer.

## Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for Temporary LOBs

**Table 13–23 Pro\*C/C++: Embedded SQL Statements for Temporary LOBs**

Statement	Description
CREATE TEMPORARY	Creates a temporary LOB.
DESCRIBE [ISTEMPORARY]	Sees if a LOB locator refers to a temporary LOB.
FREE TEMPORARY	Frees a temporary LOB.

## Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for BFILES

**Table 13–24 Pro\*C/C++: Embedded SQL Statements for BFILES**

Statement	Description
FILE CLOSE ALL	Closes all open BFILES.
DESCRIBE [FILEEXISTS]	Checks whether a BFILE exists.
DESCRIBE [DIRECTORY,FILENAME]	Returns the directory object name and filename of a BFILE.

## Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Locators

**Table 13–25 Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Locators**

Statement	Description
ASSIGN	Assigns one LOB locator to another.
FILE SET	Sets the directory object name and filename of a BFILE in a locator.



## Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Buffering

**Table 13–26** Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Buffering

Statement	Description
DISABLE BUFFERING	Disables the use of the buffering subsystem.
ENABLE BUFFERING	Uses the LOB buffering subsystem for subsequent reads and writes of LOB data.
FLUSH BUFFER	Flushes changes made to the LOB buffering subsystem to the database (server)

## Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements to Open and Close LOBs

**Table 13–27** Pro\*C/C++ Embedded SQL Statements to Open and Close Persistent LOBs and External LOBs (BFILES)

Statement	Description
OPEN	Opens a LOB or BFILE.
DESCRIBE [ISOPEN]	Sees if a LOB or BFILE is open.
CLOSE	Closes a LOB or BFILE.

## Using COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) to Work With LOBs

You can make changes to an entire persistent LOB, or to pieces of the beginning, middle or end of it by using embedded SQL. You can access both internal and external LOBs for read purposes, and you can also *write* to persistent LOBs.

Embedded SQL statements allow you to access data stored in BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILES. These statements are listed in the following tables, and are discussed in greater detail later in the manual.

### First Provide an Allocated Input Locator Pointer That Represents LOB

Unlike locators in PL/SQL, locators in Pro\*COBOL are mapped to locator pointers which are then used to refer to the LOB or BFILE value. For the successful completion of an embedded SQL LOB statement you must perform the following:

1. Provide an *allocated* input locator pointer that represents a LOB that exists in the database tablespaces or external file system *before* you run the statement.
2. SELECT a LOB locator into a LOB locator pointer variable
3. Use this variable in an embedded SQL LOB statement to access and manipulate the LOB value.

**See Also:** APIs for supported LOB operations are described in detail in:

- [Chapter 19, "Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#)
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#)

Where the Pro\*COBOL interface does not supply the required functionality, you can call OCI using C. Such an example is not provided here because such programs are operating system dependent.

**See Also:** *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for detailed documentation, including syntax, host variables, host variable types, and example code.

## Pro\*COBOL Statements That Operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs

The following Pro\*COBOL statements operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs:

- To modify persistent LOBs, see [Table 13–28](#)
- To read or examine internal and external LOB values, see [Table 13–29](#)
- To create or free temporary LOB, or check LOB locator, see [Table 13–30](#)
- To operate close and 'see if file exists' functions on BFILEs, see [Table 13–31](#)
- To operate on LOB locators, see [Table 13–32](#)
- For LOB buffering, see [Table 13–33](#)
- To open or close persistent LOBs or BFILEs, see [Table 13–34](#)

## Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements to Modify Persistent LOB Values

**Table 13–28** *Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements to Modify LOB Values*

Statement	Description
APPEND	Appends a LOB value to another LOB.
COPY	Copies all or part of a LOB into another LOB.
ERASE	Erases part of a LOB, starting at a specified offset.
LOAD FROM FILE	Loads BFILE data into a persistent LOB at a specified offset.
TRIM	Truncates a LOB.
WRITE	Writes data from a buffer into a LOB at a specified offset
WRITE APPEND	Writes data from a buffer into a LOB at the end of the LOB.

## Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Introspection of LOBs

**Table 13–29** *Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Introspection of LOBs*

Statement	Description
DESCRIBE [CHUNKSIZE]	Gets the Chunk size used when writing.
DESCRIBE [LENGTH]	Returns the length of a LOB or a BFILE.
READ	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL LOB or a BFILE into a buffer.

## Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Temporary LOBs

**Table 13–30** *Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Temporary LOBs*

Statement	Description
CREATE TEMPORARY	Creates a temporary LOB.
DESCRIBE [ISTEMPORARY]	Sees if a LOB locator refers to a temporary LOB.
FREE TEMPORARY	Frees a temporary LOB.

## Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for BFILES

**Table 13–31** *Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for BFILES*

Statement	Description
FILE CLOSE ALL	Closes all open BFILES.
DESCRIBE [FILEEXISTS]	Checks whether a BFILE exists.
DESCRIBE [DIRECTORY, FILENAME]	Returns the directory object name and filename of a BFILE.

## Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Locators

**Table 13–32** *Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Locator Statements*

Statement	Description
ASSIGN	Assigns one LOB locator to another.
FILE SET	Sets the directory object name and filename of a BFILE in a locator.

## Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Buffering

**Table 13–33** *Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for LOB Buffering*

Statement	Description
DISABLE BUFFERING	Disables the use of the buffering subsystem.
ENABLE BUFFERING	Uses the LOB buffering subsystem for subsequent reads and writes of LOB data.
FLUSH BUFFER	Flushes changes made to the LOB buffering subsystem to the database (server)

## Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Opening and Closing LOBs and BFILES

**Table 13–34** *Pro\*COBOL Embedded SQL Statements for Opening and Closing Persistent LOBs and BFILES*

Statement	Description
OPEN	Opens a LOB or BFILE.
DESCRIBE [ISOPEN]	Sees if a LOB or BFILE is open.
CLOSE	Closes a LOB or BFILE.

## Using COM (Oracle Objects for OLE) to Work With LOBs

Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O) is a set of programmable COM objects that simplifies the development of applications designed to communicate with an Oracle Database. OO4O offers high performance database access. It also provides easy access to features unique to Oracle, yet otherwise cumbersome or inefficient to use from other ODBC or OLE DB-based components, such as ADO.

You can make changes to an entire persistent LOB, or to pieces of the beginning, middle or end of it, with the Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O) API, by using one of the following objects interfaces:

- **OraBlob** : To provide methods for performing operations on BLOB data types in the database
- **OraClob** : To provide methods for performing operations on CLOB data types in the database
- **OraBFile** : To provide methods for performing operations on BFILE data stored in operating system files.

---

---

**Note:** *OraBlob* and *OraClob* have been deprecated and no longer work

---

---

### OO4O Syntax Reference

The OO4O syntax reference and further information is viewed from the OO4O online help. Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O), is a Windows-based product included with the database.

**See Also:** *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*

### OraBlob, OraClob, and OraBfile Object Interfaces Encapsulate Locators

These interfaces encapsulate LOB locators, so you do not deal directly with locators, but instead, can use methods and properties provided to perform operations and get state information.

#### OraBlob and OraClob Objects Are Retrieved as Part of Dynaset

When *OraBlob* and *OraClob* objects are retrieved as a part of a dynaset, these objects represent LOB locators of the dynaset current row. If the dynaset current row changes due to a move operation, then the *OraBlob* and *OraClob* objects represent the LOB locator for the *new* current row.

#### Use the Clone Method to Retain Locator Independent of the Dynaset Move

To retain the LOB locator of the *OraBlob* and *OraClob* object independent of the dynaset move operation, use the *Clone* method. This method returns the *OraBlob* and *OraClob* object. You can also use these objects as PL/SQL bind parameters.

### Example of OraBlob and OraBfile

The following example shows usage of *OraBlob* and *OraBfile*.

```
Dim OraDyn as OraDynaset, OraSound1 as OraBLOB, OraSoundClone as OraBlob,  
OraMyBfile as OraBFile
```

```
OraConnection.BeginTrans
```

```

set OraDyn = OraDb.CreateDynaset("select * from print_media order by product_id",
ORADYN_DEFAULT)
set OraSound1 = OraDyn.Fields("Sound").value
set OraSoundClone = OraSound1

OraParameters.Add "id", 1,ORAPARAM_INPUT
OraParameters.Add "mybfile", Empty,ORAPARAM_OUTPUT
OraParameters("mybfile").ServerType = ORATYPE_BFILE

OraDatabase.ExecutesQL ("begin  GetBFile(:id, :mybfile ") end")

Set OraMyBFile = OraParameters("mybfile").value
'Go to Next row
OraDyn.MoveNext

OraDyn.Edit
'Lets update OraSound1 data with that from the BFILE
OraSound1.CopyFromBFile OraMyBFile
OraDyn.Update

OraDyn.MoveNext
'Go to Next row
OraDyn.Edit
'Lets update OraSound1 by appending with LOB data from 1st row represented by
'OraSoundClone
OraSound1.Append OraSoundClone
OraDyn.Update

OraConnection.CommitTrans

```

In the preceding example:

- OraSound1 represents the locator for the current row in the dynaset
- OraSoundClone represents the locator for the 1st row.

A change in the current row (say a OraDyn.MoveNext) means the following:

- OraSound1 represents the locator for the 2nd row.
- OraSoundClone represents the locator in the 1st row. OraSoundClone only refers the locator for the 1st row irrespective of any OraDyn row navigation).
- OraMyBFile refers to the locator obtained from an PL/SQL "OUT" parameter as a result of executing a PL/SQL procedure, either by doing an OraDatabase.ExecutesQL.

---



---

**Note:** A LOB obtained by executing SQL is only valid for the duration of the transaction. For this reason, "BEGINTRANS" and "COMMITTRANS" are used to specify the duration of the transaction.

---



---

## OO4O Methods and Properties to Access Data Stored in LOBs

Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O) includes methods and properties that you can use to access data stored in BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILES.

**See Also:** APIs for supported LOB operations are described in detail in:

- [Chapter 19, "Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#)
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#)

**See Also:** The OO4O online help for detailed information including parameters, parameter types, return values, and example code. Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O), a Windows-based product included with the database, has no manuals, only online help. The OO4O online help is available through the Application Development submenu of the database installation.

The following OO4O methods and properties operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILES:

- To modify persistent LOBs, see [Table 13–35](#)
- To read or examine internal and external LOB values, see [Table 13–36](#)
- To open and close BFILES, see [Table 13–37](#)
- For LOB buffering, see [Table 13–38](#)
- Properties such as to see if LOB is NULL, or to get or set polling amount, see [Table 13–39](#)
- For read-only BFILE methods, see [Table 13–40](#)
- For BFILE properties, see [Table 13–41](#)

## OO4O Methods to Modify BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB Values

**Table 13–35** OO4O Methods to Modify BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB Values

Methods	Description
<code>OraBlob.Append</code>	Appends BLOB value to another LOB.
<code>OraClob.Append</code>	Appends CLOB or NCLOB value to another LOB.
<code>OraBlob.Copy</code>	Copies a portion of a BLOB into another LOB
<code>OraClob.Copy</code>	Copies a portion of a CLOB or NCLOB into another LOB
<code>OraBlob.Erase</code>	Erases part of a BLOB, starting at a specified offset
<code>OraClob.Erase</code>	Erases part of a CLOB or NCLOB, starting at a specified offset
<code>OraBlob.CopyFromFile</code>	Loads BFILE data into an internal BLOB
<code>OraClob.CopyFromFile</code>	Loads BFILE data into an internal CLOB or NCLOB
<code>OraBlob.Trim</code>	Truncates a BLOB
<code>OraClob.Trim</code>	Truncates a CLOB or NCLOB
<code>OraBlob.CopyFromFile</code>	Writes data from a file to a BLOB
<code>OraClob.CopyFromFile</code>	Writes data from a file to a CLOB or NCLOB
<code>OraBlob.Write</code>	Writes data to the BLOB
<code>OraClob.Write</code>	Writes data to the CLOB or NCLOB

## OO4O Methods to Read or Examine Internal and External LOB Values

**Table 13–36** OO4O Methods to Read or Examine Internal and External LOB Values

Function/Procedure	Description
<code>OraBlob.Read</code>	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL BLOB into a buffer
<code>OraClob.Read</code>	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL CLOB into a buffer
<code>OraBFile.Read</code>	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL BFILE into a buffer
<code>OraBlob.CopyToFile</code>	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL BLOB to a file
<code>OraClob.CopyToFile</code>	Reads a specified portion of a non-NULL CLOB to a file

## OO4O Methods to Open and Close External LOBs (BFILES)

**Table 13–37** OO4O Methods to Open and Close External LOBs (BFILES)

Method	Description
<code>OraBFile.Open</code>	Opens BFILE.
<code>OraBFile.Close</code>	Closes BFILE.

## OO4O Methods for Persistent LOB Buffering

**Table 13–38** OO4O Methods for Persistent LOB Buffering

Method	Description
<code>OraBlob.FlushBuffer</code>	Flushes changes made to the BLOB buffering subsystem to the database
<code>OraClob.FlushBuffer</code>	Flushes changes made to the CLOB buffering subsystem to the database
<code>OraBlob.EnableBuffering</code>	Enables buffering of BLOB operations
<code>OraClob.EnableBuffering</code>	Enables buffering of CLOB operations
<code>OraBlob.DisableBuffering</code>	Disables buffering of BLOB operations
<code>OraClob.DisableBuffering</code>	Disables buffering of CLOB operations

## OO4O Properties for Operating on LOBs

**Table 13–39** OO4O Properties for Operating on LOBs

Property	Description
<code>IsNull (Read)</code>	Indicates when a LOB is NULL
<code>PollingAmount (Read/Write)</code>	Gets/Sets total amount for Read/Write polling operation
<code>Offset (Read/Write)</code>	Gets/Sets offset for Read/Write operation. By default, it is set to 1.
<code>Status (Read)</code>	Returns the polling status. Possible values are <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <code>ORALOB_NEED_DATA</code> There is more data to be read or written</li> <li>▪ <code>ORALOB_NO_DATA</code> There is no more data to be read or written</li> <li>▪ <code>ORALOB_SUCCESS_LOB</code> data read/written successfully</li> </ul>
<code>Size (Read)</code>	Returns the length of the LOB data

## OO4O Read-Only Methods for External LOBs (BFILEs)

**Table 13–40** OO4O Read-Only Methods for External LOBs (BFILEs)

Methods	Description
<code>OraBFile.Close</code>	Closes an open BFILE
<code>OraBFile.CloseAll</code>	Closes all open BFILEs
<code>OraBFile.Open</code>	Opens a BFILE
<code>OraBFile.IsOpen</code>	Determines if a BFILE is open

## OO4O Properties for Operating on External LOBs (BFILEs)

**Table 13–41** OO4O Properties for Operating on External LOBs (BFILEs)

Property	Description
<code>OraBFile.DirectoryName</code>	Gets/Sets the server side directory object name.
<code>OraBFile.FileName (Read/Write)</code>	Gets/Sets the server side filename.
<code>OraBFile.Exists</code>	Checks whether a BFILE exists.

## Using Java (JDBC) to Work With LOBs

You can perform the following tasks on LOBs with Java (JDBC):

- [Modifying Internal Persistent LOBs Using Java](#)
- [Reading Internal Persistent LOBs and External LOBs \(BFILEs\) With Java](#)
- [Calling DBMS\\_LOB Package from Java \(JDBC\)](#)
- [Referencing LOBs Using Java \(JDBC\)](#)
- Create and Manipulate Temporary LOBs and Store Them in Tables as Permanent LOBs. See [JDBC Temporary LOB APIs](#)

## Modifying Internal Persistent LOBs Using Java

You can make changes to an entire persistent LOB, or to pieces of the beginning, middle, or end of a persistent LOB in Java by means of the JDBC API using the classes:

- `oracle.sql.BLOB`
- `oracle.sql.CLOB`

These classes implement `java.sql.Blob` and `java.sql.Clob` interfaces according to the JDBC 3.0 specification, which has methods for LOB modification. They also include legacy Oracle proprietary methods for LOB modification. These legacy methods are marked as deprecated.

Starting in Oracle Database Release 11.1, the minimum supported version of the JDK is JDK5. To use JDK5, place `ojdbc5.jar` in your `CLASSPATH`. To use JDK6, place `ojdbc6.jar` in your `CLASSPATH`. `ojdbc5.jar` supports the JDBC 3.0 specification and `ojdbc6.jar` supports the JDBC4.0 specification which is new with JDK6.

Oracle recommends that you discontinue use of the deprecated proprietary APIs described in Table 7-42.



**Table 13–42 BLOB Method Equivalents**

Oracle Proprietary Method (Deprecated)	JDBC 3.0 Standard Method Replacement
putBytes(long pos, byte [] bytes)	setBytes(long pos, byte[] bytes)
putBytes(long pos, byte [] bytes, int length)	setBytes(long pos, byte[] bytes, int offset, int len)
getBinaryOutputStream(long pos)	setBinaryStream(long pos)
trim (long len)	truncate(long len)

**Table 13–43 CLOB Method Equivalents**

Oracle Proprietary Method (Deprecated)	JDBC 3.0 Standard Method Replacement
putString(long pos, String str)	setString(long pos, String str)
N/A	setString(long pos, String str, int offset, int len)
getAsciiOutputStream(long pos)	setAsciiStream(long pos)
getCharacterOutputStream(long pos)	setCharacterStream(long pos)
trim (long len)	truncate(long len)

## Reading Internal Persistent LOBs and External LOBs (BFILES) With Java

With JDBC you can use Java to read both internal persistent LOBs and external LOBs (BFILES).

### BLOB, CLOB, and BFILE Classes

- **BLOB and CLOB Classes.** In JDBC these classes provide methods for performing operations on large objects in the database including BLOB and CLOB data types.
- **BFILE Class.** In JDBC this class provides methods for performing operations on BFILE data in the database.

The BLOB, CLOB, and BFILE classes encapsulate LOB locators, so you do not deal with locators but instead use methods and properties provided to perform operations and get state information.

## Calling DBMS\_LOB Package from Java (JDBC)

Any LOB functionality not provided by these classes can be accessed by a call to the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package. This technique is used repeatedly in the examples throughout this manual.

## LOB Prefetching to Improve Performance

The number of server round trips can be reduced by prefetching part of the data and metadata (length and chunk size) along with the LOB locator during the fetch. The SELECT parse, execution, and fetch occurs in one round trip. For large LOBs (larger than five times the prefetch size) less improvement is seen.

To configure the prefetch size, a connection property, `oracle.jdbc.defaultLobPrefetchSize`, defined as a constant in `oracle.jdbc.OracleConnection` can be used. Values can be -1 to disable prefetching, 0 to enable prefetching for metadata only, or any value greater than 0 which represents the number of bytes for BLOBs and characters for CLOBs, to be prefetched along with the locator during fetch operations.

You can change the prefetch size for a particular statement by using a method defined in `oracle.jdbc.OracleStatement`:

```
void setLobPrefetchSize(int size) throws SQLException;
```

The statement level setting overrides the setting at the connection level. This setting can also be overridden at the column level through the extended `defineColumnType` method, where the size represents the number of bytes (or characters for CLOB) to prefetch. The possible values are the same as for the connection property. The type must be set to `OracleTypes.CLOB` for a CLOB column and `OracleTypes.BLOB` for a BLOB column. This method throws `SQLException` if the value is less than -1. To complement the statement there is in `oracle.jdbc.OracleStatement`:

```
int getLobPrefetchSize();
```

## Zero-Copy Input/Output for SecureFiles to Improve Performance

To improve the performance of SecureFiles, there is a Zero-copy Input/Output protocol on the server that is only available to network clients that support the new Net NS Data transfer protocol.

To determine if a LOB is a SecureFiles or not, use the method

```
public boolean isSecureFile() throws SQLException
```

If it is a SecureFiles, `TRUE` is returned.

Use this thin connection property to disable (by setting to `FALSE`) the Zero-copy Input/Output protocol:

```
oracle.net.useZeroCopyIO
```

### Zero-Copy Input/Output on the Server

Oracle Net Services is now able to use data buffers provided by the users of Oracle Net Services without transferring the data into or out of its local buffers. The network buffers (at the NS layer) are bypassed and internal lob buffers are directly written on the network. The same applies to buffer reads.

This feature is only available to network clients that support the new NS Data packet (this is negotiated during the NS handshake). The thin driver supports the new NS protocol so that the server can use the zero-copy protocol and JavaNet exposes the zero-copy IO mechanism to the upper layer so that data copies are no longer required in the thin driver code.

### Zero-Copy Input/Output in the JDBC Thin Driver

When you call the `BLOB.getBytes(long pos, int length, byte[] buffer)` API, the buffer provided is used at the JavaNet layer to read the bytes from the socket. The data is retrieved in one single round trip. Similarly, during a write operation, when you call `BLOB.setBytes(long pos, byte[] bytes)`, the buffer is directly written on the network at the JavaNet layer. So the data is written in one single round trip. The user buffer is sent as a whole.

### JDBC-OCI Driver Considerations

The JDBC-OCI driver supports Zero-copy Input/Output in the server and in the network layer.

## Referencing LOBs Using Java (JDBC)

You can get a reference to any of the preceding LOBs in the following two ways:

- As a column of an `OracleResultSet`
- As an OUT type PL/SQL parameter from an `OraclePreparedStatement`

### Using `OracleResultSet`: BLOB and CLOB Objects Retrieved

When BLOB and CLOB objects are retrieved as a part of an `OracleResultSet`, these objects represent LOB locators of the currently selected row.

If the current row changes due to a move operation, for example, `rset.next()`, then the retrieved locator still refers to the original LOB row.

To retrieve the locator for the most current row, you must call `getBLOB()`, `getCLOB()`, or `getBFILE()` on the `OracleResultSet` each time a move operation is made depending on whether the instance is a BLOB, CLOB or BFILE.

## JDBC Syntax References and Further Information

For further JDBC syntax and information about using JDBC with LOBs:

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, for detailed documentation, including parameters, parameter types, return values, and example code.
- <http://www.oracle.com/technology/>

## JDBC Methods for Operating on LOBs

The following JDBC methods operate on BLOBs, CLOBs, and BFILES:

- BLOBs:
  - To modify BLOB values, see [Table 13-44](#)
  - To read or examine BLOB values, see [Table 13-45](#)
  - For BLOB buffering, see [Table 13-46](#)
  - Temporary BLOBs: Creating, checking if BLOB is open, and freeing. See [Table 13-54](#)
  - Opening, closing, and checking if BLOB is open, see [Table 13-54](#)
  - Truncating BLOBs, see [Table 13-57](#)
  - BLOB streaming API, see [Table 13-59](#)
- CLOBs:
  - To read or examine CLOB values, see [Table 13-48](#)
  - For CLOB buffering, see [Table 13-49](#)
  - To modify CLOBs, see [Table 13-59](#)
- Temporary CLOBs:
  - Opening, closing, and checking if CLOB is open, see [Table 13-55](#)
  - Truncating CLOBs, see [Table 13-58](#)
  - CLOB streaming API, see [Table 13-60](#)

- BFILES:
  - To read or examine BFILES, see [Table 13–50](#)
  - For BFILE buffering, see [Table 13–51](#)
  - Opening, closing, and checking if BFILE is open, see [Table 13–56](#)
  - BFILE streaming API, see [Table 13–61](#)

## JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods to Modify BLOB Values

**Table 13–44** *JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods To Modify BLOB Values*

Method	Description
<code>int setBytes(long, byte[])</code>	Inserts the byte array into the BLOB, starting at the given offset

## JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods to Read or Examine BLOB Values

**Table 13–45** *JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods to Read or Examine BLOB Values*

Method	Description
<code>byte[] getBytes(long, int)</code>	Gets the contents of the LOB as an array of bytes, given an offset
<code>long position(byte[], long)</code>	Finds the given byte array within the LOB, given an offset
<code>long position(Blob, long)</code>	Finds the given BLOB within the LOB
<code>public boolean equals(java.lang.Object)</code>	Compares this LOB with another. Compares the LOB locators.
<code>public long length()</code>	Returns the length of the LOB
<code>public int getChunkSize()</code>	Returns the <code>ChunkSize</code> of the LOB

## JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods and Properties for BLOB Buffering

**Table 13–46** *JDBC oracle.sql.BLOB Methods and Properties for BLOB Buffering*

Method	Description
<code>public java.io.InputStream getBinaryStream()</code>	Streams the LOB as a binary stream
<code>public java.io.OutputStream setBinaryStream()</code>	Retrieves a stream that can be used to write to the BLOB value that this <code>Blob</code> object represents

## JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods to Modify CLOB Values

**Table 13–47** *JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods to Modify CLOB Values*

Method	Description
<code>int setString(long, java.lang.String)</code>	JDBC 3.0: Writes the given Java String to the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object designates at the position <code>pos</code> .
<code>int putChars(long, char[])</code>	Inserts the character array into the LOB, starting at the given offset

## JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods to Read or Examine CLOB Value

**Table 13–48** *JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods to Read or Examine CLOB Values*

Method	Description
<code>java.lang.String getSubString(long, int)</code>	Returns a substring of the LOB as a string
<code>int getChars(long, int, char[])</code>	Reads a subset of the LOB into a character array
<code>long position(java.lang.String, long)</code>	Finds the given String within the LOB, given an offset
<code>long position(oracle.jdbc2.Clob, long)</code>	Finds the given CLOB within the LOB, given an offset
<code>long length()</code>	Returns the length of the LOB
<code>int getChunkSize()</code>	Returns the ChunkSize of the LOB

## JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods and Properties for CLOB Buffering

**Table 13–49** *JDBC oracle.sql.CLOB Methods and Properties for CLOB Buffering*

Method	Description
<code>java.io.InputStream getAsciiStream()</code>	Implements the <code>Clob</code> interface method. Gets the CLOB value designated by this <code>Clob</code> object as a stream of ASCII bytes
<code>java.io.OutputStream setAsciiStream(long pos)</code>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream to be used to write ASCII characters to the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting at position <code>pos</code>
<code>java.io.Reader getCharacterStream()</code>	Reads the CLOB as a character stream
<code>java.io.Writer setCharacterStream(long pos)</code>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream to be used to write Unicode characters to the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting at position <code>pos</code>

## JDBC oracle.sql.BFILE Methods to Read or Examine External LOB (BFILE) Values

**Table 13–50** *JDBC oracle.sql.BFILE Methods to Read or Examine External LOB (BFILE) Values*

Method	Description
<code>byte[] getBytes(long, int)</code>	Gets the contents of the BFILE as an array of bytes, given an offset
<code>int getBytes(long, int, byte[])</code>	Reads a subset of the BFILE into a byte array
<code>long position(oracle.sql.BFILE, long)</code>	Finds the first appearance of the given BFILE contents within the LOB, from the given offset
<code>long position(byte[], long)</code>	Finds the first appearance of the given byte array within the BFILE, from the given offset
<code>long length()</code>	Returns the length of the BFILE
<code>boolean fileExists()</code>	Checks if the operating system file referenced by this BFILE exists
<code>public void openFile()</code>	Opens the operating system file referenced by this BFILE
<code>public void closeFile()</code>	Closes the operating system file referenced by this BFILE

**Table 13–50 (Cont.) JDBC oracle.sql.BFILE Methods to Read or Examine External LOB (BFILE) Values**

Method	Description
<code>public boolean isFileOpen()</code>	Checks if this BFILE is open
<code>public java.lang.String getDirAlias()</code>	Gets the directory object name for this BFILE
<code>public java.lang.String getName()</code>	Gets the file name referenced by this BFILE

## JDBC oracle.sql.BFILE Methods and Properties for BFILE Buffering

**Table 13–51 JDBC oracle.sql.BFILE Methods and Properties for BFILE Buffering**

Method	Description
<code>public java.io.InputStream getBinaryStream()</code>	Reads the BFILE as a binary stream

## JDBC Temporary LOB APIs

Oracle Database JDBC drivers contain APIs to create and close temporary LOBs. These APIs can replace workarounds that use the following procedures from the DBMS\_LOB PL/SQL package in prior releases:

- `DBMS_LOB.createTemporary()`
- `DBMS_LOB.isTemporary()`
- `DBMS_LOB.freeTemporary()`

**Table 13–52 JDBC: Temporary BLOB APIs**

Methods	Description
<code>public static BLOB createTemporary(Connection conn, boolean cache, int duration) throws SQLException</code>	Creates a temporary BLOB
<code>public static boolean isTemporary(BLOB blob) throws SQLException</code>	Checks if the specified BLOB locator refers to a temporary BLOB
<code>public boolean isTemporary() throws SQLException</code>	Checks if the current BLOB locator refers to a temporary BLOB
<code>public static void freeTemporary(BLOB temp_blob) throws SQLException</code>	Frees the specified temporary BLOB
<code>public void freeTemporary() throws SQLException</code>	Frees the temporary BLOB

**Table 13–53 JDBC: Temporary CLOB APIs**

Methods	Description
<code>public static CLOB createTemporary(Connection conn, boolean cache, int duration) throws SQLException</code>	Creates a temporary CLOB
<code>public static boolean isTemporary(CLOB clob) throws SQLException</code>	Checks if the specified CLOB locator refers to a temporary CLOB

**Table 13–53 (Cont.) JDBC: Temporary CLOB APIs**

Methods	Description
<code>public boolean isTemporary() throws SQLException</code>	Checks if the current CLOB locator refers to a temporary CLOB
<code>public static void freeTemporary(CLOB temp_clob) throws SQLException</code>	Frees the specified temporary CLOB
<code>public void freeTemporary() throws SQLException</code>	Frees the temporary CLOB

## JDBC: Opening and Closing LOBs

`oracle.sql.CLOB` class is the Oracle JDBC driver implementation of standard JDBC `java.sql.Clob` interface. [Table 13–53](#) lists the Oracle extension APIs in `oracle.sql.CLOB` for accessing temporary CLOBs.

Oracle Database JDBC drivers contain APIs to explicitly open and close LOBs. These APIs replace previous techniques that use `DBMS_LOB.open()` and `DBMS_LOB.close()`.

## JDBC: Opening and Closing BLOBs

`oracle.sql.BLOB` class is the Oracle JDBC driver implementation of standard JDBC `java.sql.Blob` interface. [Table 13–54](#) lists the Oracle extension APIs in `oracle.sql.BLOB` that open and close BLOBs.

**Table 13–54 JDBC: Opening and Closing BLOBs**

Methods	Description
<code>public void open(int mode) throws SQLException</code>	Opens the BLOB
<code>public boolean isOpen() throws SQLException</code>	Sees if the BLOB is open
<code>public void close() throws SQLException</code>	Closes the BLOB

### Opening the BLOB Using JDBC

To open a BLOB, your JDBC application can use the `open` method as defined in `oracle.sql.BLOB` class as follows:

```
/**
 * Open a BLOB in the indicated mode. Valid modes include MODE_READONLY,
 * and MODE_READWRITE. It is an error to open the same LOB twice.
 */
public void open (int mode) throws SQLException
```

Possible values of the mode parameter are:

```
public static final int MODE_READONLY
public static final int MODE_READWRITE
```

Each call to `open` opens the BLOB. For example:

```
BLOB blob = ...
blob.open (BLOB.MODE_READWRITE);
```

### Checking If the BLOB Is Open Using JDBC

To see if a BLOB is opened, your JDBC application can use the `isOpen` method defined in `oracle.sql.BLOB`. The return Boolean value indicates whether the BLOB has been previously opened or not. The `isOpen` method is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Check whether the BLOB is opened.
 * @return true if the LOB is opened.
 */
public boolean isOpen () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is:

```
BLOB blob = ...
// See if the BLOB is opened
boolean isOpen = blob.isOpen ();
```

### Closing the BLOB Using JDBC

To close a BLOB, your JDBC application can use the `close` method defined in `oracle.sql.BLOB`. The `close` API is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Close a previously opened BLOB.
 */
public void close () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is:

```
BLOB blob = ...
// close the BLOB
blob.close ();
```

## JDBC: Opening and Closing CLOBs

Class `oracle.sql.CLOB` is the Oracle JDBC driver implementation of the standard JDBC `java.sql.Clob` interface. [Table 13–55](#) lists the Oracle extension APIs in `oracle.sql.CLOB` to open and close CLOBs.

**Table 13–55** *JDBC: Opening and Closing CLOBs*

Methods	Description
<code>public void open(int mode) throws SQLException</code>	Open the CLOB
<code>public boolean isOpen() throws SQLException</code>	See if the CLOB is opened
<code>public void close() throws SQLException</code>	Close the CLOB

### Opening the CLOB Using JDBC

To open a CLOB, your JDBC application can use the `open` method defined in `oracle.sql.CLOB` class as follows:

```
/**
 * Open a CLOB in the indicated mode. Valid modes include MODE_READONLY,
 * and MODE_READWRITE. It is an error to open the same LOB twice.
 */
public void open (int mode) throws SQLException
```

The possible values of the mode parameter are:

```
public static final int MODE_READONLY
```



```
public static final int MODE_READWRITE
```

Each call to open opens the CLOB. For example,

```
CLOB clob = ...
clob.open (CLOB.MODE_READWRITE);
```

### Checking If the CLOB Is Open Using JDBC

To see if a CLOB is opened, your JDBC application can use the `isOpen` method defined in `oracle.sql.CLOB`. The return Boolean value indicates whether the CLOB has been previously opened or not. The `isOpen` method is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Check whether the CLOB is opened.
 * @return true if the LOB is opened.
 */
public boolean isOpen () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is:

```
CLOB clob = ...
// See if the CLOB is opened
boolean isOpen = clob.isOpen ();
```

### Closing the CLOB Using JDBC

To close a CLOB, the JDBC application can use the `close` method defined in `oracle.sql.CLOB`. The `close` API is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Close a previously opened CLOB.
 */
public void close () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is:

```
CLOB clob = ...
// close the CLOB
clob.close ();
```

## JDBC: Opening and Closing BFILES

`oracle.sql.BFILE` class wraps the database BFILE object. [Table 13–56](#) lists the Oracle extension APIs in `oracle.sql.BFILE` for opening and closing BFILES.

**Table 13–56** JDBC API Extensions for Opening and Closing BFILES

Methods	Description
<code>public void open() throws SQLException</code>	Opens the BFILE
<code>public void open(int mode) throws SQLException</code>	Opens the BFILE
<code>public boolean isOpen() throws SQLException</code>	Checks if the BFILE is open
<code>public void close() throws SQLException</code>	Closes the BFILE

### Opening BFILES

To open a BFILE, your JDBC application can use the `OPEN` method defined in `oracle.sql.BFILE` class as follows:

```
/**
```

```
* Open a external LOB in the read-only mode. It is an error
* to open the same LOB twice.
*/
public void open () throws SQLException

/**
 * Open a external LOB in the indicated mode. Valid modes include
 * MODE_READONLY only. It is an error to open the same
 * LOB twice.
 */
public void open (int mode) throws SQLException
```

The only possible value of the mode parameter is:

```
public static final int MODE_READONLY
```

Each call to open opens the BFILE. For example,

```
BFILE bfile = ...
bfile.open ();
```

### Checking If the BFILE Is Open

To see if a BFILE is opened, your JDBC application can use the `isOpen` method defined in `oracle.sql.BFILE`. The return Boolean value indicates whether the BFILE has been previously opened or not. The `isOpen` method is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Check whether the BFILE is opened.
 * @return true if the LOB is opened.
 */
public boolean isOpen () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is:

```
BFILE bfile = ...
// See if the BFILE is opened
boolean isOpen = bfile.isOpen ();
```

### Closing the BFILE

To close a BFILE, your JDBC application can use the `close` method defined in `oracle.sql.BFILE`. The `close` API is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Close a previously opened BFILE.
 */
public void close () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is --

```
BFILE bfile = ...
// close the BFILE
bfile.close ();
```

### Usage Example (OpenCloseLob.java)

```
/*
 * This sample shows how to open/close BLOB and CLOB.
 */

// You must import the java.sql package to use JDBC
```

```

import java.sql.*;

// You must import the oracle.sql package to use oracle.sql.BLOB
import oracle.sql.*;

class OpenCloseLob
{
    public static void main (String args [])
        throws SQLException
    {
        // Load the Oracle JDBC driver
        DriverManager.registerDriver(new oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver());

        String url = "jdbc:oracle:oci8:@";
        try {
            String url1 = System.getProperty("JDBC_URL");
            if (url1 != null)
                url = url1;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            // If there is any security exception, ignore it
            // and use the default
        }

        // Connect to the database
        Connection conn =
            DriverManager.getConnection (url, "scott", "password");
        // It is faster when auto commit is off
        conn.setAutoCommit (false);

        // Create a Statement
        Statement stmt = conn.createStatement ();

        try
        {
            stmt.execute ("drop table basic_lob_table");
        }
        catch (SQLException e)
        {
            // An exception could be raised here if the table did not exist.
        }

        // Create a table containing a BLOB and a CLOB
        stmt.execute ("create table basic_lob_table (x varchar2 (30), b blob, c clob)");

        // Populate the table
        stmt.execute (
            "insert into basic_lob_table values"
            + " ('one', '010101010101010101010101010101', 'onetwothreefour)");

        // Select the lobes
        ResultSet rset = stmt.executeQuery ("select * from basic_lob_table");
        while (rset.next ())
        {
            // Get the lobes
            BLOB blob = (BLOB) rset.getObject (2);
            CLOB clob = (CLOB) rset.getObject (3);

            // Open the lobes
            System.out.println ("Open the lobes");
            blob.open (BLOB.MODE_READWRITE);
        }
    }
}

```

```

        clob.open (CLOB.MODE_READWRITE);

        // Check if the lob is opened
        System.out.println ("blob.isOpen()="+blob.isOpen());
        System.out.println ("clob.isOpen()="+clob.isOpen());

        // Close the lob
        System.out.println ("Close the lob");
        blob.close ();
        clob.close ();

        // Check if the lob is opened
        System.out.println ("blob.isOpen()="+blob.isOpen());
        System.out.println ("clob.isOpen()="+clob.isOpen());
    }

    // Close the ResultSet
    rset.close ();

    // Close the Statement
    stmt.close ();

    // Close the connection
    conn.close ();
}
}

```

## Truncating LOBs Using JDBC

Oracle Database JDBC drivers contain APIs to truncate persistent LOBs. These APIs replace previous techniques that used `DBMS_LOB.trim()`.

### JDBC: Truncating BLOBs

`oracle.sql.BLOB` class is Oracle JDBC driver implementation of the standard JDBC `java.sql.Blob` interface. [Table 13–57](#) lists the Oracle extension API in `oracle.sql.BLOB` that truncates BLOBs.

**Table 13–57** *JDBC: Truncating BLOBs*

Methods	Description
<code>public void truncate(long newlen) throws SQLException</code>	Truncates the BLOB

The `truncate` API is defined as follows:

```

/**
 *Truncate the value of the BLOB to the length you specify in the newlen parameter.
 * @param newlen the new length of the BLOB.
 */
public void truncate (long newlen) throws SQLException

```

The `newlen` parameter specifies the new length of the BLOB.

### JDBC: Truncating CLOBs

`oracle.sql.CLOB` class is the Oracle JDBC driver implementation of standard JDBC `java.sql.Clob` interface. [Table 13–58](#) lists the Oracle extension API in `oracle.sql.CLOB` that truncates CLOBs.

**Table 13–58 JDBC: Truncating CLOBs**

Methods	Description
<code>public void truncate(long newlen) throws SQLException</code>	Truncates the CLOB

The truncate API is defined as follows:

```
/**
 *Truncate the value of the CLOB to the length you specify in the newlen parameter.
 * @param newlen the new length of the CLOB.
 */
public void truncate (long newlen) throws SQLException
```

The `newlen` parameter specifies the new length of the CLOB.

**See:** ["Trimming LOB Data"](#) on page 22-35, for an example.

## JDBC BLOB Streaming APIs

The JDBC interface provided with the database includes LOB streaming APIs that enable you to read from or write to a LOB at the requested position from a Java stream.

The `oracle.sql.BLOB` class implements the standard JDBC `java.sql.Blob` interface. [Table 13–59](#) lists BLOB Streaming APIs.

**Table 13–59 JDBC: BLOB Streaming APIs**

Methods	Description
<code>public java.io.OutputStream setBinaryStream (long pos) throws SQLException</code>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream that can be used to write to the BLOB value that this <code>Blob</code> object represents, starting at position <code>pos</code>
<code>public java.io.InputStream getBinaryStream() throws SQLException</code>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream that can be used to read the BLOB value that this <code>Blob</code> object represents, starting at the beginning
<code>public java.io.InputStream getBinaryStream(long pos) throws SQLException</code>	Oracle extension: Retrieves a stream that can be used to read the BLOB value that this <code>Blob</code> object represents, starting at position <code>pos</code>

These APIs are defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Write to the BLOB from a stream at the requested position.
 *
 * @param pos is the position data to be put.
 * @return a output stream to write data to the BLOB
 */
public java.io.OutputStream setBinaryStream(long pos) throws SQLException

/**
 * Read from the BLOB as a stream at the requested position.
 *
 * @param pos is the position data to be read.
 * @return a output stream to write data to the BLOB
 */
public java.io.InputStream getBinaryStream(long pos) throws SQLException
```

## JDBC CLOB Streaming APIs

The `oracle.sql.CLOB` class is the Oracle JDBC driver implementation of standard JDBC `java.sql.Clob` interface. [Table 13–60](#) lists the CLOB streaming APIs.

**Table 13–60** *JDBC: CLOB Streaming APIs*

Methods	Description
<pre>public java.io.OutputStream     setAsciiStream (long pos) throws SQLException</pre>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream to be used to write ASCII characters to the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting at position <code>pos</code>
<pre>public java.io.Writer     setCharacterStream (long pos) throws SQLException</pre>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream to be used to write Unicode characters to the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting, at position <code>pos</code>
<pre>public java.io.InputStream     getAsciiStream() throws SQLException</pre>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream that can be used to read ASCII characters from the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting at the beginning
<pre>public java.io.InputStream     getAsciiStream(long pos) throws SQLException</pre>	Oracle extension: Retrieves a stream that can be used to read ASCII characters from the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting at position <code>pos</code>
<pre>public java.io.Reader     getCharacterStream() throws SQLException</pre>	JDBC 3.0: Retrieves a stream that can be used to read Unicode characters from the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting at the beginning
<pre>public java.io.Reader     getCharacterStream(long pos) throws SQLException</pre>	Oracle extension: Retrieves a stream that can be used to read Unicode characters from the CLOB value that this <code>Clob</code> object represents, starting at position <code>pos</code>

These APIs are defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Write to the CLOB from a stream at the requested position.
 * @param pos is the position data to be put.
 * @return a output stream to write data to the CLOB
 */
public java.io.OutputStream setAsciiStream(long pos) throws SQLException

/**
 * Write to the CLOB from a stream at the requested position.
 * @param pos is the position data to be put.
 * @return a output stream to write data to the CLOB
 */
public java.io.Writer setCharacterStream(long pos) throws SQLException

/**
 * Read from the CLOB as a stream at the requested position.
 * @param pos is the position data to be put.
 * @return a output stream to write data to the CLOB
 */
public java.io.InputStream getAsciiStream(long pos) throws SQLException

/**
 * Read from the CLOB as a stream at the requested position.
 * @param pos is the position data to be put.
```

```

    * @return a output stream to write data to the CLOB
    */
    public java.io.Reader getCharacterStream(long pos) throws SQLException

```

## BFILE Streaming APIs

`oracle.sql.BFILE` class wraps the database BFILES. [Table 13–61](#) lists the Oracle extension APIs in `oracle.sql.BFILE` that reads BFILE content from the requested position.

**Table 13–61** *JDBC: BFILE Streaming APIs*

Methods	Description
<code>public java.io.InputStream getBinaryStream(long pos) throws SQLException</code>	Reads from the BFILE as a stream

These APIs are defined as follows:

```

/**
 * Read from the BLOB as a stream at the requested position.
 *
 * @param pos is the position data to be read.
 * @return a output stream to write data to the BLOB
 */
public java.io.InputStream getBinaryStream(long pos) throws SQLException

```

## JDBC BFILE Streaming Example (NewStreamLob.java)

```

/*
 * This sample shows how to read/write BLOB and CLOB as streams.
 */

import java.io.*;

// You must import the java.sql package to use JDBC
import java.sql.*;

// You must import the oracle.sql package to use oracle.sql.BLOB
import oracle.sql.*;

class NewStreamLob
{
    public static void main (String args []) throws Exception
    {
        // Load the Oracle JDBC driver
        DriverManager.registerDriver(new oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver());

        String url = "jdbc:oracle:oci8:@";
        try {
            String url1 = System.getProperty("JDBC_URL");
            if (url1 != null)
                url = url1;
        } catch (Exception e) {
            // If there is any security exception, ignore it
            // and use the default
        }

        // Connect to the database

```

```
Connection conn =
    DriverManager.getConnection (url, "scott", "password");
// It is faster when auto commit is off
conn.setAutoCommit (false);

// Create a Statement
Statement stmt = conn.createStatement ();

try
{
    stmt.execute ("drop table basic_lob_table");
}
catch (SQLException e)
{
    // An exception could be raised here if the table did not exist.
}

// Create a table containing a BLOB and a CLOB
stmt.execute (
    "create table basic_lob_table"
    + "(x varchar2 (30), b blob, c clob)");

// Populate the table
stmt.execute (
    "insert into basic_lob_table values"
    + "('one', '01010101010101010101010101010101', 'onetwothreefour')");

System.out.println ("Dumping lob");

// Select the lob
ResultSet rset = stmt.executeQuery ("select * from basic_lob_table");
while (rset.next ())
{
    // Get the lob
    BLOB blob = (BLOB) rset.getObject (2);
    CLOB clob = (CLOB) rset.getObject (3);

    // Print the lob contents
    dumpBlob (conn, blob, 1);
    dumpClob (conn, clob, 1);

    // Change the lob contents
    fillClob (conn, clob, 11, 50);
    fillBlob (conn, blob, 11, 50);
}
rset.close ();

System.out.println ("Dumping lob again");

rset = stmt.executeQuery ("select * from basic_lob_table");
while (rset.next ())
{
    // Get the lob
    BLOB blob = (BLOB) rset.getObject (2);
    CLOB clob = (CLOB) rset.getObject (3);

    // Print the lob contents
    dumpBlob (conn, blob, 11);
    dumpClob (conn, clob, 11);
}
```



```
// Close all resources
rset.close();
stmt.close();
conn.close();
}

// Utility function to dump Clob contents
static void dumpClob (Connection conn, CLOB clob, long offset)
    throws Exception
{
    // get character stream to retrieve clob data
    Reader instream = clob.getCharacterStream(offset);

    // create temporary buffer for read
    char[] buffer = new char[10];

    // length of characters read
    int length = 0;

    // fetch data
    while ((length = instream.read(buffer)) != -1)
    {
        System.out.print("Read " + length + " chars: ");

        for (int i=0; i<length; i++)
            System.out.print(buffer[i]);
        System.out.println();
    }

    // Close input stream
    instream.close();
}

// Utility function to dump Blob contents
static void dumpBlob (Connection conn, BLOB blob, long offset)
    throws Exception
{
    // Get binary output stream to retrieve blob data
    InputStream instream = blob.getBinaryStream(offset);
    // Create temporary buffer for read
    byte[] buffer = new byte[10];
    // length of bytes read
    int length = 0;
    // Fetch data
    while ((length = instream.read(buffer)) != -1)
    {
        System.out.print("Read " + length + " bytes: ");

        for (int i=0; i<length; i++)
            System.out.print(buffer[i]+" ");
        System.out.println();
    }

    // Close input stream
    instream.close();
}

// Utility function to put data in a Clob
static void fillClob (Connection conn, CLOB clob, long offset, long length)
    throws Exception
```

```
{
    Writer outstream = clob.setCharacterStream(offset);

    int i = 0;
    int chunk = 10;

    while (i < length)
    {
        outstream.write("aaaaaaaaa", 0, chunk);

        i += chunk;
        if (length - i < chunk)
            chunk = (int) length - i;
    }
    outstream.close();
}

// Utility function to put data in a Blob
static void fillBlob (Connection conn, BLOB blob, long offset, long length)
    throws Exception
{
    OutputStream outstream = blob.setBinaryStream(offset);

    int i = 0;
    int chunk = 10;

    byte [] data = { 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 1 };

    while (i < length)
    {
        outstream.write(data, 0, chunk);

        i += chunk;
        if (length - i < chunk)
            chunk = (int) length - i;
    }
    outstream.close();
}
}
```

## JDBC and Empty LOBs

An empty BLOB can be created from the following API from `oracle.sql.BLOB`:

```
public static BLOB empty_lob () throws SQLException
```

Similarly, the following API from `oracle.sql.CLOB` creates an empty CLOB:

```
public static CLOB empty_lob () throws SQLException
```

Empty LOB instances are created by JDBC drivers without making database round trips. Empty LOBs can be used in the following cases:

- "set" APIs of `PreparedStatement`
- "update" APIs of updatable result set
- attribute value of `STRUCTs`
- element value of `ARRAYs`

---

---

**Note:** Empty LOBs are special marker LOBs but not real LOB values.

---

---

JDBC applications cannot read or write to empty LOBs created from the preceding APIs. An ORA-17098 "Invalid empty lob operation" results if your application attempts to read/write to an empty LOB.

## Oracle Provider for OLE DB (OraOLEDB)

Oracle Provider for OLE DB (OraOLEDB) offers high performance and efficient access to Oracle data for OLE DB and ADO developers. Developers programming with COM, C++, or any COM client can use OraOLEDB to access Oracle databases.

OraOLEDB is an OLE DB provider for Oracle. It offers high performance and efficient access to Oracle data including LOBs, and also allows updates to certain LOB types.

The following LOB types are supported by OraOLEDB:

- *For Persistent LOBs.* READ/WRITE through the rowset.
- *For BFILEs.* READ-ONLY through the rowset.
- *Temporary LOBs* are not supported through the rowset.

**See Also:** *Oracle Provider for OLE DB Developer's Guide*

## Overview of Oracle Data Provider for .NET (ODP.NET)

Oracle Data Provider for .NET (ODP.NET) is an implementation of a data provider for the Oracle database. ODP.NET uses Oracle native APIs to offer fast and reliable access to Oracle data and features from any .NET application. ODP.NET also uses and inherits classes and interfaces available in the Microsoft .NET Framework Class Library. The ODP.NET supports the following LOBs as native data types with .NET: BLOB, CLOB, NCLOB, and BFILE.

COM and .NET are complementary development technologies. Microsoft recommends that developers use the .NET Framework rather than COM for new development.

**See Also:** *Oracle Data Provider for .NET Developer's Guide*



---

---

## Performance Guidelines

This chapter contains these topics:

- [LOB Performance Guidelines](#)
- [Moving Data to LOBs in a Threaded Environment](#)
- [LOB Access Statistics](#)

### LOB Performance Guidelines

This section describes performance guidelines for applications that use LOB data types.

#### Chunk Size

A chunk is one or more Oracle blocks. You can specify the chunk size for the LOB when creating the table that contains the LOB. This corresponds to the data size used by Oracle Database when accessing or modifying the LOB value. Part of the chunk is used to store system-related information and the rest stores the LOB value. The API you are using has a function that returns the amount of space used in the LOB chunk to store the LOB value. In PL/SQL use `DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE`. In OCI, use `OCILobGetChunkSize()`. For SecureFiles, the usable data area of the tablespace block size is returned.

#### Performance Guidelines for Small BasicFiles LOBs

If most LOBs in your database tables are small in size—8K bytes or less—and only a few rows have LOBs larger than 8K bytes, then use the following guidelines to maximize database performance:

- Use `ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW`.
- Set the `DB_BLOCK_SIZE` initialization parameter to 8K bytes and use a chunk size of 8K bytes.
- See "[LOB Storage Parameters](#)" on page 11-4 information on tuning other parameters such as `CACHE`, `PCTVERSION`, and `CHUNK` for the LOB segment.

#### General Performance Guidelines for BasicFiles LOBs

Use the following guidelines to achieve maximum performance with BasicFiles LOBs:

- *When Possible, Read/Write Large Data Chunks at a Time:* Because LOBs are big, you can obtain the best performance by reading and writing large pieces of a LOB value at a time. This helps in several respects:

- a. If accessing the LOB from the client side and the client is at a different node than the server, then large reads/writes reduce network overhead.
  - b. If using the NOCACHE option, then each small read/write incurs an I/O. Reading/writing large quantities of data reduces the I/O.
  - c. Writing to the LOB creates a new version of the LOB chunk. Therefore, writing small amounts at a time incurs the cost of a new version for each small write. If logging is on, then the chunk is also stored in the redo log.
- **Use LOB Buffering to Read/Write Small Chunks of Data:** If you must read or write small pieces of LOB data on the client, then use LOB buffering — see `OCILOBEnableBuffering()`, `OCILOBDisableBuffering()`, `OCILOBFlushBuffer()`, `OCILOBWrite2()`, `OCILOBRead2()`. Basically, turn on LOB buffering before reading/writing small pieces of LOB data.

**See Also:** ["LOB Buffering Subsystem"](#) on page 12-1 for more information on LOB buffering.

- **Use `OCILOBRead2()` and `OCILOBWrite2()` with Callback:** So that data is streamed to and from the LOB. Ensure the length of the entire write is set in the amount parameter on input. Whenever possible, read and write in *multiples* of the LOB chunk size.
- **Use a Checkout/Check-in Model for LOBs:** LOBs are optimized for the following operations:
  - SQL UPDATE which replaces the entire LOB value
  - Copy the entire LOB data to the client, modify the LOB data on the client side, copy the entire LOB data back to the database. This can be done using `OCILOBRead2()` and `OCILOBWrite2()` with streaming.
- Commit changes frequently.

## Temporary LOB Performance Guidelines

In addition to the guidelines described earlier under ["LOB Performance Guidelines"](#) on LOB performance in general, here are some guidelines for using temporary LOBs:

- **Use a separate temporary tablespace for temporary LOB storage instead of the default system tablespace.** This avoids device contention when copying data from persistent LOBs to temporary LOBs.

If you use the newly provided enhanced SQL semantics functionality in your applications, then there are many more temporary LOBs created silently in SQL and PL/SQL than before. Ensure that *temporary tablespace* for storing these temporary LOBs is *large enough* for your applications. In particular, these temporary LOBs are silently created when you use the following:

- SQL functions on LOBs
  - PL/SQL built-in character functions on LOBs
  - Variable assignments from VARCHAR2/RAW to CLOBs/BLOBs, respectively.
  - Perform a LONG-to-LOB migration
- **In PL/SQL, use NOCOPY to pass temporary LOB parameters by reference whenever possible.** Refer to the *Oracle Database PL/SQL Language Reference*, for more information on passing parameters by reference and parameter aliasing.

- **Take advantage of buffer cache on temporary LOBs.** Temporary LOBs created with the CACHE parameter set to true move through the buffer cache. Otherwise temporary LOBs are read directly from, and written directly to, disk.
- For optimal performance, temporary LOBs use *reference on read, copy on write semantics*. When a temporary LOB locator is assigned to another locator, the physical LOB data is not copied. Subsequent READ operations using either of the LOB locators refer to the same physical LOB data. On the first WRITE operation after the assignment, the physical LOB data is copied in order to preserve LOB value semantics, that is, to ensure that each locator points to a unique LOB value. This performance consideration mainly applies to the PL/SQL and OCI environments.

In PL/SQL, reference on read, copy on write semantics are illustrated as follows:

```
LOCATOR1 BLOB;
LOCATOR2 BLOB;
DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY (LOCATOR1,TRUE,DBMS_LOB.SESSION);

-- LOB data is not copied in this assignment operation:
LOCATOR2 := LOCATOR;
-- These read operations refer to the same physical LOB copy:
DBMS_LOB.READ(LOCATOR1, ...);
DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(LOCATOR2, ...);

-- A physical copy of the LOB data is made on WRITE:
DBMS_LOB.WRITE(LOCATOR2, ...);
```

In OCI, to ensure value semantics of LOB locators and data, `OCILobLocatorAssign()` is used to copy temporary LOB locators and the LOB Data. `OCILobLocatorAssign()` does not make a round trip to the server. The physical temporary LOB copy is made when LOB updates happen in the same round trip as the LOB update API as illustrated in the following:

```
OCILobLocator *LOC1;
OCILobLocator *LOC2;
OCILobCreateTemporary(... LOC1, ... TRUE,OCI_DURATION_SESSION);

/* No round-trip is incurred in the following call. */
OCILobLocatorAssign(... LOC1, LOC2);

/* Read operations refer to the same physical LOB copy. */
OCILobRead2(... LOC1 ... )

/* One round-trip is incurred to make a new copy of the
 * LOB data and to write to the new LOB copy.
 */
OCILobWrite2(... LOC1 ... )

/* LOC2 does not see the same LOB data as LOC1. */
OCILobRead2(... LOC2 ... )
```

If LOB value semantics are not intended, then you can use C pointers to achieve reference semantics as illustrated in the following:

```
OCILobLocator *LOC1;
OCILobLocator *LOC2;
OCILobCreateTemporary(... LOC1, ... TRUE,OCI_DURATION_SESSION);
```

```
/* Pointer is copied. LOC1 and LOC2 refer to the same LOB data. */
LOC2 = LOC1;

/* Write to LOC2. */
OCILobWrite2(...LOC2...)

/* LOC1 sees the change made to LOC2. */
OCILobRead2(...LOC1...)
```

- ***Use OCI\_OBJECT mode for temporary LOBs***

To improve the performance of temporary LOBs on LOB assignment, use OCI\_OBJECT mode for OCILobLocatorAssign(). In OCI\_OBJECT mode, the database tries to minimize the number of deep copies to be done. Hence, after OCILobLocatorAssign() is done on a source temporary LOB in OCI\_OBJECT mode, the source and the destination locators point to the same LOB until any modification is made through either LOB locator.

- ***Free up temporary LOBs returned from SQL queries and PL/SQL programs.***

In PL/SQL, C (OCI), Java and other programmatic interfaces, SQL query results or PL/SQL program executions return temporary LOBs for operation/function calls on LOBs. For example:

```
SELECT substr(CLOB_Column, 4001, 32000) FROM ...
```

If the query is executed in PL/SQL, then the returned temporary LOBs are automatically freed at the end of a PL/SQL program block. You can also explicitly free the temporary LOBs at any time. In OCI and Java, the returned temporary LOB must be explicitly freed.

Without proper de-allocation of the temporary LOBs returned from SQL queries, temporary tablespace is filled and you may observe performance degradation.

## Performance Considerations for SQL Semantics and LOBs

Be aware of the following performance issues when using SQL semantics with LOBs:

- Ensure that your temporary tablespace is large enough to accommodate LOBs stored out-of-line. Persistent LOBs that are greater than approximately 4000 bytes in size are stored outside of the LOB column.
- When possible, free unneeded temporary LOB instances. Unless you explicitly free a temporary LOB instance, the LOB remains in existence while your application is executing. More specifically, the instance exists while the scope in which the LOB was declared is executing.

**See Also:** [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#) for details on SQL semantics support for LOBs.

## Moving Data to LOBs in a Threaded Environment

There are two possible procedures that you can use to move data to LOBs in a threaded environment, one of which should be avoided.



## Recommended Procedure

---



---

### Note:

- There is no requirement to create an empty LOB in this procedure.
  - You can use the RETURNING clause as part of the INSERT/UPDATE statement to return a locked LOB locator. This eliminates the need for doing a SELECT-FOR-UPDATE, as mentioned in step 3.
- 
- 

The recommended procedure is as follows:

1. INSERT an empty LOB, RETURNING the LOB locator.
2. Move data into the LOB using this locator.
3. COMMIT. This releases the ROW locks and makes the LOB data persistent.

Alternatively, you can insert more than 4000 bytes of data directly for the LOB columns or LOB attributes.

### Procedure to Avoid

The following sequence requires a new connection when using a threaded environment, adversely affects performance, and is not recommended:

1. Create an empty (non-NULL) LOB
2. Perform INSERT using the empty LOB
3. SELECT-FOR-UPDATE of the row just entered
4. Move data into the LOB
5. COMMIT. This releases the ROW locks and makes the LOB data persistent.

## LOB Access Statistics

After Oracle Database 10g Release 2, three session-level statistics specific to LOBs are available to users: LOB reads, LOB writes, and LOB writes unaligned. Session statistics are accessible through the V\$MYSTAT, V\$SESSTAT, and V\$SYSSTAT dynamic performance views. To query these views, the user must be granted the privileges SELECT\_CATALOG\_ROLE, SELECT ON SYS.V\_\$MYSTAT view, and SELECT ON SYS.V\_\$STATNAME view.

LOB reads is defined as the number of LOB API read operations performed in the session/system. A single LOB API read may correspond to multiple physical/logical disk block reads.

LOB writes is defined as the number of LOB API write operations performed in the session/system. A single LOB API write may correspond to multiple physical/logical disk block writes.

LOB writes unaligned is defined as the number of LOB API write operations whose start offset or buffer size is not aligned to the internal chunk size of the LOB. Writes aligned to chunk boundaries are the most efficient write operations. The internal chunk size of a LOB is available through the LOB API (for example, using PL/SQL, by DBMS\_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE()).

The following simple example demonstrates how LOB session statistics are updated as the user performs read/write operations on LOBs.

It is important to note that session statistics are aggregated across operations to all LOBs accessed in a session; the statistics are not separated or categorized by objects (that is, table, column, segment, object numbers, and so on).

In these examples, you reconnect to the database for each demonstration to clear the V\$MYSTAT. This enables you to see how the lob statistics change for the specific operation you are testing, without the potentially obscuring effect of past LOB operations within the same session.

**See also:** *Oracle Database Reference*, appendix E, "Statistics Descriptions"

## Example of Retrieving LOB Access Statistics

This example was created for retrieving LOB access statistics.

```
rem
rem Set up the user
rem

CONNECT / AS SYSDBA;
SET ECHO ON;
GRANT SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE TO pm;
GRANT SELECT ON sys.v_$mystat TO pm;
GRANT SELECT ON sys.v_$statname TO pm;

rem
rem Create a simplified view for statistics queries
rem

CONNECT pm;
SET ECHO ON;

DROP VIEW mylobstats;
CREATE VIEW mylobstats
AS
SELECT  SUBSTR(n.name,1,20) name,
        m.value           value
FROM    v_$mystat      m,
        v_$statname    n
WHERE   m.statistic# = n.statistic#
        AND n.name LIKE 'lob%';

rem
rem Create a test table
rem

DROP TABLE t;
CREATE TABLE t (i NUMBER, c CLOB)
           lob(c) STORE AS (DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW);

rem
rem Populate some data
rem
rem This should result in unaligned writes, one for
rem each row/lob populated.
rem

CONNECT pm
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;
```

```
INSERT INTO t VALUES (1, 'a');
INSERT INTO t VALUES (2, rpad('a',4000,'a'));
COMMIT;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;

rem
rem Get the lob length
rem
rem Computing lob length does not read lob data, no change
rem in read/write stats.
rem

CONNECT pm;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;
SELECT LENGTH(c) FROM t;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;

rem
rem Read the lob
rem
rem Lob reads are performed, one for each lob in the table.
rem

CONNECT pm;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;
SELECT * FROM t;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;

rem
rem Read and manipulate the lob (through temporary lob)
rem
rem The use of complex operators like "substr()" results in
rem the implicit creation and use of temporary lob. operations
rem on temporary lob also update lob statistics.
rem

CONNECT pm;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;
SELECT substr(c, length(c), 1) FROM t;
SELECT substr(c, 1, 1) FROM t;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;

rem
rem Perform some aligned overwrites
rem
rem Only lob write statistics are updated because both the
rem byte offset of the write, and the size of the buffer
rem being written are aligned on the lob chunksize.
rem

CONNECT pm;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;
DECLARE
    loc    CLOB;
    buf    LONG;
    chunk  NUMBER;
BEGIN
    SELECT c INTO loc FROM t WHERE i = 1
        FOR UPDATE;
```

```
        chunk := DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE(loc);
        buf    := rpad('b', chunk, 'b');

        -- aligned buffer length and offset
        DBMS_LOB.WRITE(loc, chunk, 1, buf);
        DBMS_LOB.WRITE(loc, chunk, 1+chunk, buf);
        COMMIT;
END;
/
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;

rem
rem Perform some unaligned overwrites
rem
rem Both lob write and lob unaligned write statistics are
rem updated because either one or both of the write byte offset
rem and buffer size are unaligned with the lob's chunksize.
rem

CONNECT pm;
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;
DECLARE
    loc CLOB;
    buf LONG;
BEGIN
    SELECT c INTO loc FROM t WHERE i = 1
           FOR UPDATE;

    buf := rpad('b', DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE(loc), 'b');

    -- unaligned buffer length
    DBMS_LOB.WRITE(loc, DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE(loc)-1, 1, buf);

    -- unaligned start offset
    DBMS_LOB.WRITE(loc, DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE(loc), 2, buf);

    -- unaligned buffer length and start offset
    DBMS_LOB.WRITE(loc, DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE(loc)-1, 2, buf);

    COMMIT;
END;
/
SELECT * FROM mylobstats;
DROP TABLE t;
DROP VIEW mylobstats;

CONNECT / AS SYSDBA
REVOKE SELECT_CATALOG_ROLE FROM pm;
REVOKE SELECT ON sys.v_$mystat FROM pm;
REVOKE SELECT ON sys.v_$statname FROM pm;

QUIT;
```

# Part IV

---

## SQL Access to LOBs

This part describes SQL semantics for LOBs supported in the SQL and PL/SQL environments.

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 15, "DDL and DML Statements with LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 17, "PL/SQL Semantics for LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 18, "Migrating Columns from LONGs to LOBs"](#)



---

---

## DDL and DML Statements with LOBs

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Creating a Table Containing One or More LOB Columns](#)
- [Creating a Nested Table Containing a LOB](#)
- [Inserting a Row by Selecting a LOB From Another Table](#)
- [Inserting a LOB Value Into a Table](#)
- [Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable](#)
- [Updating a LOB with EMPTY\\_CLOB\(\) or EMPTY\\_BLOB\(\)](#)
- [Updating a Row by Selecting a LOB From Another Table](#)

**See Also:** For guidelines on how to `INSERT` into a LOB when binds of more than 4000 bytes are involved, see the following sections in "[Binds of All Sizes in INSERT and UPDATE Operations](#)" on page 20-6.

### Creating a Table Containing One or More LOB Columns

This section describes how to create a table containing one or more LOB columns.

When you use functions, `EMPTY_BLOB()` and `EMPTY_CLOB()`, the resulting LOB is initialized, but not populated with data. Also note that LOBs that are empty are not `NULL`.

**See Also:**

*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for a complete specification of syntax for using LOBs in `CREATE TABLE` and `ALTER TABLE` with:

- `BLOB`, `CLOB`, `NCLOB` and `BFILE` columns
- `EMPTY_BLOB` and `EMPTY_CLOB` functions
- LOB storage clause for persistent LOB columns, and LOB attributes of embedded objects

**Scenario**

These examples use the following Sample Schemas:

- Human Resources (HR)
- Order Entry (OE)
- Product Media (PM)

Note that the HR and OE schemas must exist before the PM schema is created. For details on these schemas, refer to *Oracle Database Sample Schemas*.

---



---

**Note:** Because you can use SQL DDL directly to create a table containing one or more LOB columns, it is not necessary to use the DBMS\_LOB package.

---



---

```

/* Setup script for creating Print_media,
   Online_media and associated structures
*/

DROP USER pm CASCADE;
DROP DIRECTORY ADPHOTO_DIR;
DROP DIRECTORY ADCOMPOSITE_DIR;
DROP DIRECTORY ADGRAPHIC_DIR;
DROP INDEX onlinemedia CASCADE CONSTRAINTS;
DROP INDEX printmedia CASCADE CONSTRAINTS;
DROP TABLE online_media CASCADE CONSTRAINTS;
DROP TABLE print_media CASCADE CONSTRAINTS;
DROP TYPE textdoc_typ;
DROP TYPE textdoc_tab;
DROP TYPE adheader_typ;
DROP TABLE adheader_typ;
CREATE USER pm;
GRANT CONNECT, RESOURCE to pm;

CREATE DIRECTORY ADPHOTO_DIR AS '/tmp/';
CREATE DIRECTORY ADCOMPOSITE_DIR AS '/tmp/';
CREATE DIRECTORY ADGRAPHIC_DIR AS '/tmp/';
CREATE DIRECTORY media_dir AS '/tmp/';
GRANT READ ON DIRECTORY ADPHOTO_DIR to pm;
GRANT READ ON DIRECTORY ADCOMPOSITE_DIR to pm;
GRANT READ ON DIRECTORY ADGRAPHIC_DIR to pm;
GRANT READ ON DIRECTORY media_dir to pm;

CONNECT pm/password (or &pass);
COMMIT;

CREATE TABLE a_table (blob_col BLOB);

CREATE TYPE adheader_typ AS OBJECT (
    header_name    VARCHAR2(256),
    creation_date  DATE,
    header_text    VARCHAR(1024),
    logo           BLOB );

CREATE TYPE textdoc_typ AS OBJECT (
    document_typ   VARCHAR2(32),
    formatted_doc  BLOB);

CREATE TYPE Textdoc_ntab AS TABLE of textdoc_typ;

CREATE TABLE adheader_tab of adheader_typ (
    Ad_finaltext  DEFAULT EMPTY_CLOB(), CONSTRAINT
    Take CHECK (Take IS NOT NULL),  DEFAULT NULL);

CREATE TABLE online_media
( product_id    NUMBER(6),

```



```

product_photo ORDSYS.ORDImage,
product_photo_signature ORDSYS.ORDImageSignature,
product_thumbnail ORDSYS.ORDImage,
product_video ORDSYS.ORDVideo,
product_audio ORDSYS.ORDAudio,
product_text CLOB,
product_testimonials ORDSYS.ORDDoc);

CREATE UNIQUE INDEX onlinemedia_pk
  ON online_media (product_id);

ALTER TABLE online_media
ADD (CONSTRAINT onlinemedia_pk
PRIMARY KEY (product_id), CONSTRAINT loc_c_id_fk
FOREIGN KEY (product_id) REFERENCES oe.product_information(product_id)
);

CREATE TABLE print_media
(product_id NUMBER(6),
ad_id NUMBER(6),
ad_composite BLOB,
ad_sourcetext CLOB,
ad_finaltext CLOB,
ad_fktextn NCLOB,
ad_testdocs_ntab textdoc_tab,
ad_photo BLOB,
ad_graphic BFILE,
ad_header adheader_typ,
press_release LONG) NESTED TABLE ad_textdocs_ntab STORE AS textdocs_nestedtab;

CREATE UNIQUE INDEX printmedia_pk
  ON print_media (product_id, ad_id);

ALTER TABLE print_media
ADD (CONSTRAINT printmedia_pk
PRIMARY KEY (product_id, ad_id),
CONSTRAINT printmedia_fk FOREIGN KEY (product_id)
REFERENCES oe.product_information(product_id)
);

```

## Creating a Nested Table Containing a LOB

This section describes how to create a nested table containing a LOB.

You must create the object type that contains the LOB attributes before you create a nested table based on that object type. In the example that follows, table `Print_media` contains nested table `ad_textdoc_ntab` that has type `textdoc_tab`. This type uses two LOB data types:

- `BFILE` - an advertisement graphic
- `CLOB` - an advertisement transcript

The actual embedding of the nested table is accomplished when the structure of the containing table is defined. In our example, this is effected by the `NESTED TABLE` statement when the `Print_media` table is created as shown in the following example:

```

/* Create type textdoc_typ as the base type
   for the nested table textdoc_ntab,
   where textdoc_ntab contains a LOB:
*/

```

```

CREATE TYPE textdoc_typ AS OBJECT
(
  document_typ   VARCHAR2(32),
  formatted_doc  BLOB
);
/

/* The type has been created. Now you need a */
/* nested table of that type to embed in */
/* table Print_media, so: */
CREATE TYPE textdoc_ntab AS TABLE of textdoc_typ;
/

CREATE TABLE textdoc_ntable (
  id NUMBER,
  ntab_col textdoc_ntab)
NESTED TABLE ntab_col STORE AS textdoc_nestestedtab;

DROP TYPE textdoc_typ force;
DROP TYPE textdoc_ntab;
DROP TABLE textdoc_ntable;

```

**See Also:**

- ["Creating a Table Containing One or More LOB Columns"](#) on page 15-1
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*, "Chapter 7, SQL Statements" — CREATE TABLE.

## Inserting a Row by Selecting a LOB From Another Table

This section describes how to insert a row containing a LOB as SELECT.

---



---

**Note:** Persistent LOB types BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB, use *copy semantics*, as opposed to *reference semantics* that apply to BFILES. When a BLOB, CLOB, or NCLOB is copied from one row to another in the same table or a different table, the *actual* LOB value is copied, not just the LOB locator.

---



---

For LOBs, one of the advantages of using an object-relational approach is that you can define a type as a common template for related tables. For instance, it makes sense that both the tables that store archival material and working tables that use those libraries, share a common structure.

For example, assuming `Print_media` and `Online_media` have identical schemas. The statement creates a new LOB locator in table `Print_media`. It also copies the LOB data from `Online_media` to the location pointed to by the new LOB locator inserted in table `Print_media`.

The following code fragment is based on the fact that the table `Online_media` is of the same type as `Print_media` referenced by the `ad_textdocs_ntab` column of table `Print_media`. It inserts values into the library table, and then inserts this same data into `Print_media` by means of a SELECT.

```

/* Store records in the archive table Online_media: */
INSERT INTO Online_media
  VALUES (3060, NULL, NULL, NULL, NULL,

```

```

'some text about this CRT Monitor', NULL);

/* Insert values into Print_media by selecting from Online_media: */
INSERT INTO Print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext)
  (SELECT product_id, 11001, product_text
   FROM Online_media WHERE product_id = 3060);

```

**See Also:**

- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*, "Chapter 7, SQL Statements" — INSERT.
- *Oracle Database Sample Schemas* for a description of the PM Schema and the `Print_media` table used in this example.

## Inserting a LOB Value Into a Table

This section describes how to insert a LOB value using `EMPTY_CLOB()` or `EMPTY_BLOB()`.

### Usage Notes

Here are guidelines for inserting LOBs:

#### Before Inserting Make the LOB Column Non-Null

Before you write data to a persistent LOB, make the LOB column non-NULL; that is, the LOB column must contain a locator that points to an empty or populated LOB value. You can initialize a BLOB column value by using the function `EMPTY_BLOB()` as a default predicate. Similarly, a CLOB or NCLOB column value can be initialized by using the function `EMPTY_CLOB()`.

You can also initialize a LOB column with a character or raw string less than 4000 bytes in size. For example:

```

INSERT INTO Print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext)
  VALUES (1, 1, 'This is a One Line Advertisement');

```

Note that you can also perform this initialization during the `CREATE TABLE` operation. See ["Creating a Table Containing One or More LOB Columns"](#) on page 15-1 for more information.

These functions are special functions in Oracle SQL, and are not part of the `DBMS_LOB` package.

```

/* In the new row of table Print_media,
   the columns ad_sourcetext and ad_flttextn are initialized using EMPTY_CLOB(),
   the columns ad_composite and ad_photo are initialized using EMPTY_BLOB(),
   the column formatted-doc in the nested table is initialized using
   EMPTY_BLOB(),
   the column logo in the column object is initialized using EMPTY_BLOB(): */
INSERT INTO Print_media
  VALUES (3060,11001, EMPTY_BLOB(), EMPTY_CLOB(),EMPTY_CLOB(),EMPTY_CLOB(),
  textdoc_tab(textdoc_typ ('HTML', EMPTY_BLOB())), EMPTY_BLOB(), NULL,
  adheader_typ('any header name', <any date>, 'ad header text goes here',
  EMPTY_BLOB()),
  'Press release goes here');

```

## Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable

This section gives examples of how to insert a row by initializing a LOB locator bind variable.

### Preconditions

Before you can insert a row using this technique, the following conditions must be met:

- The table containing the source row must exist.
- The destination table must exist.

For details on creating tables containing LOB columns, see ["LOB Storage Parameters"](#) on page 11-4.

### Usage Notes

For guidelines on how to INSERT and UPDATE a row containing a LOB when binds of more than 4000 bytes are involved, see ["Binds of All Sizes in INSERT and UPDATE Operations"](#) on page 20-6.

### Syntax

See the following syntax references for details on using this operation in each programmatic environment:

- **SQL:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*, "Chapter 7, SQL Statements" — INSERT
- **C (OCI):** *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "Relational Functions" — LOB Functions.
- **C++ (OCCI):** *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- **COBOL (Pro\*COBOL):** *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — INSERT.
- **C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++):** *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — INSERT
- **COM (OO4O) (Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O) Online Help):** From Help Topics, Contents tab, select OO4O Automation Server > Objects > Oradynaset
- **Java (JDBC):** *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples for this use case are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- **PL/SQL:** [Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable](#) on page 15-7
- **C (OCI):** [Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable](#) on page 15-7
- **C++ (OCCI):** No example is provided with this release.
- **COBOL (Pro\*COBOL):** [Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable](#) on page 15-8
- **C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++):** [Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable](#) on page 15-9

- [COM \(OO4O\): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable](#) on page 15-10
- [Java \(JDBC\): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable](#) on page 15-10

## PL/SQL: Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable

```

/* This file is installed in the following path when you install */
/* the database: $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/plsql/lininsert.sql */

/* inserting a row through an insert statement */

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE insertLOB_proc (Lob_loc IN BLOB) IS
BEGIN
  /* Insert the BLOB into the row */
  DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('----- LOB INSERT EXAMPLE -----');
  INSERT INTO print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_photo)
    values (3106, 60315, Lob_loc);
END;
/

```

## C (OCI): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable

```

/* This file is installed in the following path when you install */
/* the database: $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/oci/lininsert.c */

/* Insert the Locator into table using Bind Variables. */
#include <oratypes.h>
#include <lobdemo.h>
void insertLOB_proc(OCILobLocator *Lob_loc, OCIEnv *envhp,
                   OCIError *errhp, OCISvcCtx *svchp, OCISmt *stmthp)
{
  int          product_id;
  OCIBind      *bndhp3;
  OCIBind      *bndhp2;
  OCIBind      *bndhp1;
  text         *insstmt =
    (text *) "INSERT INTO Print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext) \
    VALUES (:1, :2, :3)";

  printf ("----- OCI Lob Insert Demo ----- \n");
  /* Insert the locator into the Print_media table with product_id=3060 */
  product_id = (int)3060;

  /* Prepare the SQL statement */
  checkerr (errhp, OCISmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, insstmt, (ub4)
    strlen((char *) insstmt),
    (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4)OCI_DEFAULT));

  /* Binds the bind positions */
  checkerr (errhp, OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bndhp1, errhp, (ub4) 1,
    (void *) &product_id, (sb4) sizeof(product_id),
    SQLT_INT, (void *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,
    (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT));

  checkerr (errhp, OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bndhp1, errhp, (ub4) 2,
    (void *) &product_id, (sb4) sizeof(product_id),
    SQLT_INT, (void *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,

```

```

                                (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT));

checkerr (errhp, OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bndhp2, errhp, (ub4) 3,
                                (void *) &lob_loc, (sb4) 0, SQLT_CLOB,
                                (void *) 0, (ub2 *) 0, (ub2 *) 0,
                                (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT));

/* Execute the SQL statement */
checkerr (errhp, OCISTmtExecute(svchp, stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 1, (ub4) 0,
                                (CONST OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0,
                                (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT));
}

```

## COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable

\* This file is installed in the following path when you install  
 \* the database: \$ORACLE\_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/procob/lininsert.pco

```

IDENTIFICATION DIVISION.
PROGRAM-ID. INSERT-LOB.
ENVIRONMENT DIVISION.
DATA DIVISION.
WORKING-STORAGE SECTION.

01 BLOB1 SQL-BLOB.
01 USERID PIC X(11) VALUES "PM/password".
   EXEC SQL INCLUDE SQLCA END-EXEC.

PROCEDURE DIVISION.
INSERT-LOB.

   EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO PERFORM SQL-ERROR END-EXEC.
   EXEC SQL CONNECT :USERID END-EXEC.
* Initialize the BLOB locator
   EXEC SQL ALLOCATE :BLOB1 END-EXEC.
* Populate the LOB
   EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND GOTO END-OF-BLOB END-EXEC.
   EXEC SQL
      SELECT AD_PHOTO INTO :BLOB1 FROM PRINT_MEDIA
      WHERE PRODUCT_ID = 2268 AND AD_ID = 21001 END-EXEC.

* Insert the value with PRODUCT_ID of 3060
   EXEC SQL
      INSERT INTO PRINT_MEDIA (PRODUCT_ID, AD_PHOTO)
      VALUES (3060, 11001, :BLOB1)END-EXEC.

* Free resources held by locator
END-OF-BLOB.
   EXEC SQL WHENEVER NOT FOUND CONTINUE END-EXEC.
   EXEC SQL FREE :BLOB1 END-EXEC.
   EXEC SQL ROLLBACK WORK RELEASE END-EXEC.
   STOP RUN.

SQL-ERROR.
   EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE END-EXEC.
   DISPLAY " ".
   DISPLAY "ORACLE ERROR DETECTED:".
   DISPLAY " ".
   DISPLAY SQLERRMC.
   EXEC SQL ROLLBACK WORK RELEASE END-EXEC.

```

---



---

STOP RUN.

---



---

**Note:** For simplicity in demonstrating this feature, this example does not perform the password management techniques that a deployed system normally uses. In a production environment, follow the Oracle Database password management guidelines, and disable any sample accounts. See *Oracle Database Security Guide* for password management guidelines and other security recommendations.

---



---

## C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable

```

/* This file is installed in the following path when you install */
/* the database: $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/proc/linsert.pc */

#include <oci.h>
#include <stdio.h>
#include <sqlca.h>

void Sample_Error()
{
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR CONTINUE;
    printf("%s\n", sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrml, sqlca.sqlerrm.sqlerrmc);
    EXEC SQL ROLLBACK WORK RELEASE;
    exit(1);
}

void insertUseBindVariable_proc(Rownum, Lob_loc)
    int Rownum, Rownum2;
    OCIBlobLocator *Lob_loc;
{
    EXEC SQL WHENEVER SQLERROR DO Sample_Error();
    EXEC SQL INSERT INTO Print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_photo)
        VALUES (:Rownum, :Rownum2, :Lob_loc);
}

void insertBLOB_proc()
{
    OCIBlobLocator *Lob_loc;

    /* Initialize the BLOB Locator: */
    EXEC SQL ALLOCATE :Lob_loc;

    /* Select the LOB from the row where product_id = 2268 and ad_id=21001: */
    EXEC SQL SELECT ad_photo INTO :Lob_loc
        FROM Print_media WHERE product_id = 2268 AND ad_id = 21001;

    /* Insert into the row where product_id = 3106 and ad_id = 13001: */
    insertUseBindVariable_proc(3106, 13001, Lob_loc);

    /* Release resources held by the locator: */
    EXEC SQL FREE :Lob_loc;
}

void main()
{
    char *samp = "pm/password";
    EXEC SQL CONNECT :pm;
    insertBLOB_proc();
}

```

```
EXEC SQL ROLLBACK WORK RELEASE;
}
```

## COM (OO4O): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable

```
' This file is installed in the following path when you install
' the database: $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/vb/linsert.bas

Dim OraDyn as OraDynaset, OraPhoto1 as OraBLOB, OraPhotoClone as OraBLOB
Set OraDyn = OraDb.CreateDynaset(
    "SELECT * FROM Print_media ORDER BY product_id", ORADYN_DEFAULT)
Set OraPhoto1 = OraDyn.Fields("ad_photo").Value
'Clone it for future reference
Set OraPhotoClone = OraPhoto1

'Go to Next row
OraDyn.MoveNext
'Lets update the current row and set the LOB to OraPhotoClone
OraDyn.Edit
Set OraPhoto1 = OraPhotoClone
OraDyn.Update
```

## Java (JDBC): Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable

```
/* This file is installed in the following path when you install */
/* the database: $ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/java/linsert.java */

// Core JDBC classes:
import java.sql.DriverManager;
import java.sql.Connection;
import java.sql.Statement;
import java.sql.PreparedStatement;
import java.sql.ResultSet;
import java.sql.SQLException;

// Oracle Specific JDBC classes:
import oracle.sql.*;
import oracle.jdbc.driver.*;

public class linsert
{
    public static void main (String args [])
        throws Exception
    {
        // Load the Oracle JDBC driver
        DriverManager.registerDriver (new oracle.jdbc.driver.OracleDriver ());
        // Connect to the database:
        Connection conn =
            DriverManager.getConnection ("jdbc:oracle:oci8:@", "pm", "password");

        // It's faster when auto commit is off:
        conn.setAutoCommit (false);

        // Create a Statement:
        Statement stmt = conn.createStatement ();
        try
        {
            ResultSet rset = stmt.executeQuery (
                "SELECT ad_photo FROM Print_media WHERE product_id = 3106 AND ad_id = 13001");
```



```

if (rset.next())
{
    // retrieve the LOB locator from the ResultSet
    BLOB adphoto_blob = ((OracleResultSet)rset).getBLOB (1);
    OraclePreparedStatement ops =
        (OraclePreparedStatement) conn.prepareStatement(
"INSERT INTO Print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_photo) VALUES (2268, "
+ "21001, ?)");
    ops.setBlob(1, adphoto_blob);
    ops.execute();
    conn.commit();
    conn.close();
}
}
catch (SQLException e)
{
    e.printStackTrace();
}
}
}

```

## Updating a LOB with EMPTY\_CLOB() or EMPTY\_BLOB()

This section describes how to UPDATE a LOB with EMPTY\_CLOB() or EMPTY\_BLOB().

---

**Note:** Performance improves when you update the LOB with the actual value, instead of using EMPTY\_CLOB() or EMPTY\_BLOB().

---

### Preconditions

Before you write data to a persistent LOB, make the LOB column non-NULL; that is, the LOB column must contain a locator that points to an empty or populated LOB value. You can initialize a BLOB column value by using the function EMPTY\_BLOB() as a default predicate. Similarly, a CLOB or NCLOB column value can be initialized by using the function EMPTY\_CLOB().

You can also initialize a LOB column with a character or raw string less than 4000 bytes in size. For example:

```

UPDATE Print_media
    SET ad_sourcetext = 'This is a One Line Story'
    WHERE product_id = 2268;

```

You can perform this initialization during CREATE TABLE (see ["Creating a Table Containing One or More LOB Columns"](#) on page 15-1) or, as in this case, by means of an INSERT.

The following example shows a series of updates using the EMPTY\_CLOB operation to different data types.

```

UPDATE Print_media SET ad_sourcetext = EMPTY_CLOB()
    WHERE product_id = 3060 AND ad_id = 11001;

UPDATE Print_media SET ad_fltextn = EMPTY_CLOB()
    WHERE product_id = 3060 AND ad_id = 11001;

UPDATE Print_media SET ad_photo = EMPTY_BLOB()

```

```
WHERE product_id = 3060 AND ad_id = 11001;
```

**See Also:** *SQL: Oracle Database SQL Language Reference Chapter 7, "SQL Statements" — UPDATE*

## Updating a Row by Selecting a LOB From Another Table

This section describes how to use the SQL `UPDATE AS SELECT` statement to update a row containing a LOB column by selecting a LOB from another table.

To use this technique, you must update by means of a reference. For example, the following code updates data from `online_media`:

Rem Updating a row by selecting a LOB from another table (persistent LOBs)

```
UPDATE Print_media SET ad_sourcetext =  
  (SELECT * product_text FROM online_media WHERE product_id = 3060);  
WHERE product_id = 3060 AND ad_id = 11001;
```

---

---

## SQL Semantics and LOBs

This chapter describes SQL semantics that are supported for LOBs. These techniques allow you to use LOBs directly in SQL code and provide an alternative to using LOB-specific APIs for some operations.

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Using LOBs in SQL](#)
- [SQL Functions and Operators Supported for Use with LOBs](#)
- [Implicit Conversion of LOB Data Types in SQL](#)
- [Unsupported Use of LOBs in SQL](#)
- [VARCHAR2 and RAW Semantics for LOBs](#)

**See Also:** "Performance Considerations for SQL Semantics and LOBs" on page 14-4.

- [Built-in Functions for Remote LOBs and BFILEs](#)

### Using LOBs in SQL

You can access CLOB and NCLOB data types using SQL VARCHAR2 semantics, such as SQL string operators and functions. (LENGTH functions can be used with BLOB data types and CLOB and NCLOBs.) These techniques are beneficial in the following situations:

- When performing operations on LOBs that are relatively small in size (up to about 100K bytes).
- After migrating your database from LONG columns to LOB data types, any SQL string functions, contained in your existing PL/SQL application, continue to work after the migration.

SQL semantics are not recommended in the following situations:

- When you use advanced features such as random access and piece-wise fetch, you must use LOB APIs.
- When performing operations on LOBs that are relatively large in size (greater than 1MB) using SQL semantics can impact performance. Using the LOB APIs is recommended in this situation.

---

---

**Note:** SQL semantics are used with persistent and temporary LOBs. (SQL semantics do not apply to BFILE columns because BFILE is a read-only data type.)

---

---

## SQL Functions and Operators Supported for Use with LOBs

Many SQL operators and functions that take VARCHAR2 columns as arguments also accept LOB columns. The following list summarizes which categories of SQL functions and operators are supported for use with LOBs. Details on individual functions and operators are given in [Table 16-1](#).

The following categories of SQL functions and operators are supported for use with LOBs:

- Concatenation
- Comparison  
(Some comparison functions are not supported for use with LOBs.)
- Character functions
- Conversion  
(Some conversion functions are not supported for use with LOBs.)

The following categories of functions are not supported for use with LOBs:

- Aggregate functions  
Note that although pre-defined aggregate functions are not supported for use with LOBs, you can create user-defined aggregate functions to use with LOBs. See the *Oracle Database Data Cartridge Developer's Guide* for more information on user-defined aggregate functions.
- Unicode functions

Details on individual functions and operators are in [Table 16-1](#), which lists SQL operators and functions that take VARCHAR2 types as operands or arguments, or return a VARCHAR2 value. The "SQL" column identifies the functions and operators that are supported for CLOB and NCLOB data types. (The LENGTH function is also supported for the BLOB data type.)

The DBMS\_LOB PL/SQL package supplied with Oracle Database supports using LOBs with most of the functions listed in [Table 16-1](#) as indicated in the "PL/SQL" column.

---

---

**Note:** Operators and functions with "No" indicated in the SQL column of [Table 16-1](#) do not work in SQL queries used in PL/SQL blocks - even though some of these operators and functions are supported for use directly in PL/SQL code.

---

---

### Implicit Conversion of CLOB to CHAR Types

Functions designated as "CNV" in the SQL or PL/SQL column of [Table 16-1](#) are performed by converting the CLOB to a character data type, such as VARCHAR2. In the SQL environment, only the first 4K bytes of the CLOB are converted and used in the operation; in the PL/SQL environment, only the first 32K bytes of the CLOB are converted and used in the operation.

**Table 16–1 SQL VARCHAR2 Functions and Operators on LOBs**

Category	Operator / Function	SQL Example / Comments	SQL	PL/SQL
Concatenation	, CONCAT()	Select clobCol    clobCol2 from tab;	Yes	Yes
Comparison	=, !=, >, >=, <, <=, <>, ^=	if clobCol=clobCol2 then...	No	Yes
Comparison	IN, NOT IN	if clobCol NOT IN (clob1, clob2, clob3) then...	No	Yes
Comparison	SOME, ANY, ALL	if clobCol < SOME (select clobCol2 from...) then...	No	N/A
Comparison	BETWEEN	if clobCol BETWEEN clobCol2 and clobCol3 then...	No	Yes
Comparison	LIKE [ESCAPE]	if clobCol LIKE '%pattern%' then...	Yes	Yes
Comparison	IS [NOT] NULL	where clobCol IS NOT NULL	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	INITCAP, NLS_INITCAP	select INITCAP(clobCol) from...	CNV	CNV
Character Functions	LOWER, NLS_LOWER, UPPER, NLS_UPPER	...where LOWER(clobCol1) = LOWER(clobCol2)	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	LPAD, RPAD	select RPAD(clobCol, 20, 'La') from...	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	TRIM, LTRIM, RTRIM	...where RTRIM(LTRIM(clobCol,'ab'),'xy') = 'cd'	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	REPLACE	select REPLACE(clobCol, 'orig', 'new') from...	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	SOUNDEX	...where SOUNDEX(clobCol) = SOUNDEX('SMYTHE')	CNV	CNV
Character Functions	SUBSTR	...where substr(clobCol, 1,4) = 'THIS'	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	TRANSLATE	select TRANSLATE(clobCol, '123abc','NC') from...	CNV	CNV
Character Functions	ASCII	select ASCII(clobCol) from...	CNV	CNV
Character Functions	INSTR	...where instr(clobCol, 'book') = 11	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	LENGTH	...where length(clobCol) != 7;	Yes	Yes
Character Functions	NLSSORT	...where NLSSORT (clobCol,'NLS_SORT = German') > NLSSORT ('S','NLS_SORT = German')	CNV	CNV
Character Functions	INSTRB, SUBSTRB, LENGTHB	These functions are supported only for CLOBs that use single-byte character sets. (LENGTHB is supported for BLOBs and CLOBs.)	Yes	Yes
Character Functions - Regular Expressions	REGEXP_LIKE	This function searches a character column for a pattern. Use this function in the WHERE clause of a query to return rows matching the regular expression you specify.  See the <i>Oracle Database SQL Language Reference</i> for syntax details on SQL functions for regular expressions. See the <i>Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide</i> for information on using regular expressions with the database.	Yes	Yes

**Table 16–1 (Cont.) SQL VARCHAR2 Functions and Operators on LOBs**

Category	Operator / Function	SQL Example / Comments	SQL	PL/SQL
Character Functions - Regular Expressions	REGEXP_REPLACE	This function searches for a pattern in a character column and replaces each occurrence of that pattern with the pattern you specify.	Yes	Yes
Character Functions - Regular Expressions	REGEXP_INSTR	This function searches a string for a given occurrence of a regular expression pattern. You specify which occurrence you want to find and the start position to search from. This function returns an integer indicating the position in the string where the match is found.	Yes	Yes
Character Functions - Regular Expressions	REGEXP_SUBSTR	This function returns the actual substring matching the regular expression pattern you specify.	Yes	Yes
Conversion	CHARTOROWID	CHARTOROWID(clobCol)	CNV	CNV
Conversion	COMPOSE	COMPOSE('string')  Returns a Unicode string given a string in the data type CHAR, VARCHAR2,CLOB, NCHAR, NVARCHAR2, NCLOB. An o code point qualified by an umlaut code point is returned as the o-umlaut code point.	CNV	CNV
Conversion	DECOMPOSE	DECOMPOSE('str' [CANONICAL   COMPATIBILITY] )  Valid for Unicode character arguments. Returns a Unicode string after decomposition in the same character set as the input. o-umlaut code point is returned as the o code point followed by the umlaut code point.	CNV	CNV
Conversion	HEXTORAW	HEXTORAW(CLOB)	No	CNV
Conversion	CONVERT	select CONVERT(clobCol,'WE8DEC','WE8HP') from...	Yes	CNV
Conversion	TO_DATE	TO_DATE(clobCol)	CNV	CNV
Conversion	TO_NUMBER	TO_NUMBER(clobCol)	CNV	CNV
Conversion	TO_TIMESTAMP	TO_TIMESTAMP(clobCol)	No	CNV
Conversion	TO_MULTI_BYTE TO_SINGLE_BYTE	TO_MULTI_BYTE(clobCol) TO_SINGLE_BYTE(clobCol)	CNV	CNV
Conversion	TO_CHAR	TO_CHAR(clobCol)	Yes	Yes
Conversion	TO_NCHAR	TO_NCHAR(clobCol)	Yes	Yes
Conversion	TO_LOB	INSERT INTO... SELECT TO_LOB(longCol)...  Note that TO_LOB can only be used to create or insert into a table with LOB columns as SELECT FROM a table with a LONG column.	N/A	N/A
Conversion	TO_CLOB	TO_CLOB(varchar2Col)	Yes	Yes
Conversion	TO_NCLOB	TO_NCLOB(varchar2Clob)	Yes	Yes

**Table 16–1 (Cont.) SQL VARCHAR2 Functions and Operators on LOBs**

Category	Operator / Function	SQL Example / Comments	SQL	PL/SQL
Aggregate Functions	COUNT	select count(clobCol) from...	No	N/A
Aggregate Functions	MAX, MIN	select MAX(clobCol) from...	No	N/A
Aggregate Functions	GROUPING	select grouping(clobCol) from... group by cube (clobCol);	No	N/A
Other Functions	GREATEST, LEAST	select GREATEST (clobCol1, clobCol2) from...	No	CNV
Other Functions	DECODE	select DECODE(clobCol, condition1, value1, defaultValue) from...	CNV	CNV
Other Functions	NVL	select NVL(clobCol,'NULL') from...	Yes	Yes
Other Functions	DUMP	select DUMP(clobCol) from...	No	N/A
Other Functions	VSIZE	select VSIZE(clobCol) from...	No	N/A
Unicode	INSTR2, SUBSTR2, LENGTH2, LIKE2	These functions use UCS2 code point semantics.	No	CNV
Unicode	INSTR4, SUBSTR4, LENGTH4, LIKE4	These functions use UCS4 code point semantics.	No	CNV
Unicode	INSTRC, SUBSTRC, LENGTHC, LIKEC	These functions use complete character semantics.	No	CNV

## UNICODE Support

Variations on the `INSTR`, `SUBSTR`, `LENGTH`, and `LIKE` functions are provided for Unicode support. (These variations are indicated as "Unicode" in the "Category" column of [Table 16–1](#).)

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*
- *Oracle Database Advanced Application Developer's Guide*
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide*

for a detailed description on the usage of UNICODE functions.

## Codepoint Semantics

Codepoint semantics of the `INSTR`, `SUBSTR`, `LENGTH`, and `LIKE` functions, described in [Table 16–1](#), differ depending on the data type of the argument passed to the function. These functions use different codepoint semantics depending on whether the argument is a `VARCHAR2` or a `CLOB` type as follows:

- When the argument is a `CLOB`, UCS2 codepoint semantics are used for all character sets.
- When the argument is a character type, such as `VARCHAR2`, the default codepoint semantics are used for the given character set:

- UCS2 codepoint semantics are used for AL16UTF16 and UTF8 character sets.
- UCS4 codepoint semantics are used for all other character sets, such as AL32UTF8.
- If you are storing character data in a CLOB or NCLOB, then note that the amount and offset parameters for any APIs that read or write data to the CLOB or NCLOB are specified in UCS2 codepoints. In some character sets, a full character consists one or more UCS2 codepoints called a surrogate pair. In this scenario, you must ensure that the amount or offset you specify does not cut into a full character. This avoids reading or writing a partial character.
- Starting from 10g, Oracle Database helps to detect half surrogate pair on read/write boundaries in such scenarios. In the case of read, the offset and amount is adjusted accordingly to avoid returning a half character, in which case the amount returned could be less than what is asked for. In the case of write, an error is raised to prevent from corrupting the existing data caused by overwriting a partial character in the destination CLOB or NCLOB.

## Return Values for SQL Semantics on LOBs

The return type of a function or operator that takes a LOB or VARCHAR2 is the same as the data type of the argument passed to the function or operator.

Functions that take more than one argument, such as CONCAT, return a LOB data type if one or more arguments is a LOB. For example, CONCAT (CLOB, VARCHAR2) returns a CLOB.

**See Also:** *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for details on the CONCAT function and the concatenation operator (||).

A LOB instance is always accessed and manipulated through a LOB locator. This is also true for return values: SQL functions and operators return a LOB locator when the return value is a LOB instance.

Any LOB instance returned by a SQL function is a temporary LOB instance. LOB instances in tables (persistent LOBs) are not modified by SQL functions, even when the function is used in the SELECT list of a query.

## LENGTH Return Value for LOBs

The return value of the LENGTH function differs depending on whether the argument passed is a LOB or a character string:

- If the input is a character string of length zero, then LENGTH returns NULL.
- For a CLOB of length zero, or an empty locator such as that returned by EMPTY\_CLOB(), the LENGTH and DBMS\_LOB.GETLENGTH functions return FALSE.

## Implicit Conversion of LOB Data Types in SQL

Some LOB data types support implicit conversion and can be used in operations such as cross-type assignment and parameter passing. These conversions are processed at the SQL layer and can be performed in all client interfaces that use LOB types.



## Implicit Conversion Between CLOB and NCLOB Data Types in SQL

The database enables you to perform operations such as cross-type assignment and cross-type parameter passing between CLOB and NCLOB data types. The database performs implicit conversions between these types when necessary to preserve properties such as character set formatting.

Note that, when implicit conversions occur, each character in the source LOB is changed to the character set of the destination LOB, if needed. In this situation, some degradation of performance may occur if the data size is large. When the character set of the destination and the source are the same, there is no degradation of performance.

After an implicit conversion between CLOB and NCLOB types, the destination LOB is implicitly created as a temporary LOB. This new temporary LOB is independent from the source LOB. If the implicit conversion occurs as part of a define operation in a SELECT statement, then any modifications to the destination LOB do not affect the persistent LOB in the table that the LOB was selected from as shown in the following example:

```
SQL> -- check lob length before update
SQL> select dbms_lob.getlength(ad_sourcetext) from Print_media
       2      where product_id=3106 and ad_id = 13001;

DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(AD_SOURCETEXT)
-----
                205

SQL>
SQL> declare
       2  clob1 clob;
       3  amt number:=10;
       4  BEGIN
       5  -- select a clob column into a clob, no implicit conversion
       6  SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob1 FROM Print_media
       7  WHERE product_id=3106 and ad_id=13001 FOR UPDATE;
       8
       9  dbms_lob.trim(clob1, amt); -- Trim the selected lob to 10 bytes
      10 END;
      11 /

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> -- Modification is performed on clob1 which points to the
SQL> -- clob column in the table
SQL> select dbms_lob.getlength(ad_sourcetext) from Print_media
       2      where product_id=3106 and ad_id = 13001;

DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(AD_SOURCETEXT)
-----
                10

SQL>
SQL> rollback;

Rollback complete.

SQL> -- check lob length before update
SQL> select dbms_lob.getlength(ad_sourcetext) from Print_media
       2      where product_id=3106 and ad_id = 13001;

DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(AD_SOURCETEXT)
```

```

-----
                205

SQL>
SQL> declare
  2  nclob1 nclob;
  3  amt number:=10;
  4  BEGIN
  5
  6  -- select a clob column into a nclob, implicit conversion occurs
  7  SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO nclob1 FROM Print_media
  8         WHERE product_id=3106 and ad_id=13001 FOR UPDATE;
  9
 10  dbms_lob.trim(nclob1, amt); -- Trim the selected lob to 10 bytes
 11  END;
 12  /

PL/SQL procedure successfully completed.

SQL> -- Modification to nclob1 does not affect the clob in the table,
SQL> -- because nclob1 is a independent temporary LOB

SQL> select dbms_lob.getlength(ad_sourcetext) from Print_media
  2         where product_id=3106 and ad_id = 13001;

DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH(AD_SOURCETEXT)
-----
                205

```

**See Also:**

- ["Implicit Conversions Between CLOB and VARCHAR2"](#) on page 17-1 for information on PL/SQL semantics support for implicit conversions between CLOB and VARCHAR2 types.
- ["Implicit Character Set Conversions with LOBs"](#) on page 11-4 for more information on implicit character set conversions when loading LOBs from BFILEs.
- *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for details on implicit conversions supported for all data types.

## Unsupported Use of LOBs in SQL

[Table 16–2](#) lists SQL operations that are not supported on LOB columns.

**Table 16–2** *Unsupported Usage of LOBs in SQL*

SQL Operations Not Supported	Example of unsupported usage
SELECT DISTINCT	SELECT DISTINCT clobCol from...
SELECT clause ORDER BY	SELECT... ORDER BY clobCol
SELECT clause GROUP BY	SELECT avg(num) FROM... GROUP BY clobCol

**Table 16–2 (Cont.) Unsupported Usage of LOBs in SQL**

SQL Operations Not Supported	Example of unsupported usage
UNION, INTERSECT, MINUS (Note that UNION ALL works for LOBs.)	SELECT clobCol1 from tab1 UNION SELECT clobCol2 from tab2;
Join queries	SELECT... FROM... WHERE tab1.clobCol = tab2.clobCol
Index columns	CREATE INDEX clobIndx ON tab(clobCol)...

## VARCHAR2 and RAW Semantics for LOBs

The following semantics, used with VARCHAR2 and RAW data types, also apply to LOBs:

- Defining a CHAR buffer on a CLOB
 

You can define a VARCHAR2 for a CLOB and RAW for a BLOB column. You can also define CLOB and BLOB types for VARCHAR2 and RAW columns.
- Selecting a CLOB column into a CHAR buffer or VARCHAR2
 

If a CLOB column is selected into a VARCHAR2 variable, then data stored in the CLOB column is retrieved and put into the CHAR buffer. If the buffer is not large enough to contain all the CLOB data, then a truncation error is thrown and no data is written to the buffer. After successful completion of the SELECT operation, the VARCHAR2 variable holds as a regular character buffer.

In contrast, when a CLOB column is selected into a local CLOB variable, the CLOB locator is fetched.
- Selecting a BLOB column into a RAW
 

When a BLOB column is selected into a RAW variable, the BLOB data is copied into the RAW buffer. If the size of the BLOB exceeds the size of the buffer, then a truncation error is thrown and no data is written to the buffer.

## LOBs Returned from SQL Functions

When a LOB is returned from a SQL function, the result returned is a temporary LOB. Your application should view the temporary LOB as local storage for the data returned from the SELECT operation as follows:

- In PL/SQL, the temporary LOB has the same lifetime (duration) as other local PL/SQL program variables. It can be passed to subsequent SQL or PL/SQL VARCHAR2 functions or queries as a PL/SQL local variable. The temporary LOB goes out of scope at the end of the program block at which time, the LOB is freed. These are the same semantics as those for PL/SQL VARCHAR2 variables. At any time, nonetheless, you can use a DBMS\_LOB.FREETEMPORARY() call to release the resources taken by the local temporary LOBs.

---

**Note:** If the SQL statement returns a LOB or a LOB is an OUT parameter for a PL/SQL function or procedure, you must test if it is a temporary LOB, and if it is, then free it after you are done with it.

---

- In OCI, the temporary LOBs returned from SQL queries are always in session duration, unless a user-defined duration is present, in which case, the temporary LOBs are in the user-defined duration.

---



---

**Caution:** Ensure that your temporary tablespace is large enough to store all temporary LOB results returned from queries in your program(s).

---



---

The following example illustrates selecting out a CLOB column into a VARCHAR2 and returning the result as a CHAR buffer of declared size:

```

DECLARE
  vc1 VARCHAR2(32000);
  lb1 CLOB;
  lb2 CLOB;
BEGIN
  SELECT clobCol1 INTO vc1 FROM tab WHERE colID=1;
  -- lb1 is a temporary LOB
  SELECT clobCol2 || clobCol3 INTO lb1 FROM tab WHERE colID=2;

  lb2 := vc1 || lb1;
  -- lb2 is a still temporary LOB, so the persistent data in the database
  -- is not modified. An update is necessary to modify the table data.
  UPDATE tab SET clobCol1 = lb2 WHERE colID = 1;

  DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(lb2); -- Free up the space taken by lb2

  <... some more queries ...>

END; -- at the end of the block, lb1 is automatically freed

```

## IS NULL and IS NOT NULL Usage with VARCHAR2s and CLOBs

You can use the `IS NULL` and `IS NOT NULL` operators with LOB columns. When used with LOBs, these operators determine whether a LOB locator is stored in the row.

---



---

**Note:** In the SQL 92 standard, a character string of length zero is distinct from a NULL string. The return value of `IS NULL` differs when you pass a LOB compared to a VARCHAR2:

- When you pass an initialized LOB of length zero to the `IS NULL` function, zero (`FALSE`) is returned. These semantics are compliant with the SQL standard.
  - When you pass a VARCHAR2 of length zero to the `IS NULL` function, `TRUE` is returned.
- 
- 

## WHERE Clause Usage with LOBs

SQL functions with LOBs as arguments, except functions that compare LOB values, are allowed in predicates of the `WHERE` clause. For example, the `LENGTH` function can be included in the predicate of the `WHERE` clause:

```

CREATE TABLE t (n NUMBER, c CLOB);
INSERT INTO t VALUES (1, 'abc');

SELECT * FROM t WHERE c IS NOT NULL;
SELECT * FROM t WHERE LENGTH(c) > 0;
SELECT * FROM t WHERE c LIKE '%a%';
SELECT * FROM t WHERE SUBSTR(c, 1, 2) LIKE '%b%';

```

```
SELECT * FROM t WHERE INSTR(c, 'b') = 2;
```

## Built-in Functions for Remote LOBs and BFILES

Whatever SQL built-in functions and user-defined functions that are supported on local LOBs and BFILES are also supported on remote LOBs and BFILES, as long as the final value returned by nested functions is not a LOB. This includes functions for remote persistent and temporary LOBs and for BFILES.

Built-in SQL functions which are executed on a remote site can be part of any SQL statement, like SELECT, INSERT, UPDATE, and DELETE. For example:

```
SELECT LENGTH(ad_sourcetext) FROM print_media@remote_site -- CLOB
SELECT LENGTH(ad_fltextn) FROM print_media@remote_site; -- NCLOB
SELECT LENGTH(ad_composite) FROM print_media@remote_site; -- BLOB
SELECT product_id from print_media@remote_site WHERE LENGTH(ad_sourcetext) > 3;
```

```
UPDATE print_media@remote_site SET product_id = 2 WHERE LENGTH(ad_sourcetext) > 3;
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(foo@dbs2(...)) FROM dual@dbs2;
-- where foo@dbs2 returns a temporary LOB
```

The SQL functions fall under the following (not necessarily exclusive) categories:

1. SQL functions that are not supported on LOBs. These functions are relevant only for CLOBs: an example is DECODE.

These functions **cannot be supported** on remote LOBs because they are not supported on local LOBs.

2. Functions taking exactly one LOB argument (all other arguments are of other data types) and not returning a LOB. These functions are relevant only for CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BLOBs: an example is LENGTH and **it is supported**. For example:

```
SELECT LENGTH(ad_composite) FROM print_media@remote_site;
SELECT LENGTH(ad_header.logo) FROM print_media@remote_site; -- LOB in object

SELECT product_id from print_media@remote_site WHERE LENGTH(ad_sourcetext) > 3;
```

3. Functions that return a LOB. **All these functions are relevant only for CLOBs and NCLOBs**. These functions may return the original LOB or produce a temporary LOB. These functions can be performed on the remote site, as long as the result returned to the local site is not a LOB.

Functions returning a temporary LOB are: REPLACE, SUBSTR, CONCAT, ||, TRIM, LTRIM, RTRIM, LOWER, UPPER, NLS\_LOWER, NLS\_UPPER, LPAD, and RPAD.

Functions returning the original LOB locator are: NVL, DECODE, and CASE. Note that even though DECODE and CASE are not supported currently to operate on LOBs, they could operate on other data types and return a LOB.

For example, **the following statements are supported**:

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(CONCAT(ad_sourcetext, ad_sourcetext)) FROM
print_media@remote_site;
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(SUBSTR(ad_fltextnfs, 1, 3)) FROM
print_media@remote_site;
```

**But the following statements are not supported:**

```
SELECT CONCAT(ad_sourcetext, ad_sourcetext) FROM
```

```
print_media@remote_site;
```

```
SELECT SUBSTR(ad_sourcetext, 1, 3) FROM print_media@remote_site;
```

#### 4. Functions that take in more than one LOB argument:

These are: INSTR, LIKE, REPLACE, CONCAT, ||, SUBSTR, TRIM, LTRIM, RTRIM, LPAD, and RPAD. All these functions are relevant only for CLOBs and NCLOBs.

These functions are supported only if all the LOB arguments are in the same dblink, and the value returned is not a LOB. For example, **the following is supported:**

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(CONCAT(ad_sourcetext, ad_sourcetext)) FROM  
print_media@remote_site; -- CLOB
```

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(CONCAT(ad_flgtextn, ad_flgtextn)) FROM  
print_media@remote_site; -- NCLOB
```

#### **But the following is not supported:**

```
SELECT TO_CHAR(CONCAT(a.ad_sourcetext, b.ad_sourcetext)) FROM  
print_media@db1 a, print_media@db2 b WHERE a.product_id = b.product_id;
```

---

---

## PL/SQL Semantics for LOBs

This chapter contains these topics:

- [PL/SQL Statements and Variables](#)
- [Implicit Conversions Between CLOB and VARCHAR2](#)
- [Explicit Conversion Functions](#)
- [PL/SQL CLOB Comparison Rules](#)
- [PL/SQL Functions for Remote LOBs and BFILEs](#)

### PL/SQL Statements and Variables

In PL/SQL, semantic changes have been made.

---

---

**Note:** The following discussions, concerning CLOBs and VARCHAR2s, also apply to BLOBs and RAWs, unless otherwise noted. In the text, BLOB and RAW are not explicitly mentioned.

---

---

PL/SQL semantics support is described in the following sections:

- [Implicit Conversions Between CLOB and VARCHAR2](#)
- [Explicit Conversion Functions](#)
- [VARCHAR2 and CLOB in PL/SQL Built-In Functions](#)
- [PL/SQL CLOB Comparison Rules](#)

### Implicit Conversions Between CLOB and VARCHAR2

Implicit conversions from CLOB to VARCHAR2 and from VARCHAR2 to CLOB data types are allowed in PL/SQL. These conversions enable you to perform the following operations in your application:

- CLOB columns can be selected into VARCHAR2 PL/SQL variables
- VARCHAR2 columns can be selected into CLOB variables
- Assignment and parameter passing between CLOBs and VARCHAR2s

#### Accessing a CLOB as a VARCHAR2 in PL/SQL

The following example illustrates the way CLOB data is accessed when the CLOBs are treated as VARCHAR2s:

```

declare
    myStoryBuf VARCHAR2(4001);
BEGIN
    SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO myStoryBuf FROM print_media WHERE ad_id = 12001;
    -- Display Story by printing myStoryBuf directly
END;
/

```

### Assigning a CLOB to a VARCHAR2 in PL/SQL

```

declare
myLOB CLOB;
BEGIN
SELECT 'ABCDE' INTO myLOB FROM print_media WHERE ad_id = 11001;
-- myLOB is a temporary LOB.
-- Use myLOB as a lob locator
    DBMS_OUTPUT.PUT_LINE('Is temp? ' || DEBMS_LOB.ISTEMPORARY(myLOB));
END;
/

```

## Explicit Conversion Functions

In SQL and PL/SQL, the following explicit conversion functions convert other data types to and from CLOB, NCLOB, and BLOB as part of the LONG-to-LOB migration:

- `TO_CLOB()`: Converting from `VARCHAR2`, `NVARCHAR2`, or `NCLOB` to a `CLOB`
- `TO_NCLOB()`: Converting from `VARCHAR2`, `NVARCHAR2`, or `CLOB` to an `NCLOB`
- `TO_BLOB()`: Converting from `RAW` to a `BLOB`
- `TO_CHAR()` converts a `CLOB` to a `CHAR` type. When you use this function to convert a character LOB into the database character set, if the LOB value to be converted is larger than the target type, then the database returns an error. Implicit conversions also raise an error if the LOB data does not fit.
- `TO_NCHAR()` converts an `NCLOB` to an `NCHAR` type. When you use this function to convert a character LOB into the national character set, if the LOB value to be converted is larger than the target type, then the database returns an error. Implicit conversions also raise an error if the LOB data does not fit.
- `CAST` does not directly support any of the LOB data types. When you use `CAST` to convert a `CLOB` value into a character data type, an `NCLOB` value into a national character data type, or a `BLOB` value into a `RAW` data type, the database implicitly converts the LOB value to character or raw data and then explicitly casts the resulting value into the target data type. If the resulting value is larger than the target type, then the database returns an error.

Other explicit conversion functions are not supported, such as `TO_NUMBER()`, see [Table 16–1, "SQL VARCHAR2 Functions and Operators on LOBs"](#). Conversion function details are explained in [Chapter 18, "Migrating Columns from LONGs to LOBs"](#).

### VARCHAR2 and CLOB in PL/SQL Built-In Functions

`CLOB` and `VARCHAR2` are still two distinct types. But depending on the usage, a `CLOB` can be passed to SQL and PL/SQL `VARCHAR2` built-in functions, used exactly like a `VARCHAR2`. Or the variable can be passed into `DEBMS_LOB` APIs, acting like a LOB locator. Please see the following combined example, "[CLOB Variables in PL/SQL](#)".



PL/SQL VARCHAR2 functions and operators can take CLOBs as arguments or operands.

When the size of a VARCHAR2 variable is not large enough to contain the result from a function that returns a CLOB, or a SELECT on a CLOB column, an error is raised and no operation is performed. This is consistent with VARCHAR2 semantics.

### CLOB Variables in PL/SQL

```

1 declare
2   myStory CLOB;
3   revisedStory CLOB;
4   myGist VARCHAR2(100);
5   revisedGist VARCHAR2(100);
6 BEGIN
7   -- select a CLOB column into a CLOB variable
8   SELECT Story INTO myStory FROM print_media WHERE product_id=10;
9   -- perform VARCHAR2 operations on a CLOB variable
10  revisedStory := UPPER(SUBSTR(myStory, 100, 1));
11  -- revisedStory is a temporary LOB
12  -- Concat a VARCHAR2 at the end of a CLOB
13  revisedStory := revisedStory || myGist;
14  -- The following statement raises an error because myStory is
15  -- longer than 100 bytes
16  myGist := myStory;
17 END;
```

Please note that in line 10 of "CLOB Variables in PL/SQL", a temporary CLOB is implicitly created and is pointed to by the revisedStory CLOB locator. In the current interface the line can be expanded as:

```

buffer VARCHAR2(32000)
DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(revisedStory);
buffer := UPPER(DBMS_LOB.SUBSTR(myStory,100,1));
DBMS_LOB.WRITE(revisedStory,length(buffer),1, buffer);
```

In line 13, myGist is appended to the end of the temporary LOB, which has the same effect of:

```
DBMS_LOB.WRITEAPPEND(revisedStory, myGist, length(myGist));
```

In some occasions, implicitly created temporary LOBs in PL/SQL statements can change the representation of LOB locators previously defined. Consider the next example.

### Change in Locator-Data Linkage

```

1 declare
2   myStory CLOB;
3   amt number:=100;
4   buffer VARCHAR2(100):='some data';
5 BEGIN
6   -- select a CLOB column into a CLOB variable
7   SELECT Story INTO myStory FROM print_media WHERE product_id=10;
8   DBMS_LOB.WRITE(myStory, amt, 1, buf);
9   -- write to the persistent LOB in the table
10
11  myStory:= UPPER(SUBSTR(myStory, 100, 1));
12  -- perform VARCHAR2 operations on a CLOB variable, temporary LOB created.
13  -- Changes are not reflected in the database table from this point on.
14
```

```
15 update print_media set Story = myStory WHERE product_id = 10;
16 -- an update is necessary to synchronize the data in the table.
17 END;
```

After line 7, `myStory` represents a persistent LOB in `print_media`.

The `DBMS_LOB.WRITE` call in line 8 directly writes the data to the table.

No `UPDATE` statement is necessary. Subsequently in line 11, a temporary LOB is created and assigned to `myStory` because `myStory` is now used like a local `VARCHAR2` variable. The LOB locator `myStory` now points to the newly-created temporary LOB.

Therefore, modifications to `myStory` are no longer reflected in the database. To propagate the changes to the database table, an `UPDATE` statement becomes necessary now. Note again that for the previous persistent LOB, the `UPDATE` is not required.

Temporary LOBs created in a program block as a result of a `SELECT` or an assignment are freed automatically at the end of the PL/SQL block or function or procedure. You must also free the temporary LOBs that were created with `DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY` to reclaim system resources and temporary tablespace. Do this by calling `DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY` on the CLOB variable.

---

---

**Note:** If the SQL statement returns a LOB or a LOB is an `OUT` parameter for a PL/SQL function or procedure, you must test if it is a temporary LOB, and if it is, then free it after you are done with it.

---

---

### Freeing Temporary LOBs Automatically and Manually

```
declare
    Story1 CLOB;
    Story2 CLOB;
    StoryCombined CLOB;
    StoryLower CLOB;
BEGIN
    SELECT Story INTO Story1 FROM print_media WHERE product_ID = 1;
    SELECT Story INTO Story2 FROM print_media WHERE product_ID = 2;
    StoryCombined := Story1 || Story2; -- StoryCombined is a temporary LOB
    -- Free the StoryCombined manually to free up space taken
    DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(StoryCombined);
    StoryLower := LOWER(Story1) || LOWER(Story2);
END; -- At the end of block, StoryLower is freed.
```

## PL/SQL CLOB Comparison Rules

Like `VARCHAR2`s, when a CLOB is compared with another CLOB or compared with a `VARCHAR2`, a set of rules determines the comparison. The rules are usually called a "collating sequence". In Oracle, `CHARS` and `VARCHAR2`s have slightly different sequences due to the blank padding of `CHARS`.

### CLOBs Follow the VARCHAR2 Collating Sequence

As a rule, CLOBs follow the same collating sequence as `VARCHAR2`s. That is, when a CLOB is compared, the result is consistent with if the CLOB data content is retrieved into a `VARCHAR2` buffer and the `VARCHAR2` is compared. The rule applies to all cases including comparisons between CLOB and CLOB, CLOB and `VARCHAR2`, and CLOB and `CHAR`.

---



---

**Note:** When a CLOB is compared with a CHAR string, it is always the *character* data of the CLOB being compared with the string. Likewise, when two CLOBs are compared, the data content of the two CLOBs are compared, *not their LOB locators*.

---



---

It makes no sense to compare CLOBs with non-character data, or with BLOBs. An error is returned in these cases.

## PL/SQL Functions for Remote LOBs and BFILES

Built-in and user-defined PL/SQL functions that are executed on the remote site and operate on remote LOBs and BFILES are allowed, as long as the final value returned by nested functions is not a LOB. Examples are:

```
SELECT product_id FROM print_media@dbs2 WHERE foo@dbs2(ad_sourcetext, 'aa') > 0;
-- foo is a user-define function returning a NUMBER
```

```
DELETE FROM print_media@dbs2 WHERE DBMS_LOB.GETLENGTH@dbs2(ad_graphic) = 0;
```

## Restrictions on Remote User-Defined Functions

1. The restrictions that apply to SQL functions apply here also.

**See Also:** ["Built-in Functions for Remote LOBs and BFILES"](#) on page 16-11

2. A function in one dblink cannot operate on LOB data in another dblink. For example, **the following statement is not supported:**

```
SELECT a.product_id FROM print_media@dbs1 a, print_media@dbs2 b WHERE
CONTAINS@dbs1(b.ad_sourcetext, 'aa') > 0;
```

3. One query block cannot contain tables and functions at different dblinks. For example, **the following statement is not supported:**

```
SELECT a.product_id FROM print_media@dbs2 a, print_media@dbs3 b
WHERE CONTAINS@dbs2(a.ad_sourcetext, 'aa') > 0 AND
foo@dbs3(b.ad_sourcetext) > 0;
-- foo is a user-defined function in dbs3
```

4. There is no support for performing remote LOB operations (that is, DBMS\_LOB) from within PL/SQL, other than issuing SQL statements from PL/SQL.

## Remote Functions in PL/SQL, OCI, and JDBC

All the SQL statements listed above work the same if they are executed from inside PL/SQL, OCI, and JDBC. No additional functionality is provided.



---

---

## Migrating Columns from LONGs to LOBs

This chapter describes techniques for migrating tables that use LONG data types to LOB data types. This chapter contains these topics:

- [Benefits of Migrating LONG Columns to LOB Columns](#)
- [Preconditions for Migrating LONG Columns to LOB Columns](#)
- [Using utldtree.sql to Determine Where Your Application Needs Change](#)
- [Converting Tables from LONG to LOB Data Types](#)
- [Migrating Applications from LONGs to LOBs](#)

**See Also:** The following chapters in this book describe support for LOB data types in various programming environments:

- [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 17, "PL/SQL Semantics for LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 20, "Data Interface for Persistent LOBs"](#)

### Benefits of Migrating LONG Columns to LOB Columns

There are many benefits to migrating table columns from LONG data types to LOB data types.

---

---

**Note:** You can use the techniques described in this chapter to do either of the following:

- Convert columns of type LONG to either CLOB or NCLOB columns
- Convert columns of type LONG RAW to BLOB type columns

Unless otherwise noted, discussions in this chapter regarding "LONG to LOB" conversions apply to both of these data type conversions.

---

---

The following list compares the semantics of LONG and LOB data types in various application development scenarios:

- The number of LONG type columns is limited. Any given table can have a maximum of only one LONG type column. The number of LOB type columns in a table is not limited.
- You can use the data interface for LOBs to enable replication of tables that contain LONG or LONG RAW columns. Replication is allowed on LOB columns, but is not

supported for LONG and LONG RAW columns. The database omits columns containing LONG and LONG RAW data types from replicated tables.

If a table is replicated or has materialized views, and its LONG column is changed to LOB, then you may have to manually fix the replicas.

---

---

**Caution:** Oracle does not support converting LOBs into LONGs. Ensure that you have no requirement to maintain any column as a LONG before converting it into a LOB.

---

---

## Preconditions for Migrating LONG Columns to LOB Columns

This section describes preconditions that must be met before converting a LONG column to a LOB column.

**See Also:** ["Migrating Applications from LONGs to LOBs"](#) on page 18-7 before converting your table to determine whether any limitations on LOB columns prevent you from converting to LOBs.

## Dropping a Domain Index on a LONG Column Before Converting to a LOB

Any domain index on a LONG column must be dropped before converting the LONG column to LOB column. See ["Indexes on Columns Converted from LONG to LOB Data Types"](#) on page 18-8 for more information.

## Preventing Generation of Redo Space on Tables Converted to LOB Data Types

Generation of redo space can cause performance problems during the process of converting LONG columns. Redo changes for the table are logged during the conversion process only if the table has LOGGING on.

Redo changes for the column being converted from LONG to LOB are logged only if the storage characteristics of the LOB column indicate LOGGING. The logging setting (LOGGING or NOLOGGING) for the LOB column is inherited from the tablespace in which the LOB is created.

To prevent generation of redo space during migration, do the following before migrating your table (syntax is in BNF):

1. ALTER TABLE Long\_tab NOLOGGING;
2. ALTER TABLE Long\_tab MODIFY (long\_col CLOB [DEFAULT <default\_val>]) LOB (long\_col) STORE AS (NOCACHE NOLOGGING);

Note that you must also specify NOCACHE when you specify NOLOGGING in the STORE AS clause.

3. ALTER TABLE Long\_tab MODIFY LOB (long\_col) (CACHE);
4. ALTER TABLE Long\_tab LOGGING;
5. Make a backup of the tablespaces containing the table and the LOB column.

## Using utldtree.sql to Determine Where Your Application Needs Change

You can use the utility, `rdbms/admin/utldtree.sql`, to determine which parts of your application require rewriting when you migrate your table from LONG to LOB column types. This utility enables you to recursively see all objects that are dependent

on a given object. For example, you can see all objects which depend on a table with a LONG column. You can only see objects for which you have permission.

Instructions on how to use `utldtree.sql` are documented in the file itself. Also, `utldtree.sql` is only needed for PL/SQL. For SQL and OCI, you have no requirement to change your applications.

## Converting Tables from LONG to LOB Data Types

This section describes the following techniques for migrating existing tables from LONG to LOB data types:

- "Using ALTER TABLE to Convert LONG Columns to LOB Columns" on page 18-3
- "Copying a LONG to a LOB Column Using the TO\_LOB Operator" on page 18-4
- "Online Redefinition of Tables with LONG Columns" on page 18-5 where high availability is critical
- "Using Oracle Data Pump to Migrate a Database" on page 18-7 when you can convert using this utility

### Using ALTER TABLE to Convert LONG Columns to LOB Columns

You can use the ALTER TABLE statement in SQL to convert a LONG column to a LOB column. To do so, use the following syntax:

```
ALTER TABLE [<schema>.<table_name>
  MODIFY ( <long_column_name> { CLOB | BLOB | NCLOB }
  [DEFAULT <default_value>]
) [LOB_storage_clause];
```

For example, if you had a table that was created as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE Long_tab (id NUMBER, long_col LONG);
```

then you can change the column `long_col` in table `Long_tab` to data type CLOB using following ALTER TABLE statement:

```
ALTER TABLE Long_tab MODIFY ( long_col CLOB );
```

---



---

**Note:** The ALTER TABLE statement copies the contents of the table into a new space, and frees the old space at the end of the operation. This temporarily doubles the space requirements.

---



---

Note that when using the ALTER TABLE statement to convert a LONG column to a LOB column, only the following options are allowed:

- DEFAULT which enables you to specify a default value for the LOB column.
- The *LOB\_storage\_clause*, which enables you to specify the LOB storage characteristics for the converted column, can be specified in the MODIFY clause.

Other ALTER TABLE options are not allowed when converting a LONG column to a LOB type column.

### Migration Issues

General issues concerning migration include the following:

- All constraints of your previous LONG columns are maintained for the new LOB columns. The only constraint allowed on LONG columns are NULL and NOT NULL. To alter the constraints for these columns, or alter any other columns or properties of this table, you have to do so in a subsequent ALTER TABLE statement.
- If you do not specify a default value, then the default value for the LONG column becomes the default value of the LOB column.
- Most of the existing triggers on your table are still usable, however UPDATE OF triggers can cause issues. See ["Migrating Applications from LONGs to LOBs"](#) on page 18-7 for more details.

## Copying a LONG to a LOB Column Using the TO\_LOB Operator

If you do not want to use ALTER TABLE, as described earlier in this section, then you can use the TO\_LOB operator on a LONG column to copy it to a LOB column. You can use the CREATE TABLE AS SELECT statement or the INSERT AS SELECT statement with the TO\_LOB operator to copy data from a LONG column to a CLOB or NCLOB column, or from a LONG RAW column to a BLOB column. For example, if you have a table with a LONG column that was created as follows:

```
CREATE TABLE Long_tab (id NUMBER, long_col LONG);
```

then you can do the following to copy the column to a LOB column:

```
CREATE TABLE Lob_tab (id NUMBER, clob_col CLOB);
INSERT INTO Lob_tab SELECT id, TO_LOB(long_col) FROM long_tab;
COMMIT;
```

If the INSERT returns an error (because of lack of undo space), then you can incrementally migrate LONG data to the LOB column using the WHERE clause. After you ensure that the data is accurately copied, you can drop the original table and create a view or synonym for the new table using one of the following sequences:

```
DROP TABLE Long_tab;
CREATE VIEW Long_tab (id, long_col) AS SELECT * from Lob_tab;
```

or

```
DROP TABLE Long_tab;
CREATE SYNONYM Long_tab FOR Lob_tab;
```

This series of operations is equivalent to changing the data type of the column Long\_col of table Long\_tab from LONG to CLOB. With this technique, you have to re-create any constraints, triggers, grants and indexes on the new table.

Use of the TO\_LOB operator is subject to the following limitations:

- You can use TO\_LOB to copy data to a LOB column, but not to a LOB attribute of an object type.
- You cannot use TO\_LOB with a remote table. For example, the following statements do not work:

```
INSERT INTO tb1@dblink (lob_col) SELECT TO_LOB(long_col) FROM tb2;
INSERT INTO tb1 (lob_col) SELECT TO_LOB(long_col) FROM tb2@dblink;
CREATE TABLE tb1 AS SELECT TO_LOB(long_col) FROM tb2@dblink;
```

- The TO\_LOB operator cannot be used in the CREATE TABLE AS SELECT statement to convert a LONG or LONG RAW column to a LOB column when creating an index organized table.



To work around this limitation, create the index organized table, and then do an INSERT AS SELECT of the LONG or LONG RAW column using the TO\_LOB operator.

- You cannot use TO\_LOB inside any PL/SQL block.

## Online Redefinition of Tables with LONG Columns

Tables with LONG and LONG RAW columns can be migrated using online table redefinition. This technique is suitable for migrating LONG columns in database tables where high availability is critical.

To use this technique, you must convert LONG columns to LOB types during the redefinition process as follows:

- Any LONG column must be converted to a CLOB or NCLOB column.
- Any LONG RAW column must be converted to a BLOB column.

This conversion is performed using the TO\_LOB() operator in the column mapping of the DBMS\_REDEFINITION.START\_REDEF\_TABLE() procedure.

---

**Note:** You cannot perform online redefinition of tables with LONG or LONG RAW columns unless you convert the columns to LOB types as described in this section.

---

General tasks involved in the online redefinition process are given in the following list. Issues specific to converting LONG and LONG RAW columns are called out. See the related documentation referenced at the end of this section for additional details on the online redefinition process that are not described here.

- Create an empty interim table. This table holds the migrated data when the redefinition process is done. In the interim table:
  - Define a CLOB or NCLOB column for each LONG column in the original table that you are migrating.
  - Define a BLOB column for each LONG RAW column in the original table that you are migrating.
- Start the redefinition process. To do so, call DBMS\_REDEFINITION.START\_REDEF\_TABLE and pass the column mapping using the TO\_LOB operator as follows:

```
DBMS_REDEFINITION.START_REDEF_TABLE(
    'schema_name',
    'original_table',
    'interim_table',
    'TO_LOB(long_col_name) lob_col_name',
    'options_flag',
    'orderby_cols');
```

where *long\_col\_name* is the name of the LONG or LONG RAW column that you are converting in the original table and *lob\_col\_name* is the name of the LOB column in the interim table. This LOB column holds the converted data.

- Call the DBMS\_REDEFINITION.COPY\_TABLE\_DEPENDENTS procedure as described in the related documentation.
- Call the DBMS\_REDEFINITION.FINISH\_REDEF\_TABLE procedure as described in the related documentation.

### Parallel Online Redefinition

On a system with sufficient resources for parallel execution, redefinition of a LONG column to a LOB column can be executed in parallel under the following conditions:

In the case where the destination table is non-partitioned:

- The segment used to store the LOB column in the destination table belongs to a locally managed tablespace with Automatic Segment Space Management (ASSM) enabled, which is now the default.
- There is a simple mapping from one LONG column to one LOB column, and the destination table has only one LOB column.

In the case where the destination table is partitioned, the normal methods for parallel execution for partitioning apply. When the destination table is partitioned, then online redefinition is executed in parallel.

### Example of Online Redefinition

The following example demonstrates online redefinition with LOB columns.

```

REM Grant privileges required for online redefinition.
GRANT execute ON DBMS_REDEFINITION TO pm;
GRANT ALTER ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT DROP ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT LOCK ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT CREATE ANY TABLE TO pm;
GRANT SELECT ANY TABLE TO pm;

REM Privileges required to perform cloning of dependent objects.
GRANT CREATE ANY TRIGGER TO pm;
GRANT CREATE ANY INDEX TO pm;

connect pm/passwd

drop table cust;
create table cust(c_id number primary key,
                 c_zip number,
                 c_name varchar(30) default null,
                 c_long long
                );
insert into cust values(1, 94065, 'hhh', 'ttt');

-- Creating Interim Table
-- There is no requirement to specify constraints because they are
-- copied over from the original table.
create table cust_int(c_id number not null,
                    c_zip number,
                    c_name varchar(30) default null,
                    c_long clob
                   );

declare
  col_mapping varchar2(1000);
BEGIN
-- map all the columns in the interim table to the original table
col_mapping :=
    'c_id          c_id , |||
    'c_zip        c_zip , |||
    'c_name       c_name, |||
    'to_lob(c_long) c_long';

```

```

dbms_redefinition.start_redef_table('pm', 'cust', 'cust_int', col_mapping);
END;
/

declare
  error_count pls_integer := 0;
BEGIN
  dbms_redefinition.copy_table_dependents('pm', 'cust', 'cust_int',
                                         1, true, true, true, false,
                                         error_count);

  dbms_output.put_line('errors := ' || to_char(error_count));
END;
/

exec dbms_redefinition.finish_redef_table('pm', 'cust', 'cust_int');

-- Drop the interim table
drop table cust_int;

desc cust;

-- The following insert statement fails. This illustrates
-- that the primary key constraint on the c_id column is
-- preserved after migration.

insert into cust values(1, 94065, 'hhh', 'ttt');

select * from cust;

```

---

**See Also:** The following related documentation provides additional details on the redefinition process described earlier in this section:

- *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* gives detailed procedures and examples of redefining tables online.
  - *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* includes information on syntax and other details on usage of procedures in the DBMS\_REDEFINITION package.
- 

## Using Oracle Data Pump to Migrate a Database

If you are exporting data as part of a migration to a new database, create a table on the destination database with LOB columns and Data Pump calls the LONG-to-LOB function implicitly.

For details on using Oracle Data Pump, refer to *Oracle Database Utilities*.

## Migrating Applications from LONGs to LOBs

This section discusses differences between LONG and LOB data types that may impact your application migration plans or require you to modify your application.

Most APIs that work with LONG data types in the PL/SQL and OCI environments are enhanced to also work with LOB data types. These APIs are collectively referred to as the *data interface for persistent LOBs*, or simply the *data interface*. Among other things, the data interface provides the following benefits:

- Changes needed are minimal in PL/SQL and OCI applications that use tables with columns converted from LONG to LOB data types.
- You can work with LOB data types in your application without having to deal with LOB locators.

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 20, "Data Interface for Persistent LOBs"](#) for details on PL/SQL and OCI APIs included in the data interface.
- [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#) for details on SQL syntax supported for LOB data types.
- [Chapter 17, "PL/SQL Semantics for LOBs"](#) for details on PL/SQL syntax supported for LOB data types.

## LOB Columns Are Not Allowed in Clustered Tables

LOB columns are not allowed in clustered tables, whereas LONGs are allowed. If a table is a part of a cluster, then any LONG or LONG RAW column cannot be changed to a LOB column.

## LOB Columns Are Not Allowed in AFTER UPDATE OF Triggers

You cannot have LOB columns in the UPDATE OF list of an AFTER UPDATE OF trigger. LONG columns are allowed in such triggers. For example, the following create trigger statement is not valid:

```
CREATE TABLE t(lobcol CLOB);
CREATE TRIGGER trig AFTER UPDATE OF lobcol ON t ...;
```

All other triggers work on LOB columns.

## Indexes on Columns Converted from LONG to LOB Data Types

Indexes on any column of the table being migrated must be manually rebuilt after converting any LONG column to a LOB column. This includes function-based indexes.

Any function-based index on a LONG column is unusable during the conversion process and must be rebuilt after converting. Application code that uses function-based indexing should work without modification after converting.

Note that, any domain indexes on a LONG column must be dropped before converting the LONG column to LOB column. You can rebuild the domain index after converting.

To rebuild an index after converting, use the following steps:

1. Select the index from your original table as follows:

```
SELECT index_name FROM user_indexes WHERE table_name='LONG_TAB';
```

---

---

**Note:** The table name must be capitalized in this query.

---

---

2. For the selected index, use the command:

```
ALTER INDEX <index> REBUILD
```

## Empty LOBs Compared to NULL and Zero Length LONGs

A LOB column can hold an *empty* LOB. An empty LOB is a LOB locator that is fully initialized, but not populated with data. Because LONG data types do not use locators, the "empty" concept does not apply to LONG data types.

Both LOB column values and LONG column values, inserted with an initial value of NULL or an empty string literal, have a NULL value. Therefore, application code that uses NULL or zero-length values in a LONG column functions exactly the same after you convert the column to a LOB type column.

In contrast, a LOB initialized to empty has a non-NULL value as illustrated in the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE long_tab(id NUMBER, long_col LONG);
CREATE TABLE lob_tab(id NUMBER, lob_col CLOB);

INSERT INTO long_tab values(1, NULL);

REM      A zero length string inserts a NULL into the LONG column:
INSERT INTO long_tab values(1, '');

INSERT INTO lob_tab values(1, NULL);

REM      A zero length string inserts a NULL into the LOB column:
INSERT INTO lob_tab values(1, '');

REM      Inserting an empty LOB inserts a non-NULL value:
INSERT INTO lob_tab values(1, empty_clob());

DROP TABLE long_tab;
DROP TABLE lob_tab;
```

## Overloading with Anchored Types

For applications using anchored types, some overloaded variables resolve to different targets during the conversion to LOBs. For example, given the procedure `p` overloaded with specifications 1 and 2:

```
procedure p(l long) is ...;      -- (specification 1)
procedure p(c clob) is ...;     -- (specification 2)
```

and the procedure call:

```
declare
    var longtab.longcol%type;
BEGIN
    ...
    p(var);
    ...
END;
```

Prior to migrating from LONG to LOB columns, this call would resolve to specification 1. Once `longtab` is migrated to LOB columns this call resolves to specification 2. Note that this would also be true if the parameter type in specification 1 were a CHAR, VARCHAR2, RAW, LONG RAW.

If you have migrated your tables from LONG columns to LOB columns, then you must manually examine your applications and determine whether overloaded procedures must be changed.

Some applications that included overloaded procedures with LOB arguments before migrating may still break. This includes applications that do not use `LONG` anchored types. For example, given the following specifications (1 and 2) and procedure call for procedure `p`:

```
procedure p(n number) is ...;      -- (1)
procedure p(c clob) is ...;       -- (2)

p('123');                          -- procedure call
```

Before migrating, the only conversion allowed was `CHAR` to `NUMBER`, so specification 1 would be chosen. After migrating, both conversions are allowed, so the call is ambiguous and raises an overloading error.

## Some Implicit Conversions Are Not Supported for LOB Data Types

PL/SQL permits implicit conversion from `NUMBER`, `DATE`, `ROW_ID`, `BINARY_INTEGER`, and `PLS_INTEGER` data types to a `LONG`; however, implicit conversion from these data types to a LOB is not allowed.

If your application uses these implicit conversions, then you have to explicitly convert these types using the `TO_CHAR` operator for character data or the `TO_RAW` operator for binary data. For example, if your application has an assignment operation such as:

```
number_var := long_var; -- The RHS is a LOB variable after converting.
```

then you must modify your code as follows:

```
number_var := TO_CHAR(long_var);
-- Assuming that long_var is of type CLOB after conversion
```

The following conversions are not supported for LOB types:

- `BLOB` to `VARCHAR2`, `CHAR`, or `LONG`
- `CLOB` to `RAW` or `LONG RAW`

This applies to all operations where implicit conversion takes place. For example if you have a `SELECT` statement in your application as follows:

```
SELECT long_raw_column INTO my_varchar2 VARIABLE FROM my_table
```

and `long_raw_column` is a `BLOB` after converting your table, then the `SELECT` statement produces an error. To make this conversion work, you must use the `TO_RAW` operator to explicitly convert the `BLOB` to a `RAW` as follows:

```
SELECT TO_RAW(long_raw_column) INTO my_varchar2 VARIABLE FROM my_table
```

The same holds for selecting a `CLOB` into a `RAW` variable, or for assignments of `CLOB` to `RAW` and `BLOB` to `VARCHAR2`.

# Part V

---

## Using LOB APIs

This part provides details on using LOB APIs in supported environments. Examples of LOB API usage are given.

This part contains these chapters:

- [Chapter 19, "Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 20, "Data Interface for Persistent LOBs"](#)
- [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#)
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#)





---

---

## Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs

This chapter discusses LOB operations that differ between persistent and temporary LOB instances. This chapter contains these topics:

- [Persistent LOB Operations](#)
- [Temporary LOB Operations](#)
- [Creating Persistent and Temporary LOBs in PL/SQL](#)
- [Freeing Temporary LOBs in OCI](#)

### See Also:

- [Chapter 22, "Using LOB APIs"](#) gives details and examples of API usage for LOB APIs that can be used with either temporary or persistent LOBs.
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#) gives details and examples for usage of LOB APIs that operate on BFILES.

## Persistent LOB Operations

This section describes operations that apply only to persistent LOBs.

### Inserting a LOB into a Table

You can insert LOB instances into persistent LOB columns using any of the methods described in [Chapter 15, "DDL and DML Statements with LOBs"](#).

### Selecting a LOB from a Table

You can select a persistent LOB from a table just as you would any other data type. In the following example, persistent LOB instances of different types are selected into PL/SQL variables.

```
declare
  blob1 BLOB;
  blob2 BLOB;
  clob1 CLOB;
  nclob1 NCLOB;
BEGIN
  SELECT ad_photo INTO blob1 FROM print_media WHERE Product_id = 2268
  FOR UPDATE;
```

```
SELECT ad_photo INTO blob2 FROM print_media WHERE Product_id = 3106;

SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob1 FROM Print_media
      WHERE product_id=3106 and ad_id=13001 FOR UPDATE;

SELECT ad_fltexn INTO nclob1 FROM Print_media
      WHERE product_id=3060 and ad_id=11001 FOR UPDATE;

END;
/
show errors;
```

## Temporary LOB Operations

This section describes operations that apply only to temporary LOB instances.

### Creating and Freeing a Temporary LOB

To create a temporary LOB instance, you must declare a variable of the given LOB data type and pass the variable to the `CREATETEMPORARY` API. The temporary LOB instance exists in your application until it goes out of scope, your session terminates, or you explicitly free the instance. Freeing a temporary LOB instance is recommended to free system resources.

The following example demonstrates how to create and free a temporary LOB in the PL/SQL environment using the `DBMS_LOB` package.

```
declare
  blob1 BLOB;
  blob2 BLOB;
  clob1 CLOB;
  nclob1 NCLOB;
BEGIN
  -- create temp LOBs
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(blob1,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(blob2,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(clob1,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(nclob1,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);

  -- fill with data
  writeDataToLOB_proc(blob1);
  writeDataToLOB_proc(blob2);

  -- CHAR->LOB conversion
  clob1 := 'abcde';
  nclob1 := TO_NCLOB(clob1);

  -- Other APIs
  call_lob_apis(blob1, blob2, clob1, nclob1);

  -- free temp LOBs
  DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(blob1);
  DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(blob2);
  DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(clob1);
  DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(nclob1);

END;
/
show errors;
```

## Creating Persistent and Temporary LOBs in PL/SQL

The code example that follows illustrates how to create persistent and temporary LOBs in PL/SQL. This code is in the demonstration file:

```
$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/plsql/lobdemo.sql
```

This demonstration file also calls procedures in separate PL/SQL files that illustrate usage of other LOB APIs. For a list of these files and links to more information about related LOB APIs, see "[PL/SQL LOB Demonstration Files](#)" on page A-1.

```
-----
----- Persistent LOB operations -----
-----
```

```
declare
  blob1 BLOB;
  blob2 BLOB;
  clob1 CLOB;
  nclob1 NCLOB;
BEGIN
  SELECT ad_photo INTO blob1 FROM print_media WHERE Product_id = 2268
    FOR UPDATE;
  SELECT ad_photo INTO blob2 FROM print_media WHERE Product_id = 3106;

  SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO clob1 FROM Print_media
    WHERE product_id=3106 and ad_id=13001 FOR UPDATE;

  SELECT ad_fltextn INTO nclob1 FROM Print_media
    WHERE product_id=3060 and ad_id=11001 FOR UPDATE;

  call_lob_apis(blob1, blob2, clob1, nclob1);
  rollback;
END;
/
show errors;
```

```
-----
----- Temporary LOB operations -----
-----
```

```
declare
  blob1 BLOB;
  blob2 BLOB;
  clob1 CLOB;
  nclob1 NCLOB;
BEGIN
  -- create temp LOBs
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(blob1,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(blob2,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(clob1,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);
  DBMS_LOB.CREATETEMPORARY(nclob1,TRUE, DBMS_LOB.SESSION);

  -- fill with data
  writeDataToLOB_proc(blob1);
  writeDataToLOB_proc(blob2);

  -- CHAR->LOB conversion
  clob1 := 'abcde';
  nclob1 := TO_NCLOB(clob1);
```

```
-- Other APIs
call_lob_apis(blob1, blob2, clob1, nclob1);

-- free temp LOBs
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(blob1);
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(blob2);
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(clob1);
DBMS_LOB.FREETEMPORARY(nclob1);

END;
/
show errors;
```

## Freeing Temporary LOBs in OCI

Any time that your OCI program obtains a LOB locator from SQL or PL/SQL, check that the locator is temporary. If it is, free the locator when your application is finished with it. The locator can be from a define during a select or an out bind. A temporary LOB duration is always upgraded to session when it is shipped to the client side. The application must do the following before the locator is overwritten by the locator of the next row:

```
OCIlobIsTemporary(env, err, locator, is_temporary);
if(is_temporary)
    OCIlobFreeTemporary(svc, err, locator);
```

**See Also:** *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* chapter 16, section "LOB Functions."

---



---

## Data Interface for Persistent LOBs

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Overview of the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs](#)
- [Benefits of Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs](#)
- [Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in PL/SQL](#)
- [Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in OCI](#)
- [Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in Java](#)
- [Using the Data Interface with Remote LOBs](#)

### Overview of the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs

The data interface for persistent LOBs includes a set of Java, PL/SQL, and OCI APIs that are extended to work with LOB data types. These APIs, originally designed for use with legacy data types such as LONG, LONG RAW, and VARCHAR2, can also be used with the corresponding LOB data types shown in [Table 20–1](#) and [Table 20–2](#). These tables show the legacy data types in the "bind or define type" column and the corresponding supported LOB data type in the "LOB column type" column. You can use the data interface for LOBs to store and manipulate character data and binary data in a LOB column just as if it were stored in the corresponding legacy datatype.

---



---

**Note:** The data interface works for LOB columns and LOBs that are attributes of objects. In this chapter "LOB columns" means LOB columns and LOB attributes.

You can use array bind and define interfaces to insert and select multiple rows in one round trip.

---



---

For simplicity, this chapter focuses on character datatypes; however, the same concepts apply to the full set of character and binary datatypes listed in [Table 20–1](#) and [Table 20–2](#). CLOB also means NCLOB in these tables.

**Table 20–1** Corresponding LONG and LOB Datatypes in SQL and PL/SQL

Bind or Define Type	LOB Column Type	Used For Storing
CHAR	CLOB	Character data
LONG	CLOB	Character data
VARCHAR2	CLOB	Character data

**Table 20–1 (Cont.) Corresponding LONG and LOB Datatypes in SQL and PL/SQL**

Bind or Define Type	LOB Column Type	Used For Storing
LONG RAW	BLOB	Binary data
RAW	BLOB	Binary data

**Table 20–2 Corresponding LONG and LOB Datatypes in OCI**

Bind or Define Type	LOB Column Type	Used For Storing
SQLT_AFC (n)	CLOB	Character data
SQLT_CHR	CLOB	Character data
SQLT_LNG	CLOB	Character data
SQLT_VCS	CLOB	Character data
SQLT_BIN	BLOB	Binary data
SQLT_LBI	BLOB	Binary data
SQLT_LVB	BLOB	Binary data

## Benefits of Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs

Using the data interface for persistent LOBs has the following benefits:

- If your application uses LONG datatypes, then you can use the same application with LOB datatypes with little or no modification of your existing application required. To do so, just convert LONG datatype columns in your tables to LOB datatype columns as discussed in [Chapter 18, "Migrating Columns from LONGs to LOBs"](#).
- Performance is better for OCI applications that use sequential access techniques. A piecewise INSERT or fetch using the data interface has comparable performance to using OCI functions like `OCILOBRead2()` and `OCILOBWrite2()`. Because the data interface allows more than 4K bytes of data to be inserted into a LOB in a single OCI call, a round-trip to the server is saved.
- You can read LOB data in one `OCIStmtFetch()` call, instead of fetching the LOB locator first and then calling `OCILOBRead2()`. This improves performance when you want to read LOB data starting at the beginning.
- You can use array bind and define interfaces to insert and select multiple rows with LOBs in one round trip.

## Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in PL/SQL

The data interface enables you to use LONG and LOB datatypes listed in [Table 20–1](#) to perform the following operations in PL/SQL:

- INSERT or UPDATE character data stored in datatypes such as VARCHAR2, CHAR, or LONG into a CLOB column.
- INSERT or UPDATE binary data stored in datatypes such as RAW or LONG RAW into a BLOB column.
- Use the SELECT statement on CLOB columns to select data into a character buffer variable such as CHAR, LONG, or VARCHAR2.

- Use the `SELECT` statement on BLOB columns to select data into a binary buffer variable such as `RAW` and `LONG RAW`.
- Make cross-type assignments (implicit type conversions) between CLOB and `VARCHAR2`, `CHAR`, or `LONG` variables.
- Make cross-type assignments (implicit type conversions) between BLOB and `RAW` or `LONG RAW` variables.
- Pass LOB datatypes to functions defined to accept `LONG` datatypes or pass `LONG` datatypes to functions defined to accept LOB datatypes. For example, you can pass a CLOB instance to a function defined to accept another character type, such as `VARCHAR2`, `CHAR`, or `LONG`.
- Use CLOBs with other PL/SQL functions and operators that accept `VARCHAR2` arguments such as `INSTR` and `SUBSTR`. See ["Passing CLOBs to SQL and PL/SQL Built-In Functions"](#) on page 20-5 for a complete list.

---

**Note:** When using the data interface for LOBs with the `SELECT` statement in PL/SQL, you cannot specify the amount you want to read. You can only specify the buffer length of your buffer. If your buffer length is smaller than the LOB data length, then the database throws an exception.

---

**See Also:**

- [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#) for details on LOB support in SQL statements
- ["Some Implicit Conversions Are Not Supported for LOB Data Types"](#) on page 18-10

## Guidelines for Accessing LOB Columns Using the Data Interface in SQL and PL/SQL

This section describes techniques you use to access LOB columns or attributes using the data interface for persistent LOBs.

Data from CLOB and BLOB columns or attributes can be referenced by regular SQL statements, such as `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, and `SELECT`.

There is no piecewise `INSERT`, `UPDATE`, or fetch routine in PL/SQL. Therefore, the amount of data that can be accessed from a LOB column or attribute is limited by the maximum character buffer size. PL/SQL supports character buffer sizes up to 32KB - 1 (32767 bytes). For this reason, only LOBs less than 32K bytes in size can be accessed by PL/SQL applications using the data interface for persistent LOBs.

If you must access more than 32KB - 1 using the data interface, then you must make OCI calls from the PL/SQL code to use the APIs for piece-wise insert and fetch.

Use the following are guidelines for using the data interface to access LOB columns or attributes:

- **INSERT operations**  
You can `INSERT` into tables containing LOB columns or attributes using regular `INSERT` statements in the `VALUES` clause. The field of the LOB column can be a literal, a character datatype, a binary datatype, or a LOB locator.
- **UPDATE operations**

LOB columns or attributes can be updated as a whole by UPDATE... SET statements. In the SET clause, the new value can be a literal, a character datatype, a binary datatype, or a LOB locator.

- 4000 byte limit on hexadecimal to raw and raw to hexadecimal conversions

The database does not do implicit hexadecimal to RAW or RAW to hexadecimal conversions on data that is more than 4000 bytes in size. You cannot bind a buffer of character data to a binary datatype column, and you cannot bind a buffer of binary data to a character datatype column if the buffer is over 4000 bytes in size. Attempting to do so results in your column data being truncated at 4000 bytes.

For example, you cannot bind a VARCHAR2 buffer to a LONG RAW or a BLOB column if the buffer is more than 4000 bytes in size. Similarly, you cannot bind a RAW buffer to a LONG or a CLOB column if the buffer is more than 4000 bytes in size.

- SELECT operations

LOB columns or attributes can be selected into character or binary buffers in PL/SQL. If the LOB column or attribute is longer than the buffer size, then an exception is raised without filling the buffer with any data. LOB columns or attributes can also be selected into LOB locators.

## Implicit Assignment and Parameter Passing

Implicit assignment and parameter passing are supported for LOB columns. For the datatypes listed in [Table 20-1](#) and [Table 20-2](#), you can pass or assign: any character type to any other character type, or any binary type to any other binary type using the data interface for persistent LOBs.

Implicit assignment works for variables declared explicitly and for variables declared by referencing an existing column type using the %TYPE attribute as show in the following example. This example assumes that column long\_col in table t has been migrated from a LONG to a CLOB column.

```
CREATE TABLE t (long_col LONG); -- Alter this table to change LONG column to LOB
DECLARE
  a VARCHAR2(100);
  b t.long_col%type; -- This variable changes from LONG to CLOB
BEGIN
  SELECT * INTO b FROM t;
  a := b; -- This changes from "VARCHAR2 := LONG to VARCHAR2 := CLOB
  b := a; -- This changes from "LONG := VARCHAR2 to CLOB := VARCHAR2
END;
```

Implicit parameter passing is allowed between functions and procedures. For example, you can pass a CLOB to a function or procedure where the formal parameter is defined as a VARCHAR2.

---

---

**Note:** The assigning a VARCHAR2 buffer to a LOB variable is somewhat less efficient than assigning a VARCHAR2 to a LONG variable because the former involves creating a temporary LOB. Therefore, PL/SQL users experience a slight deterioration in the performance of their applications.

---

---



## Passing CLOBs to SQL and PL/SQL Built-In Functions

Implicit parameter passing is also supported for built-in PL/SQL functions that accept character data. For example, `INSTR` can accept a CLOB and other character data.

Any SQL or PL/SQL built-in function that accepts a `VARCHAR2` can accept a CLOB as an argument. Similarly, a `VARCHAR2` variable can be passed to any `DBMS_LOB` API for any parameter that takes a LOB locator.

**See Also:** [Chapter 16, "SQL Semantics and LOBs"](#)

## Explicit Conversion Functions

In PL/SQL, the following explicit conversion functions convert other data types to CLOB and BLOB datatypes as follows:

- `TO_CLOB()` converts `LONG`, `VARCHAR2`, and `CHAR` to CLOB
- `TO_BLOB()` converts `LONG RAW` and `RAW` to BLOB

Also note that the conversion function `TO_CHAR()` can convert a CLOB to a `CHAR` type.

## Calling PL/SQL and C Procedures from SQL

When a PL/SQL or C procedure is called from SQL, buffers with more than 4000 bytes of data are not allowed.

## Calling PL/SQL and C Procedures from PL/SQL

You can call a PL/SQL or C procedure from PL/SQL. You can pass a CLOB as an actual parameter where `CHR` is the formal parameter, or vice versa. The same holds for BLOBs and RAWs.

One example of when these cases can arise is when either the formal or the actual parameter is an anchored type, that is, the variable is declared using the `table_name.column_name%type` syntax.

PL/SQL procedures or functions can accept a CLOB or a `VARCHAR2` as a formal parameter. For example the PL/SQL procedure could be one of the following:

- *When the formal parameter is a CLOB:*

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE get_lob(table_name IN VARCHAR2, lob INOUT
CLOB) AS
...
BEGIN
...
END;
/
```

- *When the formal parameter is a VARCHAR2:*

```
CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE get_lob(table_name IN VARCHAR2, lob INOUT
VARCHAR2) AS
...
BEGIN
...
END;
/
```

The calling function could be of any of the following types:

- *When the actual parameter is a CHR:*

```
create procedure ...
declare
c VARCHAR2[200];
BEGIN
  get_lob('table_name', c);
END;
```

- **When the actual parameter is a CLOB:**

```
create procedure ...
declare
c CLOB;
BEGIN
  get_lob('table_name', c);
END;
```

## Binds of All Sizes in INSERT and UPDATE Operations

Binds of all sizes are supported for INSERT and UPDATE operations on LOB columns. Multiple binds of any size are allowed in a single INSERT or UPDATE statement.

---

---

**Note:** When you create a table, the length of the default value you specify for any LOB column is restricted to 4000 bytes.

---

---

## 4000 Byte Limit on Results of a SQL Operator

If you bind more than 4000 bytes of data to a BLOB or a CLOB, and the data consists of a SQL operator, then Oracle Database limits the size of the result to at most 4000 bytes.

The following statement inserts only 4000 bytes because the result of LPAD is limited to 4000 bytes:

```
INSERT INTO print_media (ad_sourcetext) VALUES (lpad('a', 5000, 'a'));
```

The following statement inserts only 2000 bytes because the result of LPAD is limited to 4000 bytes, and the implicit hexadecimal to raw conversion converts it to 2000 bytes of RAW data:

```
INSERT INTO print_media (ad_photo) VALUES (lpad('a', 5000, 'a'));
```

## Example of 4000 Byte Result Limit of a SQL Operator

The following example illustrates how the result for SQL operators is limited to 4000 bytes.

```
/* The following command inserts only 4000 bytes because the result of
 * LPAD is limited to 4000 bytes */
INSERT INTO print_media(product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext)
  VALUES (2004, 5, lpad('a', 5000, 'a'));
SELECT LENGTH(ad_sourcetext) FROM print_media
  WHERE product_id=2004 AND ad_id=5;
ROLLBACK;
```

```
/* The following command inserts only 2000 bytes because the result of
 * LPAD is limited to 4000 bytes, and the implicit hex to raw conversion
 * converts it to 2000 bytes of RAW data. */
INSERT INTO print_media(product_id, ad_id, ad_composite)
  VALUES (2004, 5, lpad('a', 5000, 'a'));
SELECT LENGTH(ad_composite) from print_media
```

```
WHERE product_id=2004 AND ad_id=5;
ROLLBACK;
```

## Restrictions on Binds of More Than 4000 Bytes

The following lists the restrictions for binds of more than 4000 bytes:

- If a table has both LONG and LOB columns, then you can bind more than 4000 bytes of data to either the LONG or LOB columns, but not both in the same statement.
- In an INSERT AS SELECT operation, binding of any length data to LOB columns is not allowed.

## Parallel DML Support for LOBs

Parallel execution of the following DML operations on tables with LOB columns is supported. These operations run in parallel execution mode only when performed on a partitioned table. DML statements on non-partitioned tables with LOB columns continue to execute in serial execution mode.

- INSERT AS SELECT
- CREATE TABLE AS SELECT
- DELETE
- UPDATE
- MERGE (conditional UPDATE and INSERT)
- Multi-table INSERT

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Administrator's Guide* section "Managing Processes for Parallel SQL Execution"

## Example: PL/SQL - Using Binds of More Than 4000 Bytes in INSERT and UPDATE

```
DECLARE
  bigtext VARCHAR2(32767);
  smalltext VARCHAR2(2000);
  bigraw RAW (32767);
BEGIN
  bigtext := LPAD('a', 32767, 'a');
  smalltext := LPAD('a', 2000, 'a');
  bigraw := utl_raw.cast_to_raw (bigtext);

  /* Multiple long binds for LOB columns are allowed for INSERT: */
  INSERT INTO print_media(product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext, ad_composite)
    VALUES (2004, 1, bigtext, bigraw);

  /* Single long bind for LOB columns is allowed for INSERT: */
  INSERT INTO print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext)
    VALUES (2005, 2, smalltext);

  bigtext := LPAD('b', 32767, 'b');
  smalltext := LPAD('b', 20, 'a');
  bigraw := utl_raw.cast_to_raw (bigtext);

  /* Multiple long binds for LOB columns are allowed for UPDATE: */
  UPDATE print_media SET ad_sourcetext = bigtext, ad_composite = bigraw,
```

```
ad_finaltext = smalltext;

/* Single long bind for LOB columns is allowed for UPDATE: */
UPDATE print_media SET ad_sourcetext = smalltext, ad_finaltext = bigtext;

/* The following is NOT allowed because we are trying to insert more than
   4000 bytes of data in a LONG and a LOB column: */
INSERT INTO print_media(product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext, press_release)
VALUES (2030, 3, bigtext, bigtext);

/* Insert of data into LOB attribute is allowed */
INSERT INTO print_media(product_id, ad_id, ad_header)
VALUES (2049, 4, adheader_typ(null, null, null, bigraw));

/* The following is not allowed because we try to perform INSERT AS
   SELECT data INTO LOB */
INSERT INTO print_media(product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext)
SELECT 2056, 5, bigtext FROM dual;

END;
/
```

## Using the Data Interface for LOBs with INSERT, UPDATE, and SELECT Operations

INSERT and UPDATE statements on LOBs are used in the same way as on LONGs. For example:

```
DECLARE
  ad_buffer VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO print_media(product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext)
  VALUES(2004, 5, 'Source for advertisement 1');
  UPDATE print_media SET ad_sourcetext= 'Source for advertisement 2'
  WHERE product_id=2004 AND ad_id=5;
  /* This retrieves the LOB column if it is up to 100 bytes, otherwise it
   * raises an exception */
  SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO ad_buffer FROM print_media
  WHERE product_id=2004 AND ad_id=5;
END;
/
```

## Using the Data Interface for LOBs in Assignments and Parameter Passing

The data interface for LOBs enables implicit assignment and parameter passing as shown in the following example:

```
CREATE TABLE t (clob_col CLOB, blob_col BLOB);
INSERT INTO t VALUES('abcdefg', 'aaaaaa');

DECLARE
  var_buf VARCHAR2(100);
  clob_buf CLOB;
  raw_buf RAW(100);
  blob_buf BLOB;
BEGIN
  SELECT * INTO clob_buf, blob_buf FROM t;
  var_buf := clob_buf;
  clob_buf := var_buf;
```

```

    raw_buf := blob_buf;
    blob_buf := raw_buf;
END;
/

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE FOO ( a IN OUT CLOB) IS
BEGIN
    -- Any procedure body
    a := 'abc';
END;
/

CREATE OR REPLACE PROCEDURE BAR (b IN OUT VARCHAR2) IS
BEGIN
    -- Any procedure body
    b := 'xyz';
END;
/

DECLARE
    a VARCHAR2(100) := '1234567';
    b CLOB;
BEGIN
    FOO(a);
    SELECT clob_col INTO b FROM t;
    BAR(b);
END;
/

```

## Using the Data Interface for LOBs with PL/SQL Built-In Functions

This example illustrates the use of CLOBs in PL/SQL built-in functions, using the data interface for LOBs:

```

DECLARE
    my_ad CLOB;
    revised_ad CLOB;
    myGist VARCHAR2(100) := 'This is my gist.';
    revisedGist VARCHAR2(100);
BEGIN
    INSERT INTO print_media (product_id, ad_id, ad_sourcetext)
        VALUES (2004, 5, 'Source for advertisement 1');

    -- select a CLOB column into a CLOB variable
    SELECT ad_sourcetext INTO my_ad FROM print_media
        WHERE product_id=2004 AND ad_id=5;

    -- perform VARCHAR2 operations on a CLOB variable
    revised_ad := UPPER(SUBSTR(my_ad, 1, 20));

    -- revised_ad is a temporary LOB
    -- Concat a VARCHAR2 at the end of a CLOB
    revised_ad := revised_ad || myGist;

    -- The following statement raises an error if my_ad is
    -- longer than 100 bytes
    myGist := my_ad;
END;
/

```

## Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in OCI

This section discusses OCI functions included in the data interface for persistent LOBs. These OCI functions work for LOB datatypes exactly the same way as they do for LONG datatypes. Using these functions, you can perform INSERT, UPDATE, fetch, bind, and define operations in OCI on LOBs using the same techniques you would use on other datatypes that store character or binary data.

---



---

**Note:** You can use array bind and define interfaces to insert and select multiple rows with LOBs in one round trip.

---



---

**See Also:** *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*, section "Runtime Data Allocation and Piecewise Operations in OCI"

### Binding LOB Datatypes in OCI

You can bind LOB datatypes in the following operations:

- Regular, piecewise, and callback binds for INSERT and UPDATE operations
- Array binds for INSERT and UPDATE operations
- Parameter passing across PL/SQL and OCI boundaries

Piecewise operations can be performed by polling or by providing a callback. To support these operations, the following OCI functions accept the LONG and LOB datatypes listed in [Table 20-2](#).

- `OCIBindByName()` and `OCIBindByPos()`

These functions create an association between a program variable and a placeholder in the SQL statement or a PL/SQL block for INSERT and UPDATE operations.

- `OCIBindDynamic()`

You use this call to register callbacks for dynamic data allocation for INSERT and UPDATE operations

- `OCIStmtGetPieceInfo()` and `OCIStmtSetPieceInfo()`

These calls are used to get or set piece information for piecewise operations.

### Defining LOB Datatypes in OCI

The data interface for persistent LOBs allows the following OCI functions to accept the LONG and LOB datatypes listed in [Table 20-2](#).

- `OCIDefineByPos()`

This call associates an item in a SELECT list with the type and output data buffer.

- `OCIDefineDynamic()`

This call registers user callbacks for SELECT operations if the `OCI_DYNAMIC_FETCH` mode was selected in `OCIDefineByPos()` function call.

When you use these functions with LOB types, the LOB data, and not the locator, is selected into your buffer. Note that in OCI, you cannot specify the amount you want to read using the data interface for LOBs. You can only specify the buffer length of your buffer. The database only reads whatever amount fits into your buffer and the data is truncated.

## Using Multibyte Character Sets in OCI with the Data Interface for LOBs

When the client character set is in a multibyte format, functions included in the data interface operate the same way with LOB datatypes as they do for LONG datatypes as follows:

- For a *piecewise* fetch in a multibyte character set, a multibyte character could be cut in the middle, with some bytes at the end of one buffer and remaining bytes in the next buffer.
- For a *regular* fetch, if the buffer cannot hold all bytes of the last character, then Oracle returns as many bytes as fit into the buffer, hence returning partial characters.

## Using OCI Functions to Perform INSERT or UPDATE on LOB Columns

This section discusses the various techniques you can use to perform INSERT or UPDATE operations on LOB columns or attributes using the data interface. The operations described in this section assume that you have initialized the OCI environment and allocated all necessary handles.

### Simple INSERTs or UPDATEs in One Piece

To perform simple INSERT or UPDATE operations in one piece using the data interface for persistent LOBs, perform the following steps:

1. Call `OCIStmtPrepare()` to prepare the statement in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode.
2. Call `OCIBindByName()` or `OCIBindbyPos()` in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode to bind a placeholder for LOB as character data or binary data.
3. Call `OCIStmtExecute()` to do the actual INSERT or UPDATE operation.

### Using Piecewise INSERTs and UPDATEs with Polling

To perform piecewise INSERT or UPDATE operations with polling using the data interface for persistent LOBs, do the following steps:

1. Call `OCIStmtPrepare()` to prepare the statement in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode.
2. Call `OCIBindByName()` or `OCIBindbyPos()` in `OCI_DATA_AT_EXEC` mode to bind a LOB as character data or binary data.
3. Call `OCIStmtExecute()` in default mode. Do each of the following in a loop while the value returned from `OCIStmtExecute()` is `OCI_NEED_DATA`. Terminate your loop when the value returned from `OCIStmtExecute()` is `OCI_SUCCESS`.
  - Call `OCIStmtGetPieceInfo()` to retrieve information about the piece to be inserted.
  - Call `OCIStmtSetPieceInfo()` to set information about piece to be inserted.

### Piecewise INSERTs and UPDATEs with Callback

To perform piecewise INSERT or UPDATE operations with callback using the data interface for persistent LOBs, do the following steps:

1. Call `OCIStmtPrepare()` to prepare the statement in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode.
2. Call `OCIBindByName()` or `OCIBindbyPos()` in `OCI_DATA_AT_EXEC` mode to bind a placeholder for the LOB column as character data or binary data.
3. Call `OCIBindDynamic()` to specify the callback.

4. Call `OCIStmtExecute()` in default mode.

### Array INSERT and UPDATE Operations

To perform array `INSERT` or `UPDATE` operations using the data interface for persistent LOBs, use any of the techniques discussed in this section in conjunction with `OCIBindArrayOfStruct()`, or by specifying the number of iterations (*iter*), with *iter* value greater than 1, in the `OCIStmtExecute()` call.

## Using the Data Interface to Fetch LOB Data in OCI

This section discusses techniques you can use to fetch data from LOB columns or attributes in OCI using the data interface for persistent LOBs.

### Simple Fetch in One Piece

To perform a simple fetch operation on LOBs in one piece using the data interface for persistent LOBs, do the following:

1. Call `OCIStmtPrepare()` to prepare the `SELECT` statement in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode.
2. Call `OCIDefineByPos()` to define a select list position in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode to define a LOB as character data or binary data.
3. Call `OCIStmtExecute()` to run the `SELECT` statement.
4. Call `OCIStmtFetch()` to do the actual fetch.

### Piecewise Fetch with Polling

To perform a piecewise fetch operation on a LOB column with polling using the data interface for LOBs, do the following steps:

1. Call `OCIStmtPrepare()` to prepare the `SELECT` statement in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode.
2. Call `OCIDefinebyPos()` to define a select list position in `OCI_DYNAMIC_FETCH` mode to define the LOB column as character data or binary data.
3. Call `OCIStmtExecute()` to run the `SELECT` statement.
4. Call `OCIStmtFetch()` in default mode. Do each of the following in a loop while the value returned from `OCIStmtFetch()` is `OCI_NEED_DATA`. Terminate your loop when the value returned from `OCIStmtFetch()` is `OCI_SUCCESS`.
  - Call `OCIStmtGetPieceInfo()` to retrieve information about the piece to be fetched.
  - Call `OCIStmtSetPieceInfo()` to set information about piece to be fetched.

### Piecewise with Callback

To perform a piecewise fetch operation on a LOB column with callback using the data interface for persistent LOBs, do the following:

1. Call `OCIStmtPrepare()` to prepare the statement in `OCI_DEFAULT` mode.
2. Call `OCIDefinebyPos()` to define a select list position in `OCI_DYNAMIC_FETCH` mode to define the LOB column as character data or binary data.
3. Call `OCIStmtExecute()` to run the `SELECT` statement.
4. Call `OCIDefineDynamic()` to specify the callback.



5. Call `OCIStmtFetch()` in default mode.

### Array Fetch

To perform an array fetch in OCI using the data interface for persistent LOBs, use any of the techniques discussed in this section in conjunction with `OCIDefineArrayOfStruct()`, or by specifying the number of iterations (*iter*), with the value of *iter* greater than 1, in the `OCIStmtExecute()` call.

## PL/SQL and C Binds from OCI

When you call a PL/SQL procedure from OCI, and have an IN or OUT or IN OUT bind, you should be able to:

- Bind a variable as `SQLT_CHR` or `SQLT_LNG` where the formal parameter of the PL/SQL procedure is `SQLT_CLOB`, or
- Bind a variable as `SQLT_BIN` or `SQLT_LBI` where the formal parameter is `SQLT_BLOB`

The following two cases work:

### Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "begin foo(:1); end;" Manner

Here is an example of calling PL/SQL out-binds in the "begin foo(:1); end;" Manner:

```
text *sqlstmt = (text *) "BEGIN get_lob(:c); END; " ;
```

### Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "call foo(:1);" Manner

Here is an example of calling PL/SQL out-binds in the "call foo(:1);" manner:

```
text *sqlstmt = (text *) "CALL get_lob(:c);" ;
```

In both these cases, the rest of the program has these statements:

```
OCIStmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, sqlstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)sqlstmt),
              (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
curlen = 0;
OCIBindByName(stmthp, &bndhp[3], errhp,
              (text *) ":c", (sb4) strlen((char *) ":c"),
              (dvoid *) buf5, (sb4) LONGLEN, SQLT_CHR,
              (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *) 0, (ub2 *) 0,
              (ub4) 1, (ub4 *) &curlen, (ub4) OCI_DATA_AT_EXEC);
```

The PL/SQL procedure, `get_lob()`, is as follows:

```
procedure get_lob(c INOUT CLOB) is -- This might have been column%type
BEGIN
... /* The procedure body could be in PL/SQL or C*/
END;
```

## Example: C (OCI) - Binds of More than 4000 Bytes for INSERT and UPDATE

```
void insert3()
{
/* Insert of data into LOB attributes is allowed. */
ub1 buffer[8000];
text *insert_sql = (text *) "INSERT INTO Print_media (ad_header) \
VALUES (adheader_typ(NULL, NULL, NULL,:1))";
OCIStmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, insert_sql, strlen((char*)insert_sql),
```

```

        (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bindhp[0], errhp, 1, (dvoid *)buffer, 2000,
        SOLT_LNG, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCISmtExecute(svchp, stmthp, errhp, 1, 0, (const OCISnapshot*) 0,
        (OCISnapshot*)0, OCI_DEFAULT);
}

```

## Using the Data Interface for LOBs in PL/SQL Binds from OCI on LOBs

The data interface for LOBs allows LOB PL/SQL binds from OCI to work as follows. When you call a PL/SQL procedure from OCI, and have an IN or OUT or IN OUT bind, you should be able to bind a variable as `SOLT_CHR`, where the formal parameter of the PL/SQL procedure is `SOLT_CLOB`.

---



---

**Note:** C procedures are wrapped inside a PL/SQL stub, so the OCI application always calls the PL/SQL stub.

---



---

For the OCI calling program, the following are likely cases:

### Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "begin foo(:1); end;" Manner

For example:

```
text *sqlstmt = (text *)"BEGIN PKG1.P5 (:c); END; " ;
```

### Calling PL/SQL Out-binds in the "call foo(:1);" Manner

For example:

```
text *sqlstmt = (text *)"CALL PKG1.P5( :c );" ;
```

In both these cases, the rest of the program is as follows:

```

OCISmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, sqlstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)sqlstmt),
    (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
curlen = 0;

OCIBindByName(stmthp, &bindhp[3], errhp,
    (text *) ":c4", (sb4) strlen((char *) ":c"),
    (dvoid *) buf5, (sb4) LONGLEN, SOLT_CHR,
    (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *) 0, (ub2 *) 0,
    (ub4) 1, (ub4 *) &curlen, (ub4) OCI_DATA_AT_EXEC);

OCISmtExecute(svchp, stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 0, (ub4) 0, (const OCISnapshot*) 0,
    (OCISnapshot*) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

```

The PL/SQL procedure `PKG1.P5` is as follows:

```

CREATE OR REPLACE PACKAGE BODY pkg1 AS
    ...
    procedure p5 (c OUT CLOB) is
        -- This might have been table%rowtype (so it is CLOB now)
    BEGIN
        ...
    END p5;
END pkg1;

```

## Binding LONG Data for LOB Columns in Binds Greater Than 4000 Bytes

The following example illustrates binding character data for a LOB column:

```
void simple_insert()
{
    word buflen;
    text buf[5000];
    text *insstmt = (text *) "INSERT INTO Print_media(Product_id, Ad_id,\
        Ad_sourcetext) VALUES (2004, 1, :SRCTXT)";

    OCISstmtPrepare(stmt, errhp, insstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)insstmt),
        (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    OCIBindByName(stmt, &bndhp[0], errhp,
        (text *) ":SRCTXT", (sb4) strlen((char *) ":SRCTXT"),
        (dvoid *) buf, (sb4) sizeof(buf), SQLT_CHR,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *) 0, (ub2 *) 0,
        (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    memset((void *)buf, (int)'A', (size_t)5000);
    OCISstmtExecute(svchp, stmt, errhp, (ub4) 1, (ub4) 0,
        (const OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
}
```

## Binding LONG Data to LOB Columns Using Piecewise INSERT with Polling

The following example illustrates using piecewise INSERT with polling using the data interface for LOBs.

```
void piecewise_insert()
{
    text *sqlstmt = (text *)"INSERT INTO Print_media(Product_id, Ad_id,\
        Ad_sourcetext) VALUES (:1, :2, :3)";

    ub2 rcode;
    ub1 piece, i;
    word product_id = 2004;
    word ad_id = 2;
    ub4 buflen;
    char buf[5000];

    OCISstmtPrepare(stmt, errhp, sqlstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)sqlstmt),
        (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCIBindByPos(stmt, &bndhp[0], errhp, (ub4) 1,
        (dvoid *) &product_id, (sb4) sizeof(product_id), SQLT_INT,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,
        (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCIBindByPos(stmt, &bndhp[1], errhp, (ub4) 2,
        (dvoid *) &ad_id, (sb4) sizeof(ad_id), SQLT_INT,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,
        (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCIBindByPos(stmt, &bndhp[2], errhp, (ub4) 3,
        (dvoid *) 0, (sb4) 15000, SQLT_LNG,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,
        (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DATA_AT_EXEC);

    i = 0;
    while (1)
    {
        i++;
        retval = OCISstmtExecute(svchp, stmt, errhp, (ub4) 1, (ub4) 0,
```

```

                                (CONST OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0,
                                (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

switch(retval)
{
case OCI_NEED_DATA:
    memset((void *)buf, (int)'A'+i, (size_t)5000);
    buflen = 5000;
    if (i == 1) piece = OCI_FIRST_PIECE;
    else if (i == 3) piece = OCI_LAST_PIECE;
    else piece = OCI_NEXT_PIECE;

    if (OCIStmtSetPieceInfo((dvoid *)bndhp[2],
                            (ub4)OCI_HTYPE_BIND, errhp, (dvoid *)buf,
                            &buflen, piece, (dvoid *) 0, &rcode))
    {
        printf("ERROR: OCIStmtSetPieceInfo: %d \n", retval);
        break;
    }

    break;
case OCI_SUCCESS:
    break;
default:
    printf("oci exec returned %d \n", retval);
    report_error(errhp);
    retval = OCI_SUCCESS;
} /* end switch */
if (retval == OCI_SUCCESS)
    break;
} /* end while(1) */
}

```

## Binding LONG Data to LOB Columns Using Piecewise INSERT with Callback

The following example illustrates binding LONG data to LOB columns using a piecewise INSERT with callback:

```

void callback_insert()
{
    word buflen = 15000;
    word product_id = 2004;
    word ad_id = 3;
    text *sqlstmt = (text *) "INSERT INTO Print_media(Product_id, Ad_id,\
        Ad_sourcetext) VALUES (:1, :2, :3)";
    word pos = 3;

    OCIStmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, sqlstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)sqlstmt),
        (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT)

    OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bndhp[0], errhp, (ub4) 1,
        (dvoid *) &product_id, (sb4) sizeof(product_id), SQLT_INT,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,
        (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bndhp[1], errhp, (ub4) 2,
        (dvoid *) &ad_id, (sb4) sizeof(ad_id), SQLT_INT,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,
        (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bndhp[2], errhp, (ub4) 3,
        (dvoid *) 0, (sb4) buflen, SQLT_CHR,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,

```

```

        (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DATA_AT_EXEC);

OCIBindDynamic(bndhp[2], errhp, (dvoid *) (dvoid *) &pos,
              insert_cbk, (dvoid *) 0, (OCIcallbackOutBind) 0);

OCISstmtExecute(svchp, stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 1, (ub4) 0,
               (const OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0,
               (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
} /* end insert_data() */

/* Inbind callback to specify input data. */
static sb4 insert_cbk(dvoid *ctxp, OCIBind *bindp, ub4 iter, ub4 index,
                    dvoid **bufpp, ub4 *alenpp, ub1 *piecep, dvoid **indpp)
{
    static int a = 0;
    word    j;
    ub4     inpos = *((ub4 *)ctxp);
    char    buf[5000];

    switch(inpos)
    {
    case 3:
        memset((void *)buf, (int) 'A'+a, (size_t) 5000);
        *bufpp = (dvoid *) buf;
        *alenpp = 5000 ;
        a++;
        break;
    default: printf("ERROR: invalid position number: %d\n", inpos);
    }

    *indpp = (dvoid *) 0;
    *piecep = OCI_ONE_PIECE;
    if (inpos == 3)
    {
        if (a<=1)
        {
            *piecep = OCI_FIRST_PIECE;
            printf("Insert callback: 1st piece\n");
        }
        else if (a<3)
        {
            *piecep = OCI_NEXT_PIECE;
            printf("Insert callback: %d'th piece\n", a);
        }
        else {
            *piecep = OCI_LAST_PIECE;
            printf("Insert callback: %d'th piece\n", a);
            a = 0;
        }
    }
    return OCI_CONTINUE;
}

```

## Binding LONG Data to LOB Columns Using an Array INSERT

The following example illustrates binding character data for LOB columns using an array INSERT operation:

```

void array_insert()
{

```

```

ub4 i;
word buflen;
word arrbuf1[5];
word arrbuf2[5];
text arrbuf3[5][5000];
text *insstmt = (text *)"INSERT INTO Print_media(Product_id, Ad_id,\
                    Ad_sourcetext) VALUES (:PID, :AID, :SRCTXT)";

OCIStmtPrepare(stmt, errhp, insstmt,
               (ub4)strlen((char *)insstmt), (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX,
               (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

OCIBindByName(stmt, &bndhp[0], errhp,
               (text *) ":PID", (sb4) strlen((char *) ":PID"),
               (dvoid *) &arrbuf1[0], (sb4) sizeof(arrbuf1[0]), SQLT_INT,
               (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *) 0,
               (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

OCIBindByName(stmt, &bndhp[1], errhp,
               (text *) ":AID", (sb4) strlen((char *) ":AID"),
               (dvoid *) &arrbuf2[0], (sb4) sizeof(arrbuf2[0]), SQLT_INT,
               (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *) 0,
               (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

OCIBindByName(stmt, &bndhp[2], errhp,
               (text *) ":SRCTXT", (sb4) strlen((char *) ":SRCTXT"),
               (dvoid *) arrbuf3[0], (sb4) sizeof(arrbuf3[0]), SQLT_CHR,
               (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *) 0, (ub2 *) 0,
               (ub4) 0, (ub4 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

OCIBindArrayOfStruct(bndhp[0], errhp sizeof(arrbuf1[0]),
                    indsk, rlsk, rcsk);
OCIBindArrayOfStruct(bndhp[1], errhp, sizeof(arrbuf2[0]),
                    indsk, rlsk, rcsk);
OCIBindArrayOfStruct(bndhp[2], errhp, sizeof(arrbuf3[0]),
                    indsk, rlsk, rcsk);

for (i=0; i<5; i++)
{
    arrbuf1[i] = 2004;
    arrbuf2[i] = i+4;
    memset((void *)arrbuf3[i], (int)'A'+i, (size_t)5000);
}
OCIStmtExecute(svchp, stmt, errhp, (ub4) 5, (ub4) 0,
               (const OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0,
               (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
}

```

## Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using a Simple Fetch

The following example illustrates selecting a LOB column using a simple fetch:

```

void simple_fetch()
{
    word retval;
    text buf[15000];
    text *selstmt = (text *) "SELECT Ad_sourcetext FROM Print_media WHERE\
                            Product_id = 2004";
}

```

```

OCIStmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, selstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)selstmt),
              (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

retval = OCIStmtExecute(svchp, stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 0, (ub4) 0,
                      (const OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0,
                      (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
while (retval == OCI_SUCCESS || retval == OCI_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO)
{
    OCIDefineByPos(stmthp, &defhp, errhp, (ub4) 1, (dvoid *) buf,
                  (sb4) sizeof(buf), (ub2) SQLT_CHR, (dvoid *) 0,
                  (ub2 *) 0, (ub2 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    retval = OCIStmtFetch(stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 1,
                        (ub4) OCI_FETCH_NEXT, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    if (retval == OCI_SUCCESS || retval == OCI_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO)
        printf("buf = %.*s\n", 15000, buf);
}
}

```

## Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using Piecewise Fetch with Polling

The following example illustrates selecting a LOB column into a LONG buffer using a piecewise fetch with polling:

```

void piecewise_fetch()
{
    text buf[15000];
    ub4 buflen=5000;
    word retval;
    text *selstmt = (text *) "SELECT Ad_sourcetext FROM Print_media
                              WHERE Product_id = 2004 AND Ad_id = 2";

    OCIStmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, selstmt,
                  (ub4) strlen((char *)selstmt),
                  (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    OCIDefineByPos(stmthp, &dfnhp, errhp, (ub4) 1,
                  (dvoid *) NULL, (sb4) 100000, SQLT_LNG,
                  (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *) 0,
                  (ub2 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DYNAMIC_FETCH);

    retval = OCIStmtExecute(svchp, stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 0, (ub4) 0,
                          (CONST OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0,
                          (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    retval = OCIStmtFetch(stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 1 ,
                        (ub2) OCI_FETCH_NEXT, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    while (retval != OCI_NO_DATA && retval != OCI_SUCCESS)
    {
        ub1 piece;
        ub4 iter;
        ub4 idx;

        genclr((void *)buf, 5000);
        switch(retval)
        {
            case OCI_NEED_DATA:
                OCIStmtGetPieceInfo(stmthp, errhp, &hdlptr, &hdltype,
                                   &in_out, &iter, &idx, &piece);
                buflen = 5000;

```

```

        OCISstmtSetPieceInfo(hdlp, hdltype, errhp,
                            (dvoid *) buf, &buflen, piece,
                            (CONST dvoid *) &indp1, (ub2 *) 0);
        retval = OCI_NEED_DATA;
        break;
    default:
        printf("ERROR: piece-wise fetching, %d\n", retval);
        return;
    } /* end switch */
    retval = OCISstmtFetch(stmt, errhp, (ub4) 1,
                          (ub2) OCI_FETCH_NEXT, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    printf("Data : %.5000s\n", buf);
} /* end while */
}

```

## Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using Piecewise Fetch with Callback

The following example illustrates selecting a LONG column into a LOB buffer when using a piecewise fetch with callback:

```

char buf[5000];
void callback_fetch()
{
    word outpos = 1;
    text *sqlstmt = (text *) "SELECT Ad_sourcetext FROM Print_media WHERE
        Product_id = 2004 AND Ad_id = 3";

    OCISstmtPrepare(stmt, errhp, sqlstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)sqlstmt),
                    (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    OCIDefineByPos(stmt, &dfnhp[0], errhp, (ub4) 1,
                  (dvoid *) 0, (sb4)3 * sizeof(buf), SQLT_CHR,
                  (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0,
                  (ub4) OCI_DYNAMIC_FETCH);

    OCIDefineDynamic(dfnhp[0], errhp, (dvoid *) &outpos,
                    (OCICallbackDefine) fetch_cbk);

    OCISstmtExecute(svchp, stmt, errhp, (ub4) 1, (ub4) 0,
                   (const OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0,
                   (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    buf[ 4999 ] = '\0';
    printf("Select callback: Last piece: %s\n", buf);
}

/* ----- */
/* Fetch callback to specify buffers. */
/* ----- */
static sb4 fetch_cbk(dvoid *ctxp, OCIDefine *dfnhp, ub4 iter, dvoid **bufpp,
                    ub4 *alenpp, ub1 *piecep, dvoid **indpp, ub2 **rcpp)
{
    static int a = 0;
    ub4 outpos = *((ub4 *)ctxp);
    ub4 len = 5000;
    switch(outpos)
    {
    case 1:
        a++;
        *bufpp = (dvoid *) buf;
        *alenpp = &len;
        break;
    }
}

```



```

default:
    *bufpp = (dvoid *) 0;
    *alenpp = (ub4 *) 0;
    printf("ERROR: invalid position number: %d\n", outpos);
}
*indpp = (dvoid *) 0;
*rcpp = (ub2 *) 0;

buf[len] = '\0';
if (a<=1)
{
    *piecep = OCI_FIRST_PIECE;
    printf("Select callback: 0th piece\n");
}
else if (a<3)
{
    *piecep = OCI_NEXT_PIECE;
    printf("Select callback: %d'th piece: %s\n", a-1, buf);
}
else {
    *piecep = OCI_LAST_PIECE;
    printf("Select callback: %d'th piece: %s\n", a-1, buf);
    a = 0;
}
return OCI_CONTINUE;
}

```

## Selecting a LOB Column into a LONG Buffer Using an Array Fetch

The following example illustrates selecting a LOB column into a LONG buffer using an array fetch:

```

void array_fetch()
{
    word i;
    text arrbuf[5][5000];
    text *selstmt = (text *) "SELECT Ad_sourcetext FROM Print_media WHERE
        Product_id = 2004 AND Ad_id >=4";

    OCISstmtPrepare(stmthp, errhp, selstmt, (ub4)strlen((char *)selstmt),
        (ub4) OCI_NTV_SYNTAX, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    OCISstmtExecute(svchp, stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 0, (ub4) 0,
        (const OCISnapshot*) 0, (OCISnapshot*) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    OCIDefineByPos(stmthp, &defhp1, errhp, (ub4) 1,
        (dvoid *) arrbuf[0], (sb4) sizeof(arrbuf[0]),
        (ub2) SQLT_CHR, (dvoid *) 0,
        (ub2 *) 0, (ub2 *) 0, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);

    OCIDefineArrayOfStruct(dfnhp1, errhp, sizeof(arrbuf[0]), indsk,
        rlsk, rcsk);

    retval = OCISstmtFetch(stmthp, errhp, (ub4) 5,
        (ub4) OCI_FETCH_NEXT, (ub4) OCI_DEFAULT);
    if (retval == OCI_SUCCESS || retval == OCI_SUCCESS_WITH_INFO)
    {
        printf("%.5000s\n", arrbuf[0]);
        printf("%.5000s\n", arrbuf[1]);
        printf("%.5000s\n", arrbuf[2]);
    }
}

```

```

        printf("%.5000s\n", arrbuf[3]);
        printf("%.5000s\n", arrbuf[4]);
    }
}

```

## Using the Data Interface for Persistent LOBs in Java

You can also read and write CLOB and BLOB data using the same streaming mechanism as for LONG and LONG RAW data. To read, use `defineColumnType(nn, Types.LONGVARCHAR)` or `defineColumnType(nn, Types.LONGVARBINARY)` on the column. This produces a direct stream on the data as if it is a LONG or LONG RAW column. For input in a `PreparedStatement`, you may use `setBinaryStream()`, `setCharacterStream()`, or `setAsciiStream()` for a parameter which is a BLOB or CLOB. These methods use the stream interface to create a LOB in the database from the data in the stream. Both of these techniques reduce database round trips and may result in improved performance in some cases. See the Javadoc on stream data for the significant restrictions which apply, at <http://www.oracle.com/technology/>.

Refer to the following in the *JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*:

### See Also:

- *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working with LOBs and BFILES", section "Data Interface for LOBs"
- *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "JDBC Standards Support"

## Using the Data Interface with Remote LOBs

The data interface for insert, update, and select of remote LOBs (access over a `dblink`) is supported after Oracle Database 10g Release 2. The examples in the following sections are for the `print_media` table created in two schemas: `db1` and `db2`. The CLOB column of that table used in the examples shown is `ad_finaltext`. The examples to be given for PL/SQL, OCI, and Java use binds and defines for this one column, but multiple columns can also be accessed. Here is the functionality supported and its limitations:

- You can define a CLOB as CHAR or NCHAR and an NCLOB as CHAR or NCHAR. CLOB and NCLOB can be defined as a LONG. A BLOB can be defined as a RAW or a LONG RAW.
- Array binds and defines are supported.

**See Also:** ["Remote Data Interface Example in PL/SQL"](#) on page 20-23 and the sections following it.

## Non-Supported Syntax

- Queries involving more than one database are not supported:

```

SELECT t1.lobcol, a2.lobcol FROM t1, t2.lobcol@db2 a2 WHERE
LENGTH(t1.lobcol) = LENGTH(a2.lobcol);

```

Neither is this query (in a PL/SQL block):

```

SELECT t1.lobcol INTO varchar_buf1 FROM t1@db1
UNION ALL
SELECT t2.lobcol INTO varchar_buf2 FROM t2@db2;

```

- Only binds and defines for data going into remote persistent LOB columns are supported, so that parameter passing in PL/SQL where CHAR data is bound or defined for remote LOBs is not allowed because this could produce a remote temporary LOB, which are not supported. These statements all produce errors:

```
SELECT foo() INTO varchar_buf FROM table1@dbs2; -- foo returns a LOB
```

```
SELECT foo()@dbs INTO char_val FROM DUAL; -- foo returns a LOB
```

```
SELECT XMLType().getclobval INTO varchar_buf FROM table1@dbs2;
```

- If the remote object is a view such as

```
CREATE VIEW v AS SELECT foo() a FROM ... ; -- foo returns a LOB
/* The local database then tries to get the CLOB data and returns an error */
SELECT a INTO varchar_buf FROM v@dbs2;
```

This returns an error because it produces a remote temporary LOB, which is not supported.

- RETURNING INTO does not support implicit conversions between CHAR and CLOB.
- PL/SQL parameter passing is not allowed where the actual argument is a LOB type and the remote argument is a VARCHAR2, NVARCHAR2, CHAR, NCHAR, or RAW.

## Remote Data Interface Example in PL/SQL

The data interface only supports data of size less than 32KB in PL/SQL. The following snippet shows a PL/SQL example:

```
CONNECT pm
declare
  my_ad varchar(6000) := lpad('b', 6000, 'b');
BEGIN
  INSERT INTO print_media@dbs2(product_id, ad_id, ad_finaltext)
    VALUES (10000, 10, my_ad);
  -- Reset the buffer value
  my_ad := 'a';
  SELECT ad_finaltext INTO my_ad FROM print_media@dbs2
    WHERE product_id = 10000;
END;
/
```

If `ad_finaltext` were a BLOB column instead of a CLOB, `my_ad` has to be of type RAW. If the LOB is greater than 32KB - 1 in size, then PL/SQL raises a truncation error and the contents of the buffer are undefined.

## Remote Data Interface Example in OCI

The data interface only supports data of size less than 2 GBytes (the maximum value possible of a variable declared as `sb4`) for OCI. The following pseudocode can be enhanced to be a part of an OCI program:

```
...
text *sql = (text *)"insert into print_media@dbs2
                (product_id, ad_id, ad_finaltext)
                values (:1, :2, :3)";
OCIStmtPrepare(...);
OCIBindByPos(...); /* Bind data for positions 1 and 2
                    * which are independent of LOB */
OCIBindByPos(stmthp, &bndhp[2], errhp, (ub4) 3,
```

```

        (dvoid *) charbuf1, (sb4) len_charbuf1, SQLT_CHR,
        (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0, 0, 0, OCI_DEFAULT);
OCIStmtExecute(...);

...

text *sql = (text *) "select ad_finaltext from print_media@dbs2
                    where product_id = 10000";
OCIStmtPrepare(...);
OCIDefineByPos(stmthp, &dfnbp[2], errhp, (ub4) 1,
               (dvoid *) charbuf2, (sb4) len_charbuf2, SQLT_CHR,
               (dvoid *) 0, (ub2 *)0, (ub2 *)0, OCI_DEFAULT);
OCIStmtExecute(...);

...

```

If `ad_finaltext` were a BLOB instead of a CLOB, then you bind and define using type `SQLT_BIN`. If the LOB is greater than 2GB - 1 in size, then OCI raises a truncation error and the contents of the buffer are undefined.

## Remote Data Interface Examples in JDBC

The following code snippets works with all three JDBC drivers (OCI, Thin, and `kprb` in the database):

### Bind:

This is for the non-streaming mode:

```

...
String sql = "insert into print_media@dbs2 (product_id, ad_id, ad_final_text)" +
            " values (:1, :2, :3)";
PreparedStatement pstmt = conn.prepareStatement(sql);
pstmt.setInt( 1, 2 );
pstmt.setInt( 2, 20);
pstmt.setString( 3, "Java string" );
int rows = pstmt.executeUpdate();
...

```

For the streaming mode, the same code as the preceding works, except that the `setString()` statement is replaced by one of the following:

```

pstmt.setCharacterStream( 3, new LabeledReader(), 1000000 );
pstmt.setAsciiStream( 3, new LabeledAsciiInputStream(), 1000000 );

```

Here, `LabeledReader()` and `LabeledAsciiInputStream()` produce character and ASCII streams respectively. If `ad_finaltext` were a BLOB column instead of a CLOB, then the preceding example works if the bind is of type RAW:

```

pstmt.setBytes( 3, <some byte[] array> );

pstmt.setBinaryStream( 3, new LabeledInputStream(), 1000000 );

```

Here, `LabeledInputStream()` produces a binary stream.

### Define:

For non-streaming mode:

```

OracleStatement stmt = (OracleStatement)(conn.createStatement());
stmt.defineColumnType( 1, Types.VARCHAR );
ResultSet rst = stmt.executeQuery("select ad_finaltext from print_media@dbs2" );
while( rst.next() )

```

```

{
    String s = rst.getString( 1 );
    System.out.println( s );
}

```

For streaming mode:

```

OracleStatement stmt = (OracleStatement)(conn.createStatement());
stmt.defineColumnType( 1, Types.LONGVARCHAR );
ResultSet rst = stmt.executeQuery("select ad_finaltext from print_media@dbs2" );
while( rst.next() )
{
    Reader reader = rst.getCharacterStream( 1 );
    while( reader.ready() )
    {
        System.out.print( (char)(reader.next()) );
    }
    System.out.println();
}

```

If `ad_finaltext` were a BLOB column instead of a CLOB, then the preceding examples work if the define is of type `LONGVARBINARY`:

```

...
OracleStatement stmt = (OracleStatement)conn.createStatement();

stmt.defineColumnType( 1, Types.INTEGER );
stmt.defineColumnType( 2, Types.LONGVARBINARY );

ResultSet rset = stmt.executeQuery("SELECT ID, LOBCOL FROM LOBTAB@MYSELF");

while(rset.next())
{
    /* using getBytes() */
    /*
    byte[] b = rset.getBytes("LOBCOL");
    System.out.println("ID: " + rset.getInt("ID") + " length: " + b.length);
    */

    /* using getBinaryStream() */
    InputStream byte_stream = rset.getBinaryStream("LOBCOL");
    byte [] b = new byte [100000];
    int b_len = byte_stream.read(b);
    System.out.println("ID: " + rset.getInt("ID") + " length: " + b_len);

    byte_stream.close();
}
...

```

**See Also:** *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working with LOBs and BFILES", section "Shortcuts for Inserting and Retrieving CLOB Data"



---

---

## LOB APIs for BFILE Operations

This chapter describes APIs for operations that use BFILES. APIs covered in this chapter are listed in [Table 21-1](#).

The following information is given for each operation described in this chapter:

- *Usage Notes* provide implementation guidelines such as information specific to a given programmatic environment or data type.
- *Syntax* refers you to the syntax reference documentation for each supported programmatic environment.
- *Examples* describe any setup tasks necessary to run the examples given. Demonstration files listed are available in subdirectories under `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/` named `plsql`, `oci`, `vb`, and `java`. The driver program `lobdemo.sql` is in `/plsql` and the driver program `lobdemo.c` is in `/oci`.

---

---

**Note:** LOB APIs do not support loading data into BFILES. See "[Using SQL\\*Loader to Load LOBs](#)" on page 3-1 for details on techniques for loading data into BFILES.

---

---

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Supported Environments for BFILE APIs](#)
- [Accessing BFILES](#)
- [Directory Objects](#)
- [BFILENAME and Initialization](#)
- [Characteristics of the BFILE Data Type](#)
- [BFILE Security](#)
- [Loading a LOB with BFILE Data](#)
- [Opening a BFILE with OPEN](#)
- [Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN](#)
- [Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN](#)
- [Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN](#)
- [Displaying BFILE Data](#)
- [Reading Data from a BFILE](#)

- [Reading a Portion of BFILE Data Using SUBSTR](#)
- [Comparing All or Parts of Two BFILES](#)
- [Checking If a Pattern Exists in a BFILE Using INSTR](#)
- [Determining Whether a BFILE Exists](#)
- [Getting the Length of a BFILE](#)
- [Assigning a BFILE Locator](#)
- [Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE](#)
- [Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator](#)
- [Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE](#)
- [Closing a BFILE with CLOSE](#)
- [Closing All Open BFILES with FILECLOSEALL](#)
- [Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE](#)

## Supported Environments for BFILE APIs

Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs" indicates which programmatic environments are supported for the APIs discussed in this chapter. The first column describes the operation that the API performs. The remaining columns indicate with "Yes" or "No" whether the API is supported in PL/SQL, OCI, COBOL, Pro\*C/C++, COM, and JDBC.

**Table 21–1** *Environments Supported for BFILE APIs*

Operation	PL/SQL	OCI	COBOL	Pro*C/C++	COM	JDBC
<a href="#">Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE</a> on page 21-25	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Loading a LOB with BFILE Data</a> on page 21-10	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN</a> on page 21-12	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes
<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with OPEN</a> on page 21-11	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN</a> on page 21-13	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN</a> on page 21-14	Yes	Yes	No	No	No	Yes
<a href="#">Displaying BFILE Data</a> on page 21-15	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Reading Data from a BFILE</a> on page 21-15	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Reading a Portion of BFILE Data Using SUBSTR</a> on page 21-17	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Comparing All or Parts of Two BFILES</a> on page 21-17	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Checking If a Pattern Exists in a BFILE Using INSTR</a> on page 21-18	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Exists</a> on page 21-19	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes



**Table 21–1 (Cont.) Environments Supported for BFILE APIs**

Operation	PL/SQL	OCI	COBOL	Pro*C/C++	COM	JDBC
<a href="#">Getting the Length of a BFILE</a> on page 21-19	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Assigning a BFILE Locator</a> on page 21-20	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
<a href="#">Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE</a> on page 21-21	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator</a> on page 21-21	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE</a> on page 21-22	Yes	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with CLOSE</a> on page 21-23	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Closing All Open BFILEs with FILECLOSEALL</a> on page 21-24	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## Accessing BFILES

To access BFILES use one of the following interfaces:

- OCI (Oracle Call Interface)
- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB package)
- Precompilers, such as Pro\*C/C++ and Pro\*COBOL
- Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)
- Java (JDBC)

**See Also:** [Chapter 13, "Overview of Supplied LOB APIs"](#) for information about supported environments for accessing BFILES.

## Directory Objects

The DIRECTORY object facilitates administering access and usage of BFILE data types. A DIRECTORY object specifies a *logical alias name* for a physical directory on the database server file system under which the file to be accessed is located. You can access a file in the server file system only if granted the required access privilege on DIRECTORY object. You can also use Enterprise Manager Web console to manage DIRECTORY objects.

**See Also:**

- CREATE DIRECTORY in *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*
- See *Oracle Database 2 Day DBA*. See the description of Web-based Oracle Enterprise Manager Database Control.

## Initializing a BFILE Locator

The DIRECTORY object also provides the flexibility to manage the locations of the files, instead of forcing you to hard-code the absolute path names of physical files in your applications. A directory object name is used in conjunction with the BFILENAME function, in SQL and PL/SQL, or the OCILobFileSetName() in OCI, for initializing a BFILE locator.

---

---

**Note:** The database does not verify that the directory and path name you specify actually exist. You should take care to specify a valid directory in your operating system. If your operating system uses case-sensitive path names, then be sure you specify the directory in the correct format. There is no requirement to specify a terminating slash (for example, `/tmp/` is not necessary, simply use `/tmp`).

Directory specifications cannot contain `".."` anywhere in the path (for example, `/abc/def/hij..`).

---

---

## How to Associate Operating System Files with a BFILE

To associate an operating system file to a BFILE, first create a DIRECTORY object which is an alias for the full path name to the operating system file.

To associate existing operating system files with relevant database records of a particular table use Oracle SQL DML (Data Manipulation Language). For example:

- Use INSERT to initialize a BFILE column to point to an existing file in the server file system.
- Use UPDATE to change the reference target of the BFILE.
- Initialize a BFILE to NULL and then update it later to refer to an operating system file using the BFILENAME function.
- OCI users can also use OCILobFileSetName() to initialize a BFILE locator variable that is then used in the VALUES clause of an INSERT statement.

### Directory Example

The following statements associate the files `Image1.gif` and `image2.gif` with records having `key_value` of 21 and 22 respectively. 'IMG' is a DIRECTORY object that represents the physical directory under which `Image1.gif` and `image2.gif` are stored.

You may be required to set up data structures similar to the following for certain examples to work:

```
CREATE TABLE Lob_table (  
  Key_value NUMBER NOT NULL,  
  F_lob BFILE)  
INSERT INTO Lob_table VALUES  
  (21, BFILENAME('IMG', 'Image1.gif'));  
INSERT INTO Lob_table VALUES  
  (22, BFILENAME('IMG', 'image2.gif'));
```

The following UPDATE statement changes the target file to `image3.gif` for the row with `key_value` of 22.

```
UPDATE Lob_table SET f_lob = BFILENAME('IMG', 'image3.gif')  
WHERE Key_value = 22;
```

---



---

**Note:** The database does not expand environment variables specified in the DIRECTORY object or file name of a BFILE locator. For example, specifying:

```
BFILENAME('WORK_DIR', '$MY_FILE')
```

where MY\_FILE, an environment variable defined in the operating system, is not valid.

---



---

## BFILENAME and Initialization

BFILENAME is a built-in function that you use to initialize a BFILE column to point to an external file.

Once physical files are associated with records using SQL DML, subsequent read operations on the BFILE can be performed using PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package and OCI. However, these files are read-only when accessed through BFILES, and so they cannot be updated or deleted through BFILES.

As a consequence of the reference-based semantics for BFILES, it is possible to have multiple BFILE columns in the same record or different records referring to the same file. For example, the following UPDATE statements set the BFILE column of the row with key\_value = 21 in lob\_table to point to the same file as the row with key\_value = 22.

```
UPDATE lob_table
   SET f_lob = (SELECT f_lob FROM lob_table WHERE key_value = 22)
   WHERE key_value = 21;
```

Think of BFILENAME in terms of initialization — it can initialize the value for the following:

- BFILE column
- BFILE (automatic) variable declared inside a PL/SQL module

## Characteristics of the BFILE Data Type

Using the BFILE data type has the following advantages:

- If your need for a particular BFILE is temporary and limited within the module on which you are working, then you can use the BFILE related APIs on the variable without ever having to associate this with a column in the database.
- Because you are not forced to create a BFILE column in a server side table, initialize this column value, and then retrieve this column value using a SELECT, you save a round-trip to the server.

For more information, refer to the example given for DBMS\_LOB.LOADFROMFILE (see ["Loading a LOB with BFILE Data"](#) on page 21-10).

The OCI counterpart for BFILENAME is OCILobFileSetName(), which can be used in a similar fashion.

## DIRECTORY Name Specification

You must have CREATE ANY DIRECTORY system privilege to create directories. Path names cannot contain two dots (".."). The naming convention for DIRECTORY objects is the same as that for tables and indexes. That is, normal identifiers are interpreted in

uppercase, but delimited identifiers are interpreted as is. For example, the following statement:

```
CREATE OR REPLACE DIRECTORY scott_dir AS '/usr/home/scott';
```

creates or redefines a DIRECTORY object whose name is 'SCOTT\_DIR' (in uppercase). But if a delimited identifier is used for the DIRECTORY name, as shown in the following statement

```
CREATE DIRECTORY "Mary_Dir" AS '/usr/home/mary';
```

then the directory object name is 'Mary\_Dir'. Use 'SCOTT\_DIR' and 'Mary\_Dir' when calling BFILENAME. For example:

```
BFILENAME('SCOTT_DIR', 'afile')  
BFILENAME('Mary_Dir', 'afile')
```

### On Windows Platforms

On Windows platforms the directory names are case-insensitive. Therefore the following two statements refer to the same directory:

```
CREATE DIRECTORY "big_cap_dir" AS "g:\data\source";  
  
CREATE DIRECTORY "small_cap_dir" AS "G:\DATA\SOURCE";
```

## BFILE Security

This section introduces the BFILE security model and associated SQL statements. The main SQL statements associated with BFILE security are:

- SQL DDL: CREATE and REPLACE or ALTER a DIRECTORY object
- SQL DML: GRANT and REVOKE the READ system and object privileges on DIRECTORY objects

### Ownership and Privileges

The DIRECTORY object is a *system owned* object. For more information on system owned objects, see *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*. Oracle Database supports two new system privileges, which are granted only to DBA:

- CREATE ANY DIRECTORY — for creating or altering the DIRECTORY object creation
- DROP ANY DIRECTORY — for deleting the DIRECTORY object

### Read Permission on a DIRECTORY Object

READ permission on the DIRECTORY object enables you to read files located under that directory. The creator of the DIRECTORY object automatically earns the READ privilege.

If you have been granted the READ permission with GRANT option, then you may in turn grant this privilege to other users/roles and add them to your privilege domains.

---

---

**Note:** The READ permission is defined only on the DIRECTORY *object*, not on individual files. Hence there is no way to assign different privileges to files in the same directory.

---

---

The physical directory that it represents may or may not have the corresponding operating system privileges (*read* in this case) for the Oracle Server process.

It is the responsibility of the DBA to ensure the following:

- That the physical directory exists
- *Read* permission for the Oracle Server process is enabled on the file, the directory, and the path leading to it
- The directory remains available, and *read* permission remains enabled, for the entire duration of file access by database users

The privilege just implies that as far as the Oracle Server is concerned, you may read from files in the directory. These privileges are checked and enforced by the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package and OCI APIs at the time of the actual file operations.

---



---

**Caution:** Because **CREATE ANY DIRECTORY** and **DROP ANY DIRECTORY** privileges potentially expose the server file system to all database users, the DBA should be prudent in granting these privileges to normal database users to prevent security breach.

---



---

## SQL DDL for BFILE Security

Refer to the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the following SQL DDL statements that create, replace, and drop DIRECTORY objects:

- CREATE DIRECTORY
- DROP DIRECTORY

## SQL DML for BFILE Security

Refer to the *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference* for information about the following SQL DML statements that provide security for BFILES:

- GRANT (system privilege)
- GRANT (object privilege)
- REVOKE (system privilege)
- REVOKE (object privilege)
- AUDIT (new statements)
- AUDIT (schema objects)

## Catalog Views on Directories

Catalog views are provided for DIRECTORY objects to enable users to view object names and corresponding paths and privileges. Supported views are:

- ALL\_DIRECTORIES (OWNER, DIRECTORY\_NAME, DIRECTORY\_PATH)  
This view describes all directories accessible to the user.
- DBA\_DIRECTORIES(OWNER, DIRECTORY\_NAME, DIRECTORY\_PATH)  
This view describes all directories specified for the entire database.

## Guidelines for DIRECTORY Usage

The main goal of the `DIRECTORY` feature is to enable a simple, flexible, non-intrusive, yet secure mechanism for the DBA to manage access to large files in the server file system. But to realize this goal, it is very important that the DBA follow these guidelines when using `DIRECTORY` objects:

- Do not map a `DIRECTORY` object to a data file directory. A `DIRECTORY` object should not be mapped to physical directories that contain Oracle data files, control files, log files, and other system files. Tampering with these files (accidental or otherwise) could corrupt the database or the server operating system.
- Only the DBA should have system privileges. The system privileges such as `CREATE ANY DIRECTORY` (granted to the DBA initially) should be used carefully and not granted to other users indiscriminately. In most cases, only the database administrator should have these privileges.
- Use caution when granting the `DIRECTORY` privilege. Privileges on `DIRECTORY` objects should be granted to different users carefully. The same holds for the use of the `WITH GRANT OPTION` clause when granting privileges to users.
- Do not drop or replace `DIRECTORY` objects when database is in operation. `DIRECTORY` objects should not be arbitrarily dropped or replaced when the database is in operation. If this were to happen, then operations *from all sessions* on all files associated with this `DIRECTORY` object fail. Further, if a `DROP` or `REPLACE` command is executed before these files could be successfully closed, then the references to these files are lost in the programs, and system resources associated with these files are not be released until the session(s) is shut down.

The only recourse left to PL/SQL users, for example, is to either run a program block that calls `DBMS_LOB.FILECLOSEALL` and restart their file operations, or exit their sessions altogether. Hence, it is imperative that you use these commands with prudence, and preferably during maintenance downtimes.

- Use caution when revoking a user's privilege on `DIRECTORY` objects. Revoking a user's privilege on a `DIRECTORY` object using the `REVOKE` statement causes all subsequent operations on dependent files from the user's session to fail. Either you must re-acquire the privileges to close the file, or run a `FILECLOSEALL` in the session and restart the file operations.

In general, using `DIRECTORY` objects for managing file access is an extension of system administration work at the operating system level. With some planning, files can be logically organized into suitable directories that have `READ` privileges for the Oracle process.

`DIRECTORY` objects can be created with `READ` privileges that map to these physical directories, and specific database users granted access to these directories.

## BFILES in Shared Server (Multithreaded Server) Mode

The database does not support session migration for `BFILE` data types in shared server (multithreaded server) mode. This implies that operations on open `BFILE` instances can persist beyond the end of a call to a shared server.

In shared server sessions, `BFILE` operations are bound to one shared server, they cannot migrate from one server to another.

## External LOB (BFILE) Locators

For BFILES, the value is stored in a server-side operating system file; in other words, external to the database. The BFILE locator that refers to that file is stored in the row.

### When Two Rows in a BFILE Table Refer to the Same File

If a BFILE locator variable that is used in a DBMS\_LOB.FILEOPEN (for example L1) is assigned to another locator variable, (for example L2), then both L1 and L2 point to the same file. This means that two rows in a table with a BFILE column can refer to the same file or to two distinct files — a fact that the canny developer might turn to advantage, but which could well be a pitfall for the unwary.

### BFILE Locator Variable

A BFILE locator variable operates like any other automatic variable. With respect to file operations, it operates like a *file descriptor* available as part of the standard input/output library of most conventional programming languages. This implies that once you define and initialize a BFILE locator, and open the file pointed to by this locator, all subsequent operations until the closure of this file must be done from within the same program block using this locator or local copies of this locator.

### Guidelines for BFILES

Note the following guidelines when working with BFILES:

- Open and close a file from the same program block at same nesting level. The BFILE locator variable can be used, just as any scalar, as a parameter to other procedures, member methods, or external function callouts. However, it is recommended that you open and close a file from the same program block at the same nesting level.
- Set the BFILE value before flushing the object to the database. If an object contains a BFILE, then you must set the BFILE value before flushing the object to the database, thereby inserting a new row. In other words, you must call `OCIlobFileSetName()` after `OCIObjectNew()` and before `OCIObjectFlush()`.
- Indicate the DIRECTORY object name and file name before inserting or updating of a BFILE. It is an error to insert or update a BFILE without indicating a DIRECTORY object name and file name.

This rule also applies to users using an OCI bind variable for a BFILE in an insert or update statement. The OCI bind variable must be initialized with a DIRECTORY object name and file name before issuing the insert or update statement.

- Initialize BFILE Before insert or update

---



---

**Note:** `OCISetAttr()` does not allow the user to set a BFILE locator to NULL.

---



---

- Before using SQL to insert or update a row with a BFILE, you must initialize the BFILE to one of the following:
  - NULL (not possible if using an OCI bind variable)
  - A DIRECTORY object name and file name
- A path name cannot contain two dots ("..") anywhere in its specification. A file name cannot start with two dots.

## Loading a LOB with BFILE Data

This section describes how to load a LOB with data from a BFILE.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* for details of working with BFILE functions in this chapter.

### Preconditions

The following preconditions must exist before calling this procedure:

- The source BFILE instance must exist.
- The destination LOB instance must exist.

### Usage Notes

---

---

**Note:** The `LOADBLOBFROMFILE` and `LOADCLOBFROMFILE` procedures implement the functionality of this procedure and provide improved features for loading binary data and character data. The improved procedures are available in the PL/SQL environment only. When possible, using one of the improved procedures is recommended. See "[Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE](#)" on page 22-7 and "[Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE](#)" on page 22-9 for more information.

---

---

### Character Set Conversion

In using OCI, or any of the programmatic environments that access OCI functionality, character set conversions are *implicitly* performed when translating from one character set to another.

### BFILE to CLOB or NCLOB: Converting From Binary Data to a Character Set

When you use the `DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE` procedure to populate a CLOB or NCLOB, you are populating the LOB with binary data from the BFILE. *No implicit translation* is performed from binary data to a character set. For this reason, you should use the `LOADCLOBFROMFILE` procedure when loading text (see [Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE](#) on page 22-9).

**See Also:** *Oracle Database Globalization Support Guide* for character set conversion issues.

### Amount Parameter

Note the following with respect to the amount parameter:

- `DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE`  
If you want to load the entire BFILE, then pass the constant `DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE`. If you pass any other value, then it must be less than or equal to the size of the BFILE.
- `OCIlobLoadFromFile()`



If you want to load the entire BFILE, then you can pass the constant `UB4MAXVAL`. If you pass any other value, then it must be less than or equal to the size of the BFILE.

- `OCIlobLoadFromFile2()`

If you want to load the entire BFILE, then you can pass the constant `UB8MAXVAL`. If you pass any other value, then it must be less than or equal to the size of the BFILE.

**See Also:** [Table 22-2, "Maximum LOB Size for Load from File Operations"](#) on page 22-7 for details on the maximum value of the amount parameter.

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — `LOADFROMFILE`
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*: Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations", for usage notes and examples. Chapter 16, "LOB Functions" — `OCIlobLoadFromFile2()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, embedded SQL, and LOB LOAD precompiler directives.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements" "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives"— LOB LOAD.
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `floaddat.sql`
- OCI: `floaddat.c`
- COM (OO4O): `floaddat.bas`
- Java (JDBC): No example.

## Opening a BFILE with OPEN

This section describes how to open a BFILE using the `OPEN` function.

---

**Note:** You can also open a BFILE using the `FILEOPEN` function; however, using the `OPEN` function is recommended for new development. Using the `FILEOPEN` function is described in [Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN](#) on page 21-12.

---

**See Also:** [Table 21-1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL(DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — OPEN
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations", for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBOpen()`, `OCILOBClose()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) (*Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB OPEN.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB OPEN.
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

## Scenario

These examples open an image in operating system file `ADPHOTO_DIR`.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL(DBMS\_LOB): `fopen.sql`
- OCI: `fopen.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fopen.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fopen.java`

# Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN

This section describes how to open a BFILE using the FILEOPEN function.

---

---

**Note:** The FILEOPEN function is not recommended for new application development. The OPEN function is recommended for new development. See "[Opening a BFILE with OPEN](#)" on page 21-11

---

---

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

## Usage Notes for Opening a BFILE

While you can continue to use the older FILEOPEN form, Oracle *strongly recommends* that you switch to using OPEN, because this facilitates future extensibility.

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — FILEOPEN, FILECLOSE

- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations, for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCIlobFileOpen()`, `OCIlobFileClose()`, `OCIlobFileNameSet()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- COM (OO4O): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Scenario for Opening a BFILE

These examples open `keyboard_logo.jpg` in DIRECTORY object `MEDIA_DIR`.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following four programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `ffilopen.sql`
- OCI: `ffilopen.c`
- Java (JDBC): `ffilopen.java`

## Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN

This section describes how to determine whether a BFILE is open using ISOPEN.

---



---

**Note:** This function (`ISOPEN`) is recommended for new application development. The older `FILEISOPEN` function, described in "[Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN](#)" on page 21-14, is not recommended for new development.

---



---

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — `ISOPEN`
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCIlobFileIsOpen()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB DESCRIBE ... ISOPEN`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — `LOB DESCRIBE ... ISOPEN`
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*

- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fisopen.sql`
- OCI: `fisopen.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fisopen.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fisopen.java`

## Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN

This section describes how to determine whether a BFILE is OPEN using the FILEISOPEN function.

---

---

**Note:** The FILEISOPEN function is not recommended for new application development. The ISOPEN function is recommended for new development. See [Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN](#) on page 21-13

---

---

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Usage Notes

While you can continue to use the older FILEISOPEN form, Oracle *strongly recommends* that you switch to using ISOPEN, because this facilitates future extensibility.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL(DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — FILEISOPEN
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCIlobFileIsOpen()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- COM (OO4O): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Scenario

These examples query whether a BFILE associated with `ad_graphic` is open.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL(DBMS\_LOB): `ffisopen.sql`
- OCI: `ffisopen.c`
- Java (JDBC): `ffisopen.java`

## Displaying BFILE Data

This section describes how to display BFILE data.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — READ. Chapter 29, "DBMS\_OUTPUT" - PUT\_LINE
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILobFileOpen()`, `OCILobRead2()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB READ, DISPLAY.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements" — READ
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

Examples are provided in these programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fdisplay.sql`
- OCI: `fdisplay.c`
- Java (JDBC): `fdisplay.java`

## Reading Data from a BFILE

This section describes how to read data from a BFILE.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Usage Notes

Note the following when using this operation.

### Streaming Read in OCI

The most efficient way to read large amounts of BFILE data is by `OCILOBRead2()` with the streaming mechanism enabled, and using polling or callback. To do so, specify the starting point of the read using the `offset` parameter as follows:

```
ub8 char_amt = 0;
ub8 byte_amt = 0;
ub4 offset = 1000;
```

```
OCILOBRead2(svchp, errhp, locp, &byte_amt, &char_amt, offset, bufp, buf1,
            OCI_ONE_PIECE, 0, 0, 0, 0);
```

When using *polling mode*, be sure to look at the value of the `byte_amt` parameter after each `OCILOBRead2()` call to see how many bytes were read into the buffer, because the buffer may not be entirely full.

When using *callbacks*, the `lenp` parameter, which is input to the callback, indicates how many bytes are filled in the buffer. Be sure to check the `lenp` parameter during your callback processing because the entire buffer may not be filled with data (see the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*.)

### Amount Parameter

- When calling `DBMS_LOB.READ`, the amount parameter can be larger than the size of the data; however, the amount parameter should be less than or equal to the size of the buffer. In PL/SQL, the buffer size is limited to 32K.
- When calling `OCILOBRead2()`, you can pass a value of 0 (zero) for the `byte_amt` parameter to read to the end of the BFILE.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — READ
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBRead2()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) (*Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB READ.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB READ
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fread.sql`
- OCI: `fread.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fread.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fread.java`

## Reading a Portion of BFILE Data Using SUBSTR

This section describes how to read portion of BFILE data using SUBSTR.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, " Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — SUBSTR
- OCI: A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB OPEN, LOB CLOSE. See PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.SUBSTR.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB OPEN. See also PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.SUBSTR
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

Examples are provided in these five programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `freadprt.sql`
- C (OCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `freadprt.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `freadprt.java`

## Comparing All or Parts of Two BFILES

This section describes how to compare all or parts of two BFILES.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, " Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL(DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — COMPARE
- C (OCI): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB OPEN. See PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.COMPARE.

- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB OPEN. See PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.COMPARE.
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

Examples are provided in these five programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL(DBMS\_LOB): `fcompare.sql`
- OCI: No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `fcompare.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fcompare.java`

## Checking If a Pattern Exists in a BFILE Using INSTR

This section describes how to determine whether a pattern exists in a BFILE using INSTR.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — INSTR
- C (OCI): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB OPEN. See PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.INSTR.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB OPEN. See PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.INSTR.
- COM (OO4O): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- Java (JDBC) (*Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*): "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

These examples are provided in the following four programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fpattern.sql`
- OCI: No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): `fpattern.java`



## Determining Whether a BFILE Exists

This procedure determines whether a BFILE locator points to a valid BFILE instance.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*: "DBMS\_LOB" — FILEEXISTS
- C (OCI) *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*: Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — OCILobFileExists().
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB DESCRIBE ... FILEEXISTS.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*: "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB DESCRIBE ... GET FILEEXISTS
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

The examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fexists.sql`
- OCI: `fexists.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fexists.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fexists.java`

## Getting the Length of a BFILE

This section describes how to get the length of a BFILE.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*: "DBMS\_LOB" — GETLENGTH
- C (OCI) *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*: Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations". Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — OCILobGetLength2().

- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB DESCRIBE ... GET LENGTH INTO ...
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB DESCRIBE ... GET LENGTH INTO ...
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

The examples are provided in these programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `flength.sql`
- OCI: `flength.c`
- COM (OO4O): `flength.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `flength.java`

## Assigning a BFILE Locator

This section describes how to assign one BFILE locator to another.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- SQL (*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*): Chapter 7, "SQL Statements" — CREATE PROCEDURE
- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): Refer to [Chapter 12, "Advanced Design Considerations"](#) of this manual for information on assigning one lob locator to another.
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCIlobLocatorAssign()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB ASSIGN
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB ASSIGN
- COM (OO4O): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

The examples are provided in the following five programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fcopyloc.sql`

- OCI: `fcopyloc.c`
- COM: An example is not provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): `fcopyloc.java`

## Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE

This section describes how to get the `DIRECTORY` object name and file name of a BFILE.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — `FILEGETNAME`
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILobFileName()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) (*Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide*) for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB DESCRIBE ... GET DIRECTORY ...`
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — `LOB DESCRIBE ... GET DIRECTORY ...`
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

Examples of this procedure are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fgetdir.sql`
- OCI: `fgetdir.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fgetdir.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fgetdir.java`

## Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator

This section describes how to update a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator.

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): See the (*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*), Chapter 7, "SQL Statements" — UPDATE
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBFileSetName()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — ALLOCATE. See also (*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*), Chapter 7, "SQL Statements" — UPDATE
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives". See also (*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*), Chapter 7, "SQL Statements" — UPDATE
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Topics, Contents tab, select OO4O Automation Server > OBJECTS > OraBFILE > PROPERTIES > DirectoryName, FileName, and OO4O Automation Server > OBJECTS > OraDatabase > METHODS > ExecuteSQL. See also OO4O Automation Server > OBJECTS > OraBfile > Examples
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

The examples are provided in these programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fupdate.sql`
- OCI: `fupdate.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fupdate.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fupdate.java`

## Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE

This section describes how to close a BFILE with FILECLOSE.

---

---

**Note:** This function (FILECLOSE) is not recommended for new development. For new development, use the CLOSE function instead. See ["Closing a BFILE with CLOSE"](#) on page 21-23 for more information.

---

---

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB)(*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — FILEOPEN, FILECLOSE
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBFileClose()`.

- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- COM (OO4O): A syntax reference is not applicable in this release.
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fclose_f.sql`
- OCI: `fclose_f.c`
- COM (OO4O): This operation is not supported in COM. Instead use "[Closing a BFILE with CLOSE](#)" as described on page 21-23.
- Java (JDBC): `fclose_f.java`

## Closing a BFILE with CLOSE

This section describes how to close a BFILE with the CLOSE function.

---



---

**Note:** This function (CLOSE) is recommended for new application development. The older FILECLOSE function, is not recommended for new development.

---



---

**See Also:** [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Usage Notes

Opening and closing a BFILE is mandatory. You must close the instance later in the session.

**See Also:**

- [Opening a BFILE with OPEN](#) on page 21-11
- [Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN](#) on page 21-13

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — CLOSE
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBClose()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB CLOSE
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB CLOSE

- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference: "Working With LOBs and BFILEs"* — Working with BFILEs.

### Examples

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fclose_c.sql`
- OCI: `fclose_c.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fclose_c.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fclose_c.java`

## Closing All Open BFILEs with FILECLOSEALL

This section describes how to close all open BFILEs.

You are responsible for closing any BFILE instances before your program terminates. For example, you must close any open BFILE instance before the termination of a PL/SQL block or OCI program.

You must close open BFILE instances even in cases where an exception or unexpected termination of your application occurs. In these cases, if a BFILE instance is not closed, then it is still considered open by the database. Ensure that your exception handling strategy does not allow BFILE instances to remain open in these situations.

### See Also:

- [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILEs and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.
- ["Setting Maximum Number of Open BFILEs"](#) on page 3-5

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB) (*Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*): "DBMS\_LOB" — FILECLOSEALL
- C (OCI) (*Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*): Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations" for usage notes. Chapter 16, section "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBFileCloseAll()`.
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB FILE CLOSE ALL
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) (*Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*): "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB FILE CLOSE ALL
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs and BFILEs" — Working with BFILEs.

### Examples

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fclosea.sql`

- OCI: `fclosea.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fclosea.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fclosea.java`

## Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE

This section describes how to insert a row containing a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator.

### See Also:

- [Table 21–1, "Environments Supported for BFILE APIs"](#) on page 21-2, for a list of operations on BFILES and APIs provided for each programmatic environment.

### Usage Notes

You must initialize the BFILE locator bind variable to NULL or a DIRECTORY object and file name before issuing the INSERT statement.

### Syntax

See the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- SQL (*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*, Chapter 7 "SQL Statements" — INSERT)
- C (OCI) *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*: Chapter 7, "LOB and File Operations".
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, embedded SQL, and precompiler directives. See also *Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*, for related information on the SQL INSERT statement.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide*: "Large Objects (LOBs)", "LOB Statements", "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB FILE SET. See also (*Oracle Database SQL Language Reference*), Chapter 7 "SQL Statements" — INSERT
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC) *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*: "Working With LOBs and BFILES" — Working with BFILES.

### Examples

Examples in the following programmatic environments are provided:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): `fininsert.sql`
- OCI: `fininsert.c`
- COM (OO4O): `fininsert.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `fininsert.java`





---

---

## Using LOB APIs

This chapter describes APIs that perform operations on BLOB, CLOB, and NCLOB data types. The operations given in this chapter can be used with either persistent or temporary LOB instances. Note that operations in this chapter do not apply to BFILEs. APIs covered in this chapter are listed in [Table 22-1](#).

### See Also:

- [Chapter 19, "Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs"](#) for information on how to create temporary and persistent LOB instances and other operations specific to temporary or persistent LOBs.
- [Chapter 21, "LOB APIs for BFILE Operations"](#) for information on operations specific to BFILE instances.

The following information is given for each operation described in this chapter:

- *Preconditions* describe dependencies that must be met and conditions that must exist before calling each operation.
- *Usage Notes* provide implementation guidelines such as information specific to a given programmatic environment or data type.
- *Syntax* refers you to the syntax reference documentation for each supported programmatic environment.
- *Examples* describe any setup tasks necessary to run the examples given. Demonstration files listed are available in subdirectories under `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/` named `plssql`, `oci`, `vb`, and `java`. The driver program `lobdemo.sql` is in `/plssql` and the driver program `lobdemo.c` is in `/oci`.

This chapter contains these topics:

- [Supported Environments](#)
- [Appending One LOB to Another](#)
- [Determining Character Set Form](#)
- [Determining Character Set ID](#)
- [Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE](#)
- [Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE](#)
- [Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE](#)
- [Determining Whether a LOB is Open](#)

- [Displaying LOB Data](#)
- [Reading Data from a LOB](#)
- [LOB Array Read](#)
- [Reading a Portion of a LOB \(SUBSTR\)](#)
- [Comparing All or Part of Two LOBs](#)
- [Patterns: Checking for Patterns in a LOB Using INSTR](#)
- [Length: Determining the Length of a LOB](#)
- [Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB](#)
- [Copying a LOB Locator](#)
- [Equality: Checking If One LOB Locator Is Equal to Another](#)
- [Determining Whether LOB Locator Is Initialized](#)
- [Appending to a LOB](#)
- [Writing Data to a LOB](#)
- [LOB Array Write](#)
- [Trimming LOB Data](#)
- [Erasing Part of a LOB](#)
- [Enabling LOB Buffering](#)
- [Flushing the Buffer](#)
- [Disabling LOB Buffering](#)
- [Determining Whether a LOB instance Is Temporary](#)
- [Converting a BLOB to a CLOB](#)
- [Converting a CLOB to a BLOB](#)
- [Ensuring Read Consistency](#)

## Supported Environments

Table 22–1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs" indicates which programmatic environments are supported for the APIs discussed in this chapter. The first column describes the operation that the API performs. The remaining columns indicate with "Yes" or "No" whether the API is supported in PL/SQL, OCI, OCCI, COBOL, Pro\*C/C++, COM, and JDBC.

**Table 22–1** *Environments Supported for LOB APIs*

Operation	PL/SQL	OCI	OCCI	COBOL	Pro*C/C++	COM	JDBC
<a href="#">Appending One LOB to Another</a> on page 22-4	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Determining Character Set Form</a> on page 22-5	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">Determining Character Set ID</a> on page 22-5	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
Determining Chunk Size, See: <a href="#">Writing Data to a LOB</a> on page 22-27	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

**Table 22–1 (Cont.) Environments Supported for LOB APIs**

Operation	PL/SQL	OCI	OCCI	COBOL	Pro*C/C++	COM	JDBC
<a href="#">Comparing All or Part of Two LOBs</a> on page 22-21	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Converting a BLOB to a CLOB</a> on page 22-40	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">Converting a CLOB to a BLOB</a> on page 22-40	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">Copying a LOB Locator</a> on page 22-24	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB</a> on page 22-23	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Disabling LOB Buffering</a> on page 22-38	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
<a href="#">Displaying LOB Data</a> on page 22-11	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Enabling LOB Buffering</a> on page 22-36	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
<a href="#">Equality: Checking If One LOB Locator Is Equal to Another</a> on page 22-25	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	Yes
<a href="#">Erasing Part of a LOB</a> on page 22-35	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Flushing the Buffer</a> on page 22-37	No	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	No	No
<a href="#">Determining Whether LOB Locator Is Initialized</a> on page 22-25	No	Yes	No	No	Yes	No	No
<a href="#">Length: Determining the Length of a LOB</a> on page 22-22	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE</a> on page 22-6	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE</a> on page 22-7	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE</a> on page 22-9	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">LOB Array Read</a> on page 22-14	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">LOB Array Write</a> on page 22-29	No	Yes	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">Opening Persistent LOBs with the OPEN and CLOSE Interfaces</a> on page 12-9	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Open: Determining Whether a LOB is Open</a> on page 22-10	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Patterns: Checking for Patterns in a LOB Using INSTR</a> on page 22-22	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
<a href="#">Reading a Portion of a LOB (SUBSTR)</a> on page 22-20	Yes	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Reading Data from a LOB</a> on page 22-13	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<a href="#">Storage Limit, Determining: Maximum Storage Limit for Terabyte-Size LOBs</a> on page 12-22	Yes	No	No	No	No	No	No

**Table 22–1 (Cont.) Environments Supported for LOB APIs**

Operation	PL/SQL	OCI	OCCI	COBOL	Pro*C/C++	COM	JDBC
<a href="#">Trimming LOB Data</a> on page 22-35	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
WriteNoAppend, see <a href="#">Appending to a LOB</a> on page 22-26.	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
<a href="#">Writing Data to a LOB</a> on page 22-27	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

## Appending One LOB to Another

This operation appends one LOB instance to another.

### Preconditions

Before you can append one LOB to another, the following conditions must be met:

- Two LOB instances must exist.
- Both instances must be of the same type, for example both BLOB or both CLOB types.
- You can pass any combination of persistent or temporary LOB instances to this operation.

### Usage Notes

**Persistent LOBs:** You must lock the row you are selecting the LOB from prior to updating a LOB value if you are using the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB Package or OCI. While the SQL INSERT and UPDATE statements implicitly lock the row, locking the row can be done explicitly using the SQL SELECT FOR UPDATE statement in SQL and PL/SQL programs, or by using an OCI pin or lock function in OCI programs. For more details on the state of the locator after an update, refer to "[Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators](#)" on page 12-12.

### Syntax

See the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — APPEND
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — OCILobAppend()
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB APPEND.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* for information on embedded SQL statements and directives — LOB APPEND
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* for information on creating and populating LOB columns in Java.

**Examples**

To run the following examples, you must create two LOB instances and pass them when you call the given append operation. Creating a LOB instance is described in [Chapter 19, "Operations Specific to Persistent and Temporary LOBs"](#).

Examples for this use case are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lappend.sql`
- OCI: `lappend.c`
- COM (OO4O): `lappend.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lappend.java`

**Determining Character Set Form**

This section describes how to get the character set form of a LOB instance.

**Syntax**

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions"* — `OCILobCharSetForm()`
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.
- COM (OO4O): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.
- Java (JDBC): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.

**Example**

The example demonstrates how to determine the character set form of the foreign language text (`ad_fltexn`).

This functionality is currently available only in OCI:

- OCI: `lgetchfm.c`

**Determining Character Set ID**

This section describes how to determine the character set ID.

**Syntax**

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "Relational Functions"* — `LOB Functions, OCILobCharSetId()`
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.

- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation
- COM (OO4O): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.
- Java (JDBC): There is no applicable syntax reference for this operation.

### Example

This functionality is currently available only in OCI:

- OCI: `lgetchar.c`

## Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE

This operation loads a LOB with data from a BFILE. This procedure can be used to load data into any persistent or temporary LOB instance of any LOB data type.

### See Also:

- The `LOADBLOBFROMFILE` and `LOADCLOBFROMFILE` procedures implement the functionality of this procedure and provide improved features for loading binary data and character data. (These improved procedures are available in the PL/SQL environment only.) When possible, using one of the improved procedures is recommended. See ["Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-7 and ["Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-9 for more information.
- As an alternative to this operation, you can use SQL\*Loader to load persistent LOBs with data directly from a file in the file system. See ["Using SQL\\*Loader to Load LOBs"](#) on page 3-1 for more information.

### Preconditions

Before you can load a LOB with data from a BFILE, the following conditions must be met:

- The BFILE must exist.
- The target LOB instance must exist.

### Usage Notes

Note the following issues regarding this operation.

#### Use `LOADCLOBFROMFILE` When Loading Character Data

When you use the `DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE` procedure to load a CLOB or NCLOB instance, you are loading the LOB with binary data from the BFILE and no implicit character set conversion is performed. For this reason, using the `DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE` procedure is recommended when loading character data, see [Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE](#) on page 22-9 for more information.

#### Specifying Amount of BFILE Data to Load

The value you pass for the amount parameter to functions listed in [Table 22-2](#) must be one of the following:

- An amount less than or equal to the actual size (in bytes) of the BFILE you are loading.

- The maximum allowable LOB size (in bytes). Passing this value, loads the entire BFILE. You can use this technique to load the entire BFILE without determining the size of the BFILE before loading. To get the maximum allowable LOB size, use the technique described in [Table 22-2](#).

**Table 22-2 Maximum LOB Size for Load from File Operations**

Environment	Function	To pass maximum LOB size, get value of:
DBMS_LOB	DBMS_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE	DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE
DBMS_LOB	DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE	DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE
OCI	OCILobLoadFromFile2() (For LOBs of any size.)	UB8MAXVAL
OCI	OCILobLoadFromFile() (For LOBs less than 4 gigabytes in size.)	UB4MAXVAL

### Syntax

See the following syntax references for details on using this operation in each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — LOADFROMFILE.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — OCILobLoadFromFile().
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB LOAD, LOB OPEN, LOB CLOSE.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB LOAD
- COM (OO4O) *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lloadat.sql`
- OCI: `lloadat.c`
- COM (OO4O): `lloadat.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lloadat.java`

## Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE

This procedure loads a BLOB with data from a BFILE. This procedure can be used to load data into any persistent or temporary BLOB instance.

**See Also:**

- ["Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-6
- To load character data, use `DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE`. See ["Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-9 for more information.
- As an alternative to this operation, you can use SQL\*Loader to load persistent LOBs with data directly from a file in the file system. See ["Using SQL\\*Loader to Load LOBs"](#) on page 3-1 for more information.

**Preconditions**

The following conditions must be met before calling this procedure:

- The target BLOB instance must exist.
- The source BFILE must exist.
- You must open the BFILE. (After calling this procedure, you must close the BFILE at some point.)

**Usage Notes**

Note the following with respect to this operation:

**New Offsets Returned**

Using `DBMS_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE` to load binary data into a BLOB achieves the same result as using `DBMS_LOB.LOADFROMFILE`, but also returns the new offsets of BLOB.

**Specifying Amount of BFILE Data to Load**

The value you pass for the amount parameter to the `DBMS_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE` function must be one of the following:

- An amount less than or equal to the actual size (in bytes) of the BFILE you are loading.
- The maximum allowable LOB size: `DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE`. Passing this value causes the function to load the entire BFILE. This is a useful technique for loading the entire BFILE without introspecting the size of the BFILE.

**See Also:** [Table 22-2, "Maximum LOB Size for Load from File Operations"](#)

**Syntax**

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*, "DBMS\_LOB" — `LOADBLOBFROMFILE` procedure for syntax details on this procedure.

**Examples**

This example is available in PL/SQL only. This API is not provided in other programmatic environments. The online file is `l1dblobf.sql`. This example illustrates:

- How to use `LOADBLOBFROMFILE` to load the entire BFILE without getting its length first.
- How to use the return value of the offsets to calculate the actual amount loaded.



## Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE

This procedure loads a CLOB or NCLOB with character data from a BFILE. This procedure can be used to load data into a persistent or temporary CLOB or NCLOB instance.

### See Also:

- ["Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-6
- To load binary data, use `DBMS_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE`. See ["Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE"](#) on page 22-7 for more information.
- As an alternative to this operation, you can use SQL\*Loader to load persistent LOBs with data directly from a file in the file system. See ["Using SQL\\*Loader to Load LOBs"](#) on page 3-1 for more information.

### Preconditions

The following conditions must be met before calling this procedure:

- The target CLOB or NCLOB instance must exist.
- The source BFILE must exist.
- You must open the BFILE. (After calling this procedure, you must close the BFILE at some point.)

### Usage Notes

You can specify the character set id of the BFILE when calling this procedure. Doing so, ensures that the character set is properly converted from the BFILE data character set to the destination CLOB or NCLOB character set.

### Specifying Amount of BFILE Data to Load

The value you pass for the amount parameter to the `DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE` function must be one of the following:

- An amount less than or equal to the actual size (in characters) of the BFILE data you are loading.
- The maximum allowable LOB size: `DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE`

Passing this value causes the function to load the entire BFILE. This is a useful technique for loading the entire BFILE without introspecting the size of the BFILE.

### Syntax

See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference*, "DBMS\_LOB" — `LOADCLOBFROMFILE` procedure for syntax details on this procedure.

### Examples

The following examples illustrate different techniques for using this API:

- ["PL/SQL: Loading Character Data from a BFILE into a LOB"](#)
- ["PL/SQL: Loading Segments of Character Data into Different LOBs"](#)

## PL/SQL: Loading Character Data from a BFILE into a LOB

The following example illustrates:

- How to use default csid (0).
- How to load the entire file without calling `getlength` for the BFILE.
- How to find out the actual amount loaded using return offsets.

This example assumes that `ad_source` is a BFILE in UTF8 character set format and the database character set is UTF8. The online file is `l1dclobf.sql`.

## PL/SQL: Loading Segments of Character Data into Different LOBs

The following example illustrates:

- How to get the character set ID from the character set name using the `NLS_CHARSET_ID` function.
- How to load a stream of data from a single BFILE into different LOBs using the returned offset value and the language context `lang_ctx`.
- How to read a warning message.

This example assumes that `ad_file_ext_01` is a BFILE in JA16TSTSET format and the database national character set is AL16UTF16. The online file is `l1dclobs.sql`.

## Determining Whether a LOB is Open

This operation determines whether a LOB is open.

### Preconditions

The LOB instance must exist before executing this procedure.

### Usage Notes

When a LOB is open, it must be closed at some point later in the session.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — `OPEN`, `ISOPEN`.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCILobIsOpen()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB DESCRIBE`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — `LOB DESCRIBE ... ISOPEN ...`
- COM (OO4O): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lisopen.sql`
- OCI: `lisopen.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): `lisopen.java`

## Java (JDBC): Checking If a LOB Is Open

Here is how to check a BLOB or a CLOB.

### Checking If a CLOB Is Open

To see if a CLOB is open, your JDBC application can use the `isOpen` method defined in `oracle.sql.CLOB`. The return Boolean value indicates whether the CLOB has been previously opened or not. The `isOpen` method is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Check whether the CLOB is opened.
 * @return true if the LOB is opened.
 */
public boolean isOpen () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is:

```
CLOB clob = ...
// See if the CLOB is opened
boolean isOpen = clob.isOpen ();
...
```

### Checking If a BLOB Is Open

To see if a BLOB is open, your JDBC application can use the `isOpen` method defined in `oracle.sql.BLOB`. The return Boolean value indicates whether the BLOB has been previously opened or not. The `isOpen` method is defined as follows:

```
/**
 * Check whether the BLOB is opened.
 * @return true if the LOB is opened.
 */
public boolean isOpen () throws SQLException
```

The usage example is:

```
BLOB blob = ...
// See if the BLOB is opened
boolean isOpen = blob.isOpen ();
...
```

## Displaying LOB Data

This section describes APIs that allow you to read LOB data. You can use this operation to read LOB data into a buffer. This is useful if your application requires displaying large amounts of LOB data or streaming data operations.

## Usage Notes

Note the following when using these APIs.

### Streaming Mechanism

The most efficient way to read large amounts of LOB data is to use `OCILobRead2()` with the streaming mechanism enabled.

### Amount Parameter

The value you pass for the amount parameter is restricted for the APIs described in [Table 22-3](#).

**Table 22-3 Maximum LOB Size for Amount Parameter**

Environment	Function	Value of amount parameter is limited to:
DBMS_LOB	<code>DBMS_LOB.READ</code>	The size of the buffer, 32Kbytes.
OCI	<code>OCILobRead()</code> (For LOBs less than 4 gigabytes in size.)	UB4MAXVAL Specifying this amount reads the entire file.
OCI	<code>OCILobRead2()</code> (For LOBs of any size.)	UB8MAXVAL Specifying this amount reads the entire file.

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — OPEN, READ, CLOSE.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" —, `OCILobOpen()`, `OCILobRead2()`, `OCILobClose()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB READ.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB READ
- COM (OO4O) (Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O) *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `ldisplay.sql`
- OCI: `ldisplay.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided in this release.
- COM (OO4O): `ldisplay.bas`

- Java (JDBC): `ldisplay.java`

## Reading Data from a LOB

This section describes how to read data from LOBs using `OCILOBRead2()`.

### Usage Notes

Note the following when using this operation.

#### Streaming Read in OCI

The most efficient way to read large amounts of LOB data is to use `OCILOBRead2()` with the streaming mechanism enabled using polling or callback. To do so, specify the starting point of the read using the `offset` parameter as follows:

```
ub8 char_amt = 0;
ub8 byte_amt = 0;
ub4 offset = 1000;
```

```
OCILOBRead2(svchp, errhp, locp, &byte_amt, &char_amt, offset, bufp, bufl,
            OCI_ONE_PIECE, 0, 0, 0, 0);
```

When using *polling mode*, be sure to look at the value of the `byte_amt` parameter after each `OCILOBRead2()` call to see how many bytes were read into the buffer because the buffer may not be entirely full.

When using *callbacks*, the `lenp` parameter, which is input to the callback, indicates how many bytes are filled in the buffer. Be sure to check the `lenp` parameter during your callback processing because the entire buffer may not be filled with data (see the *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide*.)

#### Chunk Size

A chunk is one or more Oracle blocks. You can specify the chunk size for the BasicFiles LOB when creating the table that contains the LOB. This corresponds to the data size used by Oracle Database when accessing or modifying the LOB value. Part of the chunk is used to store system-related information and the rest stores the LOB value. The API you are using has a function that returns the amount of space used in the LOB chunk to store the LOB value. In PL/SQL use `DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE`. In OCI, use `OCILOBGetChunkSize()`. For **SecureFiles**, `CHUNK` is an advisory size and is provided for backward compatibility purposes.

To improve performance, you may run `write` requests using a multiple of the value returned by one of these functions. The reason for this is that you are using the same unit that the Oracle database uses when reading data from disk. If it is appropriate for your application, then you should batch reads until you have enough for an entire chunk instead of issuing several LOB read calls that operate on the same LOB chunk.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — `OPEN`, `GETCHUNKSIZE`, `READ`, `CLOSE`.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBOpen()`, `OCILOBRead2()`, `OCILOBClose()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*

- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB READ.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB READ
- COM (OO4O) *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lread.sql`
- OCI: `lread.c`
- COM (OO4O): `lread.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lread.java`

## LOB Array Read

This section describes how to read LOB data for multiple locators in one round trip, using `OCILobArrayRead()`.

### Usage Notes

This function improves performance in reading LOBs in the size range less than about 512 Kilobytes. For an OCI application example, assume that the program has a prepared SQL statement such as:

```
SELECT lob1 FROM lob_table for UPDATE;
```

where `lob1` is the LOB column and `lob_array` is an array of define variables corresponding to a LOB column:

```
OCILobLocator * lob_array[10];

...
for (i=0; i<10, i++)          /* initialize array of locators */
    lob_array[i] = OCIDescriptorAlloc(..., OCI_DTYPE_LOB, ...);
...

OCIDefineByPos(..., 1, (dvoid *) lob_array, ... SOLT_CLOB, ...);

/* Execute the statement with iters = 10 to do an array fetch of 10 locators. */
OCIStmtExecute ( <service context>, <statement handle>, <error handle>,
                10,          /* iters */
                0,          /* row offset */
                NULL,      /* snapshot IN */
                NULL,      /* snapshot out */
                OCI_DEFAULT /* mode */);
...

ub4 array_iter = 10;
char *bufp[10];
oraub8 buf1[10];
oraub8 char_amtp[10];
```

```

    oraub8 offset[10];

    for (i=0; i<10; i++)
    {
        bufp[i] = (char *)malloc(1000);
        buf1[i] = 1000;
        offset[i] = 1;
        char_amtp[i] = 1000; /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
    }

/* Read the 1st 1000 characters for all 10 locators in one
 * round trip. Note that offset and amount need not be
 * same for all the locators. */

OCILobArrayRead(<service context>, <error handle>,
                &array_iter, /* array size */
                lob_array, /* array of locators */
                NULL, /* array of byte amounts */
                char_amtp, /* array of char amounts */
                offset, /* array of offsets */
                (void **)bufp, /* array of read buffers */
                buf1, /* array of buffer lengths */
                OCI_ONE_PIECE, /* piece information */
                NULL, /* callback context */
                NULL, /* callback function */
                0, /* character set ID - default */
                SQLCS_IMPLICIT); /* character set form */

...

    for (i=0; i<10; i++)
    {
        /* Fill bufp[i] buffers with data to be written */
        strncpy (bufp[i], "Test Data-----", 15);
        buf1[i] = 1000;
        offset[i] = 50;
        char_amtp[i] = 15; /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
    }

/* Write the 15 characters from offset 50 to all 10
 * locators in one round trip. Note that offset and
 * amount need not be same for all the locators. */
*/

OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,
                 &array_iter, /* array size */
                 lob_array, /* array of locators */
                 NULL, /* array of byte amounts */
                 char_amtp, /* array of char amounts */
                 offset, /* array of offsets */
                 (void **)bufp, /* array of read buffers */
                 buf1, /* array of buffer lengths */
                 OCI_ONE_PIECE, /* piece information */
                 NULL, /* callback context */
                 NULL, /* callback function */
                 0, /* character set ID - default */
                 SQLCS_IMPLICIT); /* character set form */

...

```

### Streaming Support

LOB array APIs can be used to read/write LOB data in multiple pieces. This can be done by using polling method or a callback function.

Here data is read/written in multiple pieces sequentially for the array of locators. For polling, the API would return to the application after reading/writing each piece with the `array_iter` parameter (OUT) indicating the index of the locator for which data is read/written. With a callback, the function is called after reading/writing each piece with `array_iter` as IN parameter.

Note that:

- It is possible to read/write data for a few of the locators in one piece and read/write data for other locators in multiple pieces. Data is read/written in one piece for locators which have sufficient buffer lengths to accommodate the whole data to be read/written.
- Your application can use different amount value and buffer lengths for each locator.
- Your application can pass zero as the amount value for one or more locators indicating pure streaming for those locators. In the case of reading, LOB data is read to the end for those locators. For writing, data is written until `OCI_LAST_PIECE` is specified for those locators.

### LOB Array Read in Polling Mode

The following example reads 10Kbytes of data for each of 10 locators with 1Kbyte buffer size. Each locator needs 10 pieces to read the complete data.

`OCILobArrayRead()` must be called 100 (10\*10) times to fetch all the data.

First we call `OCILobArrayRead()` with `OCI_FIRST_PIECE` as `piece` parameter. This call returns the first 1K piece for the first locator.

Next `OCILobArrayRead()` is called in a loop until the application finishes reading all the pieces for the locators and returns `OCI_SUCCESS`. In this example it loops 99 times returning the pieces for the locators sequentially.

```

/* Fetch the locators */
...

/* array_iter parameter indicates the number of locators in the array read.
 * It is an IN parameter for the 1st call in polling and is ignored as IN
 * parameter for subsequent calls. As OUT parameter it indicates the locator
 * index for which the piece is read.
 */

ub4   array_iter = 10;
char  *bufp[10];
oraub8 buf1[10];
oraub8 char_amp[10];
oraub8 offset[10];
sword st;

for (i=0; i<10; i++)
{
    bufp[i] = (char *)malloc(1000);
    buf1[i] = 1000;
    offset[i] = 1;
    char_amp[i] = 10000;          /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
}

```



```

st = OCILobArrayRead(<service context>, <error handle>,
                    &array_iter, /* array size */
                    lob_array, /* array of locators */
                    NULL, /* array of byte amounts */
                    char_amp, /* array of char amounts */
                    offset, /* array of offsets */
                    (void **)bufp, /* array of read buffers */
                    buf1, /* array of buffer lengths */
                    OCI_FIRST_PIECE, /* piece information */
                    NULL, /* callback context */
                    NULL, /* callback function */
                    0, /* character set ID - default */
                    SQLCS_IMPLICIT); /* character set form */

/* First piece for the first locator is read here.
 * bufp[0] => Buffer pointer into which data is read.
 * char_amp[0 ] => Number of characters read in current buffer
 *
 */

While ( st == OCI_NEED_DATA)
{
    st = OCILobArrayRead(<service context>, <error handle>,
                        &array_iter, /* array size */
                        lob_array, /* array of locators */
                        NULL, /* array of byte amounts */
                        char_amp, /* array of char amounts */
                        offset, /* array of offsets */
                        (void **)bufp, /* array of read buffers */
                        buf1, /* array of buffer lengths */
                        OCI_NEXT_PIECE, /* piece information */
                        NULL, /* callback context */
                        NULL, /* callback function */
                        0, /* character set ID - default */
                        SQLCS_IMPLICIT);

/* array_iter returns the index of the current array element for which
 * data is read. for example, array_iter = 1 implies first locator,
 * array_iter = 2 implies second locator and so on.
 *
 * lob_array[ array_iter - 1]=> Lob locator for which data is read.
 * bufp[array_iter - 1] => Buffer pointer into which data is read.
 * char_amp[array_iter - 1] => Number of characters read in current buffer
 */

...
    /* Consume the data here */
...
}

```

### LOB Array Read with Callback

The following example reads 10Kbytes of data for each of 10 locators with 1Kbyte buffer size. Each locator needs 10 pieces to read all the data. The callback function is called 100 (10\*10) times to return the pieces sequentially.

```

/* Fetch the locators */
...
ub4    array_iter = 10;
char  *bufp[10];
oraub8 buf1[10];

```

```

oraub8 char_amtp[10];
oraub8 offset[10];
sword st;

for (i=0; i<10; i++)
{
    bufp[i] = (char *)malloc(1000);
    bufl[i] = 1000;
    offset[i] = 1;
    char_amtp[i] = 10000;      /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
}

st = OCILobArrayRead(<service context>, <error handle>,
                    &array_iter, /* array size */
                    lob_array,   /* array of locators */
                    NULL,        /* array of byte amounts */
                    char_amtp,   /* array of char amounts */
                    offset,      /* array of offsets */
                    (void **)bufp, /* array of read buffers */
                    bufl,        /* array of buffer lengths */
                    OCI_FIRST_PIECE, /* piece information */
                    ctx,         /* callback context */
                    cbk_read_lob, /* callback function */
                    0,           /* character set ID - default */
                    SQLCS_IMPLICIT);
...
/* Callback function for LOB array read. */
sb4 cbk_read_lob(dvoid *ctxp, ub4 array_iter, CONST dvoid *bufxp, oraub8 len,
                ub1 piece, dvoid **changed_bufpp, oraub8 *changed_lenp)
{
    static ub4 piece_count = 0;
    piece_count++;
    switch (piece)
    {
        case OCI_LAST_PIECE:
            /*--- buffer processing code goes here ---*/
            (void) printf("callback read the %d th piece(last piece) for %dth locator \n\n",
                piece_count, array_iter );
            piece_count = 0;
            break;
        case OCI_FIRST_PIECE:
            /*--- buffer processing code goes here ---*/
            (void) printf("callback read the 1st piece for %dth locator\n",
                array_iter);
            /* --Optional code to set changed_bufpp and changed_lenp if the buffer needs
               to be changed dynamically --*/
            break;
        case OCI_NEXT_PIECE:
            /*--- buffer processing code goes here ---*/
            (void) printf("callback read the %d th piece for %dth locator\n",
                piece_count, array_iter);
            /* --Optional code to set changed_bufpp and changed_lenp if the buffer
               must be changed dynamically --*/
            break;
        default:
            (void) printf("callback read error: unkown piece = %d.\n", piece);
            return OCI_ERROR;
    }
    return OCI_CONTINUE;
}

```

...

**Polling LOB Array Read**

The next example is polling LOB data in `OCILobArrayRead()` with variable `amtp`, `buf1`, and `offset`.

```

/* Fetch the locators */
...

ub4    array_iter = 10;
char  *bufp[10];
oraub8 buf1[10];
oraub8 char_amtp[10];
oraub8 offset[10];
sword st;

for (i=0; i<10; i++)
{
    bufp[i] = (char *)malloc(1000);
    buf1[i] = 1000;
    offset[i] = 1;
    char_amtp[i] = 10000;      /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
}

/* For 3rd locator read data in 500 bytes piece from offset 101. Amount
 * is 2000, that is, total number of pieces is 2000/500 = 4.
 */
offset[2] = 101; buf1[2] = 500; char_amtp[2] = 2000;

/* For 6th locator read data in 100 bytes piece from offset 51. Amount
 * is 0 indicating pure polling, that is, data is read till the end of
 * the LOB is reached.
 */
offset[5] = 51; buf1[5] = 100; char_amtp[5] = 0;

/* For 8th locator read 100 bytes of data in one piece. Note amount
 * is less than buffer length indicating single piece read.
 */
offset[7] = 61; buf1[7] = 200; char_amtp[7] = 100;

st = OCILobArrayRead(<service context>, <error handle>,
                    &array_iter, /* array size */
                    lob_array, /* array of locators */
                    NULL,      /* array of byte amounts */
                    char_amtp, /* array of char amounts */
                    offset,    /* array of offsets */
                    (void **)bufp, /* array of read buffers */
                    buf1,      /* array of buffer lengths */
                    OCI_FIRST_PIECE, /* piece information */
                    NULL,      /* callback context */
                    NULL,      /* callback function */
                    0,         /* character set ID - default */
                    SQLCS_IMPLICIT); /* character set form */

/* First piece for the first locator is read here.
 * bufp[0]          => Buffer pointer into which data is read.
 * char_amtp[0 ]   => Number of characters read in current buffer
 *
 */

```

```

while ( st == OCI_NEED_DATA)
{
    st = OCILobArrayRead(<service context>, <error handle>,
        &array_iter, /* array size */
        lob_array, /* array of locators */
        NULL, /* array of byte amounts */
        char_amtp, /* array of char amounts */
        offset, /* array of offsets */
        (void **)bufp, /* array of read buffers */
        buf1, /* array of buffer lengths */
        OCI_NEXT_PIECE, /* piece information */
        NULL, /* callback context */
        NULL, /* callback function */
        0, /* character set ID - default */
        SQLCS_IMPLICIT);

    /* array_iter returns the index of the current array element for which
    * data is read. for example, array_iter = 1 implies first locator,
    * array_iter = 2 implies second locator and so on.
    *
    * lob_array[ array_iter - 1]=> Lob locator for which data is read.
    * bufp[array_iter - 1] => Buffer pointer into which data is read.
    * char_amtp[array_iter - 1]=>Number of characters read in current buffer
    */

    ...
    /* Consume the data here */
    ...
}

```

**Syntax**

Use the following syntax references for the OCI programmatic environment:

C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions"* —  
 OCILobArrayRead().

**Example**

An example is provided in the following programmatic environment:

OCI: lreadarr.c

## Reading a Portion of a LOB (SUBSTR)

This section describes how to read a portion of a LOB using SUBSTR.

**Syntax**

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference "DBMS\_LOB"* — SUBSTR, OPEN, CLOSE
- C (OCI): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — ALLOCATE, LOB OPEN, LOB READ, LOB CLOSE.

- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB READ. See PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.SUBSTR.
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lsubstr.sql`
- OCI: No example is provided with this release.
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `lsubstr.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lsubstr.java`

## Comparing All or Part of Two LOBs

This section describes how to compare all or part of two LOBs.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — COMPARE.
- C (OCI): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* or information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — EXECUTE. Also reference PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.COMPARE.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — EXECUTE. Also reference PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.COMPARE.
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lcompare.sql`
- C (OCI): No example is provided with this release.
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `lcompare.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lcompare.java`

## Patterns: Checking for Patterns in a LOB Using INSTR

This section describes how to see if a pattern exists in a LOB using INSTR.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — INSTR.
- C (OCI): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — EXECUTE. Also reference PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB . INSTR.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — EXECUTE. Also reference PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB . INSTR.
- COM (OO4O): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `linstr.sql`
- C (OCI): No example is provided with this release.
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): `linstr.java`

## Length: Determining the Length of a LOB

This section describes how to determine the length of a LOB.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — GETLENGTH
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — OCILobGetLength2 () .
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB DESCRIBE.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB DESCRIBE ... GET LENGTH...
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*

- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package) `l1length.sql`
- OCI: `l1length.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `l1length.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `l1length.java`

## Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB

This section describes how to copy all or part of a LOB to another LOB. These APIs copy an amount of data you specify from a source LOB to a destination LOB.

### Usage Notes

Note the following issues when using this API.

#### Specifying Amount of Data to Copy

The value you pass for the `amount` parameter to the `DBMS_LOB.COPY` function must be one of the following:

- An amount less than or equal to the actual size of the data you are loading.
- The maximum allowable LOB size: `DBMS_LOB.LOBMAXSIZE`. Passing this value causes the function to read the entire LOB. This is a useful technique for reading the entire LOB without introspecting the size of the LOB.

Note that for character data, the amount is specified in characters, while for binary data, the amount is specified in bytes.

#### Locking the Row Prior to Updating

If you plan to update a LOB value, then you must lock the row containing the LOB prior to updating. While the SQL `INSERT` and `UPDATE` statements implicitly lock the row, locking is done explicitly by means of a SQL `SELECT FOR UPDATE` statement in SQL and PL/SQL programs, or by using an OCI `pin` or `lock` function in OCI programs.

For more details on the state of the locator after an update, refer to ["Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators"](#) on page 12-12.

### Syntax

See the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — `COPY`
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCILobCopy2`
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*

- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB COPY. Also reference PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB.COPY.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* for information on embedded SQL statements and directives — LOB COPY
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lcopy.sql`
- OCI: `lcopy.c`
- COM (OO4O): `lcopy.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lcopy.java`

## Copying a LOB Locator

This section describes how to copy a LOB locator. Note that different locators may point to the same or different data, or to current or outdated data.

---



---

**Note:** To assign one LOB to another using PL/SQL, use the `:=` operator. This is discussed in more detail in "[Read-Consistent Locators](#)" on page 12-10.

---



---

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): Refer to "[Read-Consistent Locators](#)" on page 12-10 for information on assigning one lob locator to another.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCIlobAssign()`, `OCIlobIsEqual()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB Statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — ALLOCATE, LOB ASSIGN.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — SELECT, LOB ASSIGN
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lcopyloc.sql`
- OCI: `lcopyloc.c`



- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `lcopyloc.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lcopyloc.java`

## Equality: Checking If One LOB Locator Is Equal to Another

This section describes how to determine whether one LOB locator is equal to another. If two locators are equal, then this means that they refer to the same version of the LOB data.

### See Also:

- [Table 22–1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2
- ["Read-Consistent Locators"](#) on page 12-10

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCILOBAssign()`, `OCILOBISEQUAL()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — `LOB ASSIGN`
- COM (OO4O): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL: No example is provided with this release.
- OCI: `lequal.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): `lequal.java`

## Determining Whether LOB Locator Is Initialized

This section describes how to determine whether a LOB locator is initialized.

**See Also:** [Table 22–1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.

- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions"* — `OCILOBLocatorIsInit()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++) *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives". See `C(OCI)`, `OCILOBLocatorIsInit()`.
- COM (OO4O): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- Java (JDBC): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): No example is provided with this release.
- OCI: `linit.c`
- C (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): No example is provided with this release.

## Appending to a LOB

This section describes how to write-append the contents of a buffer to a LOB.

**See Also:** [Table 22-1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2

### Usage Notes

Note the following issues regarding usage of this API.

#### Writing Singly or Piecewise

The `writeappend` operation writes a buffer to the end of a LOB.

For OCI, the buffer can be written to the LOB in a single piece with this call; alternatively, it can be rendered piecewise using callbacks or a standard polling method.

#### Writing Piecewise: When to Use Callbacks or Polling

If the value of the `piece` parameter is `OCI_FIRST_PIECE`, then data must be provided through callbacks or polling.

- If a callback function is defined in the `cbfp` parameter, then this callback function is called to get the next piece after a piece is written to the pipe. Each piece is written from `bufp`.
- If no callback function is defined, then `OCILOBWriteAppend2()` returns the `OCI_NEED_DATA` error code. The application must call `OCILOBWriteAppend2()` again to write more pieces of the LOB. In this mode, the buffer pointer and the length can be different in each call if the pieces are of different sizes and from different locations. A piece value of `OCI_LAST_PIECE` terminates the piecewise write.

**Locking the Row Prior to Updating** Prior to updating a LOB value using the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB package or the OCI, you must lock the row containing the LOB. While the SQL INSERT and UPDATE statements implicitly lock the row, locking is done explicitly by means of an SQL SELECT FOR UPDATE statement in SQL and PL/SQL programs, or by using an OCI pin or lock function in OCI programs.

For more details on the state of the locator after an update, refer to ["Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators"](#) on page 12-12.

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference "DBMS\_LOB"* — WRITEAPPEND
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions"* — OCILobWriteAppend2()
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB WRITE APPEND.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB WRITE APPEND
- COM (OO4O): No syntax reference is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lwriteap.sql`
- OCI: `lwriteap.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): `lwriteap.java`

# Writing Data to a LOB

This section describes how to write the contents of a buffer to a LOB.

### See Also:

- [Table 22-1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2
- [Reading Data from a LOB](#) on page 22-13

## Usage Notes

Note the following issues regarding usage of this API.

### Stream Write

The most efficient way to write large amounts of LOB data is to use `OCILobWrite2()` with the streaming mechanism enabled, and using polling or a callback. If you know

how much data is written to the LOB, then specify that amount when calling `OCILobWrite2()`. This ensures that LOB data on the disk is contiguous. Apart from being spatially efficient, the contiguous structure of the LOB data makes reads and writes in subsequent operations faster.

### Chunk Size

A chunk is one or more Oracle blocks. You can specify the chunk size for the LOB when creating the table that contains the LOB. This corresponds to the data size used by Oracle Database when accessing or modifying the LOB value. Part of the chunk is used to store system-related information and the rest stores the LOB value. The API you are using has a function that returns the amount of space used in the LOB chunk to store the LOB value. In PL/SQL use `DBMS_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE`. In OCI, use `OCILobGetChunkSize()`.

### Use a Multiple of the Returned Value to Improve Write Performance

To improve performance, run write requests using a multiple of the value returned by one of these functions. The reason for this is that the LOB chunk is versioned for every write operation. If all writes are done on a chunk basis, then no extra or excess versioning is incurred or duplicated. If it is appropriate for your application, then you should batch writes until you have enough for an entire chunk instead of issuing several LOB write calls that operate on the same LOB chunk.

### Locking the Row Prior to Updating

Prior to updating a LOB value using the PL/SQL `DBMS_LOB` Package or OCI, you must lock the row containing the LOB. While the SQL `INSERT` and `UPDATE` statements implicitly lock the row, locking is done explicitly by means of a SQL `SELECT FOR UPDATE` statement in SQL and PL/SQL programs, or by using an OCI `pin` or `lock` function in OCI programs.

For more details on the state of the locator after an update, refer to ["Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators"](#) on page 12-12.

### Using `DBMS_LOB.WRITE` to Write Data to a BLOB

When you are passing a hexadecimal string to `DBMS_LOB.WRITE()` to write data to a BLOB, use the following guidelines:

- The `amount` parameter should be  $\leq$  the `buffer length` parameter
- The `length` of the buffer should be  $((amount * 2) - 1)$ . This guideline exists because the two characters of the string are seen as one hexadecimal character (and an implicit hexadecimal-to-raw conversion takes place), that is, every two bytes of the string are converted to one raw byte.

The following example is *correct*:

```
declare
  blob_loc BLOB;
  rawbuf RAW(10);
  an_offset INTEGER := 1;
  an_amount BINARY_INTEGER := 10;
BEGIN
  select blob_col into blob_loc from a_table
  where id = 1;
  rawbuf := '1234567890123456789';
  dbms_lob.write(blob_loc, an_amount, an_offset,
  rawbuf);
  commit;
```

```
END;
```

Replacing the value for `an_amount` in the previous example with the following values, yields error message, ora\_21560:

```
an_amount BINARY_INTEGER := 11;
```

or

```
an_amount BINARY_INTEGER := 19;
```

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference "DBMS\_LOB" — WRITE*
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions" — OCILOBWRITE2()*.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB WRITE`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — `LOB WRITE`
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference* Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lwrite.sql`
- OCI: `lwrite.c`
- COM (OO4O): `lwrite.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lwrite.java`

# LOB Array Write

This section describes how to write LOB data for multiple locators in one round trip, using `OCILOBARRAYWRITE()`.

## Usage Notes

**See Also:** ["LOB Array Read"](#) on page 22-14 for examples of array read/write.

### LOB Array Write in Polling Mode

The following example writes 10Kbytes of data for each of 10 locators with a 1K buffer size. `OCILOBARRAYWRITE()` has to be called 100 (10 times 10) times to write all the data. The function is used in a similar manner to `OCILOBWRITE2()`.

```
/* Fetch the locators */
```

```

...

/* array_iter parameter indicates the number of locators in the array read.
 * It is an IN parameter for the 1st call in polling and is ignored as IN
 * parameter for subsequent calls. As an OUT parameter it indicates the locator
 * index for which the piece is written.
 */

ub4    array_iter = 10;
char  *bufp[10];
oraub8 buf1[10];
oraub8 char_amtp[10];
oraub8 offset[10];
sword st;
int    i, j;

for (i=0; i<10; i++)
{
    bufp[i] = (char *)malloc(1000);
    buf1[i] = 1000;
    /* Fill bufp here. */
    ...
    offset[i] = 1;
    char_amtp[i] = 10000;          /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
}

for (i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
{
    /* Fill up bufp[i-1] here. The first piece for ith locator would be written from
    bufp[i-1] */
    ...
    st = OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,
                        &array_iter, /* array size */
                        lob_array,   /* array of locators */
                        NULL,        /* array of byte amounts */
                        char_amtp,   /* array of char amounts */
                        offset,      /* array of offsets */
                        (void **)bufp, /* array of write buffers */
                        buf1,        /* array of buffer lengths */
                        OCI_FIRST_PIECE, /* piece information */
                        NULL,        /* callback context */
                        NULL,        /* callback function */
                        0,           /* character set ID - default */
                        SQLCS_IMPLICIT); /* character set form */

    for ( j = 2; j < 10; j++)
    {
        /* Fill up bufp[i-1] here. The jth piece for ith locator would be written from
        bufp[i-1] */
        ...
        st = OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,
                            &array_iter, /* array size */
                            lob_array,   /* array of locators */
                            NULL,        /* array of byte amounts */
                            char_amtp,   /* array of char amounts */
                            offset,      /* array of offsets */
                            (void **)bufp, /* array of write buffers */
                            buf1,        /* array of buffer lengths */
                            OCI_NEXT_PIECE, /* piece information */
                            NULL,        /* callback context */

```

```

        NULL,          /* callback function */
        0,             /* character set ID - default */
        SQLCS_IMPLICIT);

/* array_iter returns the index of the current array element for which
 * data is being written. for example, array_iter = 1 implies first locator,
 * array_iter = 2 implies second locator and so on. Here i = array_iter.
 *
 * lob_array[ array_iter - 1] => Lob locator for which data is written.
 * bufp[array_iter - 1]      => Buffer pointer from which data is written.
 * char_amp[ array_iter - 1] => Number of characters written in
 * the piece just written
 */
}

/* Fill up bufp[i-1] here. The last piece for ith locator would be written from
bufp[i -1] */
...
st = OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,
                    &array_iter, /* array size */
                    lob_array,   /* array of locators */
                    NULL,        /* array of byte amounts */
                    char_amp,    /* array of char amounts */
                    offset,      /* array of offsets */
                    (void **)bufp, /* array of write buffers */
                    buf1,        /* array of buffer lengths */
                    OCI_LAST_PIECE, /* piece information */
                    NULL,        /* callback context */
                    NULL,        /* callback function */
                    0,           /* character set ID - default */
                    SQLCS_IMPLICIT);
}

...

```

### LOB Array Write with Callback

The following example writes 10Kbytes of data for each of 10 locators with a 1K buffer size. A total of 100 pieces must be written (10 pieces for each locator). The first piece is provided by the `OCILobArrayWrite()` call. The callback function is called 99 times to get the data for subsequent pieces to be written.

```

/* Fetch the locators */
...

ub4   array_iter = 10;
char *bufp[10];
oraub8 buf1[10];
oraub8 char_amp[10];
oraub8 offset[10];
sword st;

for (i=0; i<10; i++)
{
    bufp[i] = (char *)malloc(1000);
    buf1[i] = 1000;
    offset[i] = 1;
    char_amp[i] = 10000; /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
}

st = OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,

```

```

        &array_iter, /* array size */
        lob_array,  /* array of locators */
        NULL,       /* array of byte amounts */
        char_amtp,  /* array of char amounts */
        offset,     /* array of offsets */
        (void **)bufp, /* array of write buffers */
        buf1,       /* array of buffer lengths */
        OCI_FIRST_PIECE, /* piece information */
        ctx,        /* callback context */
        cbk_write_lob /* callback function */
        0,          /* character set ID - default */
        SQLCS_IMPLICIT);
...

/* Callback function for LOB array write. */
sb4 cbk_write_lob(dvoid *ctxp, ub4 array_iter, dvoid *bufxp, oraub8 *lenp,
                 ub1 *piecep, ub1 *changed_bufpp, oraub8 *changed_lenp)
{
    static ub4 piece_count = 0;
    piece_count++;

    printf (" %dth piece written for %dth locator \n\n", piece_count, array_iter);

    /*-- code to fill bufxp with data goes here. *lenp should reflect the size and
     * should be less than or equal to MAXBUFLEN -- */
    /* --Optional code to set changed_bufpp and changed_lenp if the buffer must
     * be changed dynamically --*/

    if (this is the last data buffer for current locator)
        *piecep = OCI_LAST_PIECE;
    else if (this is the first data buffer for the next locator)
        *piecep = OCI_FIRST_PIECE;
        piece_count = 0;
    else
        *piecep = OCI_NEXT_PIECE;

    return OCI_CONTINUE;
}
...

```

### Polling LOB Data in Array Write

The next example is polling LOB data in `OCILobArrayWrite()` with variable `amp`, `buf1`, and `offset`.

```

/* Fetch the locators */
...

ub4    array_iter = 10;
char  *bufp[10];
oraub8 buf1[10];
oraub8 char_amtp[10];
oraub8 offset[10];
sword st;
int    i, j;
int    piece_count;

for (i=0; i<10; i++)
{
    bufp[i] = (char *)malloc(1000);

```



```

    buf1[i] = 1000;
    /* Fill bufp here. */
...
    offset[i] = 1;
    char_amtp[i] = 10000;      /* Single byte fixed width char set. */
}

    /* For 3rd locator write data in 500 bytes piece from offset 101. Amount
    * is 2000, that is, total number of pieces is 2000/500 = 4.
    */
    offset[2] = 101; buf1[2] = 500; char_amtp[2] = 2000;

    /* For 6th locator write data in 100 bytes piece from offset 51. Amount
    * is 0 indicating pure polling, that is, data is written
    * till OCI_LAST_PIECE
    */
    offset[5] = 51;  buf1[5] = 100; char_amtp[5] = 0;

    /* For 8th locator write 100 bytes of data in one piece. Note amount
    * is less than buffer length indicating single piece write.
    */
    offset[7] = 61;  buf1[7] = 200; char_amtp[7] = 100;

for (i = 1; i <= 10; i++)
{
    /* Fill up bufp[i-1] here.  The first piece for ith locator would be written from
    bufp[i-1] */
...
    /* Calculate number of pieces that must be written */
    piece_count = char_amtp[i-1]/buf1[i-1];

    /* Single piece case */
    if (char_amtp[i-1] <= buf1[i-1])
        piece_count = 1;

    /* Zero amount indicates pure polling. So we can write as many
    * pieces as needed. Let us write 50 pieces.
    */
    if (char_amtp[i-1] == 0)
        piece_count = 50;

    st = OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,
                        &array_iter, /* array size */
                        lob_array,   /* array of locators */
                        NULL,        /* array of byte amounts */
                        char_amtp,   /* array of char amounts */
                        offset,      /* array of offsets */
                        (void **)bufp, /* array of write buffers */
                        buf1,        /* array of buffer lengths */
                        OCI_FIRST_PIECE, /* piece information */
                        NULL,        /* callback context */
                        NULL,        /* callback function */
                        0,           /* character set ID - default */
                        SQLCS_IMPLICIT); /* character set form */

    for ( j = 2; j < piece_count; j++)
    {
        /* Fill up bufp[i-1] here.  The jth piece for ith locator would be written
        * from bufp[i-1] */
...

```

```

    st = OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,
                        &array_iter, /* array size */
                        lob_array,   /* array of locators */
                        NULL,        /* array of byte amounts */
                        char_amp,    /* array of char amounts */
                        offset,      /* array of offsets */
                        (void **)bufp, /* array of write buffers */
                        buf1,        /* array of buffer lengths */
                        OCI_NEXT_PIECE, /* piece information */
                        NULL,        /* callback context */
                        NULL,        /* callback function */
                        0,           /* character set ID - default */
                        SQLCS_IMPLICIT);

/* array_iter returns the index of the current array element for which
 * data is being written. for example, array_iter = 1 implies first locator,
 * array_iter = 2 implies second locator and so on. Here i = array_iter.
 *
 * lob_array[ array_iter - 1] => Lob locator for which data is written.
 * bufp[array_iter - 1]      => Buffer pointer from which data is written.
 * char_amp[ array_iter - 1] => Number of characters written in
 * the piece just written
 */
}

/* Fill up bufp[i-1] here. The last piece for ith locator would be written from
 * bufp[i -1] */
...

/* If piece_count is 1 it is a single piece write. */
if (piece_count[i] != 1)
    st = OCILobArrayWrite(<service context>, <error handle>,
                        &array_iter, /* array size */
                        lob_array,   /* array of locators */
                        NULL,        /* array of byte amounts */
                        char_amp,    /* array of char amounts */
                        offset,      /* array of offsets */
                        (void **)bufp, /* array of write buffers */
                        buf1,        /* array of buffer lengths */
                        OCI_LAST_PIECE, /* piece information */
                        NULL,        /* callback context */
                        NULL,        /* callback function */
                        0,           /* character set ID - default */
                        SQLCS_IMPLICIT);
}

...

```

**Syntax**

Use the following syntax references for the OCI programmatic environment:

C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions"* —  
 OCILobArrayWrite().

**Example**

An example is provided in the following programmatic environment:

OCI: lwritarr.c

## Trimming LOB Data

This section describes how to trim a LOB to the size you specify.

**See Also:** [Table 22–1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2

### Usage Notes

Note the following issues regarding usage of this API.

#### Locking the Row Prior to Updating

Prior to updating a LOB value using the PL/SQL `DBMS_LOB` Package, or OCI, you must lock the row containing the LOB. While the SQL `INSERT` and `UPDATE` statements implicitly lock the row, locking is done explicitly by means of:

- A `SELECT FOR UPDATE` statement in SQL and PL/SQL programs.
- An OCI `pin` or `lock` function in OCI programs.

For more details on the state of the locator after an update, refer to ["Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators"](#) on page 12-12.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (`DBMS_LOB` Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference "DBMS\_LOB"* — `TRIM`
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions"* — `OCILobTrim2()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB TRIM`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide Appendix F, "Embedded SQL and Precompiler Directives"* — `LOB TRIM`
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference Chapter 7, "Working With LOBs"* — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (`DBMS_LOB` Package): `ltrim.sql`
- OCI: `ltrim.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `ltrim.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `ltrim.java`

## Erasing Part of a LOB

This section describes how to erase part of a LOB.

**See Also:** [Table 22–1, " Environments Supported for LOB APIs" on page 22-2](#)

### Usage Notes

Note the following issues regarding usage of this API.

#### Locking the Row Prior to Updating

Prior to updating a LOB value using the PL/SQL DBMS\_LOB Package or OCI, you must lock the row containing the LOB. While INSERT and UPDATE statements implicitly lock the row, locking is done explicitly by means of a SELECT FOR UPDATE statement in SQL and PL/SQL programs, or by using the OCI `pin` or `lock` function in OCI programs.

For more details on the state of the locator after an update, refer to "[Example of Updating LOBs Through Updated Locators](#)" on page 12-12.

### Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — ERASE
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCILobErase2()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB ERASE`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL and Precompiler Directives" — `LOB ERASE`
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

### Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `lerase.sql`
- OCI: `lerase.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `lerase.bas`
- Java (JDBC): `lerase.java`

## Enabling LOB Buffering

This section describes how to enable LOB buffering.

**See Also:** [Table 22–1, " Environments Supported for LOB APIs" on page 22-2](#)

## Usage Notes

Enable LOB buffering when you are performing a small read or write of data. Once you have completed these tasks, you must disable buffering before you can continue with any other LOB operations.

---



---

### Note:

- You must flush the buffer in order to make your modifications persistent.
  - Do not enable buffering for the stream read and write involved in checkin and checkout.
- 
- 

For more information, refer to "[LOB Buffering Subsystem](#)" on page 12-1.

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL: This API is not available in any supplied PL/SQL packages.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCIEnableLobBuffering()`, `OCIDisableLobBuffering()`, `OCIFlushBuffer()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB ENABLE BUFFERING`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL and Precompiler Directives" — `LOB ENABLE BUFFERING`
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL: No example is provided.
- C (OCI): No example is provided with this release. Using this API is similar to that described in the example, "[Disabling LOB Buffering](#)" on page 22-38.
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `lenbuf.bas`
- Java (JDBC): No example provided.

## Flushing the Buffer

This section describes how to flush the LOB buffer.

**See Also:** [Table 22-1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2

## Usage Notes

Enable buffering when performing a small read or write of data. Once you have completed these tasks, you must disable buffering before you can continue with any other LOB operations.

---

---

### Notes:

- You must flush the buffer in order to make your modifications persistent.
  - Do not enable buffering for the stream read and write involved in checkin and checkout.
- 
- 

For more information, refer to "[LOB Buffering Subsystem](#)" on page 12-1.

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide "LOB Functions"* — `OCIEnableLobBuffering()`, `OCIDisableLobBuffering()`, `OCIFlushBuffer()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB FLUSH BUFFER`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — `LOB FLUSH BUFFER`.
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): No example is provided with this release.
- C (OCI): No example is provided with this release. Using this API is similar to that described in the example, "[Disabling LOB Buffering](#)" on page 22-38.
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided with this release.
- Java (JDBC): No example is provided with this release.

## Disabling LOB Buffering

This section describes how to disable LOB buffering.

**See Also:** [Table 22–1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2

## Usage Notes

Enable buffering when performing a small read or write of data. Once you have completed these tasks, you must disable buffering before you can continue with any other LOB operations.

---



---

### Note:

- You must flush the buffer in order to make your modifications persistent.
  - Do not enable buffering for the stream read and write involved in checkin and checkout.
- 
- 

For more information, refer to "[LOB Buffering Subsystem](#)" on page 12-1

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — `OCIEnableLobBuffering()`, `OCIDisableLobBuffering()`, `OCIFlushBuffer()`.
- C++ (OCCI): *Oracle C++ Call Interface Programmer's Guide*
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — `LOB DISABLE BUFFER`.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — `LOB DISABLE BUFFER`
- COM (OO4O): *Oracle Objects for OLE Developer's Guide*
- Java (JDBC): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): No example is provided with this release.
- OCI: `ldisbuf.c`
- C++ (OCCI): No example is provided with this release.
- COM (OO4O): `ldisbuf.bas`
- Java (JDBC): No example is provided with this release.

## Determining Whether a LOB Instance Is Temporary

This section describes how to determine whether a LOB instance is temporary.

**See Also:** [Table 22-1, "Environments Supported for LOB APIs"](#) on page 22-2

## Syntax

Use the following syntax references for each programmatic environment:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB): *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* "DBMS\_LOB" — ISTEMPORARY, FREETEMPORARY
- C (OCI): *Oracle Call Interface Programmer's Guide* "LOB Functions" — OCILobIsTemporary().
- COBOL (Pro\*COBOL) *Pro\*COBOL Programmer's Guide* for information on LOBs, usage notes on LOB statements, and embedded SQL and precompiler directives — LOB DESCRIBE, ISTEMPORARY.
- C/C++ (Pro\*C/C++): *Pro\*C/C++ Programmer's Guide* Appendix F, "Embedded SQL Statements and Directives" — LOB DESCRIBE...ISTEMPORARY
- COM (OO4O): There is no applicable syntax reference for this use case.
- Java (JDBC): *Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference*, "Working With LOBs" — Creating and Populating a BLOB or CLOB Column.

## Examples

Examples are provided in the following programmatic environments:

- PL/SQL (DBMS\_LOB Package): `listemp.sql`
- OCI: `listemp.c`
- COM (OO4O): No example is provided.

## Java (JDBC): Determining Whether a BLOB Is Temporary

To see if a BLOB is temporary, the JDBC application can either use the `isTemporary` instance method to determine whether the current BLOB object is temporary, or pass the BLOB object to the static `isTemporary` method to determine whether the specified BLOB object is temporary. These two methods are defined in `listempb.java`.

This JDBC API replaces previous work-arounds that use `DBMS_LOB.isTemporary()`.

To determine whether a CLOB is temporary, the JDBC application can either use the `isTemporary` instance method to determine whether the current CLOB object is temporary, or pass the CLOB object to the static `isTemporary` method. These two methods are defined in `listempc.java`.

## Converting a BLOB to a CLOB

You can convert a BLOB instance to a CLOB using the PL/SQL procedure `DBMS_LOB.CONVERTTOCLOB`. This technique is convenient if you have character data stored in binary format that you want to store in a CLOB. You specify the character set of the binary data when calling this procedure. See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details on syntax and usage of this procedure.

## Converting a CLOB to a BLOB

You can convert a CLOB instance to a BLOB instance using the PL/SQL procedure `DBMS_LOB.CONVERTTOBLOB`. This technique is a convenient way to convert character data to binary data using LOB APIs. See *Oracle Database PL/SQL Packages and Types Reference* for details on syntax and usage of this procedure.



## Ensuring Read Consistency

This script can be used to ensure that hot backups can be taken of tables that have NOLOGGING or FILESYSTEM\_LIKE\_LOGGING LOBs and have a known recovery point with no read inconsistencies:

```
ALTER DATABASE FORCE LOGGING;  
SELECT CHECKPOINT_CHANGE# FROM V$DATABASE; --Start SCN
```

SCN (System Change Number) is a stamp that defines a version of the database at the time that a transaction is committed.

Perform the backup.

Run the next script:

```
ALTER SYSTEM CHECKPOINT GLOBAL;  
SELECT CHECKPOINT_CHANGE# FROM V$DATABASE; --End SCN  
ALTER DATABASE NO FORCE LOGGING;
```

Back up the archive logs generated by the database. At the minimum, archive logs between start SCN and end SCN (including both SCN points) must be backed up.

To restore to a point with no read inconsistency, restore to end SCN as your incomplete recovery point. If recovery is done to an SCN after end SCN, there can be read inconsistency in the NOLOGGING LOBs.

For SecureFiles, if a read inconsistency is found during media recovery, the database treats the inconsistent blocks as holes and fills BLOBs with 0's and CLOBs with fill characters.



---



---

## LOB Demonstration Files

This appendix describes files distributed with the database that demonstrate how LOBs are used in supported programmatic environments. This appendix contains these topics:

- [PL/SQL LOB Demonstration Files](#)
- [OCI LOB Demonstration Files](#)
- [COM OO4O LOB Demonstration Files](#)
- [Java LOB Demonstration Files](#)

### PL/SQL LOB Demonstration Files

The following table lists PL/SQL demonstration files. These files are installed in `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/plsql/`. A driver program, `lobdemo.sql`, that calls these files is found in the same directory.

**Table A-1 PL/SQL Demonstration Examples**

File Name	Description	Usage Information
<code>fclose_c.sql</code>	Closing a BFILE with <code>CLOSE</code>	<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with CLOSE</a> on page 21-23
<code>fclose_f.sql</code>	Closing a BFILE with <code>FILECLOSE</code>	<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE</a> on page 21-22
<code>fclosea.sql</code>	Closing all open BFILES	<a href="#">Closing All Open BFILES with FILECLOSEALL</a> on page 21-24
<code>fcompare.sql</code>	Comparing all or parts of two BFILES	<a href="#">Comparing All or Parts of Two BFILES</a> on page 21-17
<code>fcopyloc.sql</code>	Copying a LOB locator for a BFILE	<a href="#">Assigning a BFILE Locator</a> on page 21-20
<code>fdisplay.sql</code>	Displaying BFILE data	<a href="#">Displaying BFILE Data</a> on page 21-15
<code>fexists.sql</code>	Checking if a BFILE exists	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Exists</a> on page 21-19
<code>ffilopen.sql</code>	Opening a BFILE with <code>FILEOPEN</code>	<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN</a> on page 21-12
<code>ffisopen.sql</code>	Checking if the BFILE is <code>OPEN</code> with <code>FILEISOPEN</code>	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN</a> on page 21-14
<code>fgetdir.sql</code>	Getting the directory object name and filename of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE</a> on page 21-21

**Table A-1 (Cont.) PL/SQL Demonstration Examples**

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Usage Information</b>
<code>finsert.sql</code>	Inserting row containing a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE on page 21-25</a>
<code>fisopen.sql</code>	Checking if the BFILE is open with ISOPEN	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN on page 21-13</a>
<code>flength.sql</code>	Getting the length of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting the Length of a BFILE on page 21-19</a>
<code>floadlob.sql</code>	Loading a LOB with BFILE data	<a href="#">Loading a LOB with BFILE Data on page 21-10</a>
<code>fopen.sql</code>	Opening a BFILE with OPEN	<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with OPEN on page 21-11</a>
<code>fpattern.sql</code>	Checking if a pattern exists in a BFILE using instr	<a href="#">Checking If a Pattern Exists in a BFILE Using INSTR on page 21-18</a>
<code>fread.sql</code>	Reading data from a BFILE	<a href="#">Reading Data from a BFILE on page 21-15</a>
<code>freadprt.sql</code>	Reading portion of a BFILE data using substr	<a href="#">Reading a Portion of BFILE Data Using SUBSTR on page 21-17</a>
<code>fupdate.sql</code>	Updating a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator on page 21-21</a>
<code>lappend.sql</code>	Appending one LOB to another	<a href="#">Appending One LOB to Another on page 22-4</a>
<code>lcompare.sql</code>	Comparing all or part of LOB	<a href="#">Comparing All or Part of Two LOBs on page 22-21</a>
<code>lcopy.sql</code>	Copying all or part of a LOB to another LOB	<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB on page 22-23</a>
<code>lcopyloc.sql</code>	Copying a LOB locator	<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB on page 22-23</a>
<code>ldisplay.sql</code>	Displaying LOB data	<a href="#">Displaying LOB Data on page 22-11</a>
<code>lerase.sql</code>	Erasing part of a LOB	<a href="#">Erasing Part of a LOB on page 22-35</a>
<code>linsert.sql</code>	Inserting a row by initializing LOB locator bind variable	<a href="#">Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable on page 15-6</a>
<code>linstr.sql</code>	Seeing if pattern exists in LOB (instr)	<a href="#">Patterns: Checking for Patterns in a LOB Using INSTR on page 22-22</a>
<code>lisopen.sql</code>	Seeing if LOB is open	<a href="#">Determining Whether a LOB is Open on page 22-10</a>
<code>listemp.sql</code>	Seeing if LOB is temporary	<a href="#">Determining Whether a LOB instance Is Temporary on page 22-39</a>
<code>l1dblobf.sql</code>	Using DBMS_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE to load a BLOB with data from a BFILE	<a href="#">Loading a BLOB with Data from a BFILE on page 22-7</a>
<code>l1dclobf.sql</code>	Using DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE to load a CLOB or NCLOB with data from a BFILE	<a href="#">Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE on page 22-9</a>
<code>l1dclobs.sql</code>	Using DBMS_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE to load segments of a stream of data from a BFILE into different CLOBs	<a href="#">Loading a CLOB or NCLOB with Data from a BFILE on page 22-9</a>
<code>l1length.sql</code>	Getting the length of a LOB	<a href="#">Length: Determining the Length of a LOB on page 22-22</a>

**Table A-1 (Cont.) PL/SQL Demonstration Examples**

File Name	Description	Usage Information
lloadat.sql	Loading a LOB with BFILE data	<a href="#">Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE on page 22-6</a>
lobuse.sql	Examples of LOB API usage.	<a href="#">Creating Persistent and Temporary LOBs in PL/SQL on page 19-3</a>
lread.sql	Reading data from LOB	<a href="#">Reading Data from a LOB on page 22-13</a>
lsubstr.sql	Reading portion of LOB (substr)	<a href="#">Reading a Portion of a LOB (SUBSTR) on page 22-20</a>
ltrim.sql	Trimming LOB data	<a href="#">Trimming LOB Data on page 22-35</a>
lwrite.sql	Writing data to a LOB	<a href="#">Writing Data to a LOB on page 22-27</a>
lwriteap.sql	Writing to the end of LOB (write append)	<a href="#">Appending to a LOB on page 22-26</a>

## OCI LOB Demonstration Files

The following table lists OCI demonstration files. These files are installed in `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/oci/`. A driver program, `lobdemo.c`, that calls these files is found in the same directory, as is the header file `lobdemo.h`.

**Table A-2 OCI Demonstration Examples**

File Name	Description	Usage Information
fclose_c.c	Closing a BFILE with CLOSE	<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with CLOSE on page 21-23</a>
fclose_f.c	Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE	<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE on page 21-22</a>
fclosea.c	Closing all open BFILES	<a href="#">Closing All Open BFILES with FILECLOSEALL on page 21-24</a>
fcopyloc.c	Copying a LOB locator for a BFILE	<a href="#">Assigning a BFILE Locator on page 21-20</a>
fdisplay.c	Displaying BFILE data	<a href="#">Displaying BFILE Data on page 21-15</a>
fexists.c	Checking if a BFILE exists	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Exists on page 21-19</a>
ffilopen.c	Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN	<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN on page 21-12</a>
ffisopen.c	Checking if the BFILE is OPEN with FILEISOPEN	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN on page 21-14</a>
fgetdir.c	Getting the directory object name and filename of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE on page 21-21</a>
finsert.c	Inserting row containing a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE on page 21-25</a>
fisopen.c	Checking if the BFILE is open with ISOPEN	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN on page 21-13</a>
flength.c	Getting the length of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting the Length of a BFILE on page 21-19</a>
floadlob.c	Loading a LOB with BFILE data	<a href="#">Loading a LOB with BFILE Data on page 21-10</a>
fopen.c	Opening a BFILE with OPEN	<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with OPEN on page 21-11</a>

**Table A-2 (Cont.) OCI Demonstration Examples**

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Usage Information</b>
<code>fread.c</code>	Reading data from a BFILE	<a href="#">Reading Data from a BFILE</a> on page 21-15
<code>fupdate.c</code>	Updating a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator</a> on page 21-21
<code>lappend.c</code>	Appending one LOB to another	<a href="#">Appending One LOB to Another</a> on page 22-4
<code>lcopy.c</code>	Copying all or part of a LOB to another LOB	<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB</a> on page 22-23
<code>lcopyloc.c</code>	Copying a LOB locator	<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB</a> on page 22-23
<code>ldisbuf.c</code>	Disabling LOB buffering (persistent LOBs)	<a href="#">Disabling LOB Buffering</a> on page 22-38
<code>ldisplay.c</code>	Displaying LOB data	<a href="#">Displaying LOB Data</a> on page 22-11
<code>lequal.c</code>	Seeing if one LOB locator is equal to another	<a href="#">Equality: Checking If One LOB Locator Is Equal to Another</a> on page 22-25
<code>lerase.c</code>	Erasing part of a LOB	<a href="#">Erasing Part of a LOB</a> on page 22-35
<code>lgetchar.c</code>	Getting character set id	<a href="#">Determining Character Set ID</a> on page 22-5
<code>lgetchfm.c</code>	Getting character set form of the foreign language ad text, <code>ad_flttextn</code>	<a href="#">Determining Character Set Form</a> on page 22-5
<code>linit.c</code>	Seeing if a LOB locator is initialized	<a href="#">Determining Whether LOB Locator Is Initialized</a> on page 22-25
<code>linsert.c</code>	Inserting a row by initializing LOB locator bind variable	<a href="#">Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable</a> on page 15-6
<code>lisopen.c</code>	Seeing if LOB is open	<a href="#">Determining Whether a LOB is Open</a> on page 22-10
<code>listemp.c</code>	Seeing if LOB is temporary	<a href="#">Determining Whether a LOB instance Is Temporary</a> on page 22-39
<code>llength.c</code>	Getting the length of a LOB	<a href="#">Length: Determining the Length of a LOB</a> on page 22-22
<code>lloadat.c</code>	Loading a LOB with BFILE data	<a href="#">Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE</a> on page 22-6
<code>lread.c</code>	Reading data from LOB	<a href="#">Reading Data from a LOB</a> on page 22-13
<code>lreadarr.c</code>	Reading data from an array of LOB locators	<a href="#">LOB Array Read</a> on page 22-14
<code>ltrim.c</code>	Trimming LOB data	<a href="#">Trimming LOB Data</a> on page 22-35
<code>lwrite.c</code>	Writing data to a LOB	<a href="#">Writing Data to a LOB</a> on page 22-27
<code>lwritearr.c</code>	Writing data into an array of LOB locators	<a href="#">LOB Array Write</a> on page 22-29
<code>lwriteap.c</code>	Writing to the end of LOB (write append)	<a href="#">Appending to a LOB</a> on page 22-26

## COM 0040 LOB Demonstration Files

The following table lists COM 0040 demonstration files. These files are installed in `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/vb/`.

**Table A-3 COM 0040 Demonstration Examples**

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Usage Information</b>
fclose_c.bas	Closing a BFILE with CLOSE	<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with CLOSE</a> on page 21-23
fclosea.bas	Closing all open BFILES	<a href="#">Closing All Open BFILES with FILECLOSEALL</a> on page 21-24
fcompare.bas	Comparing all or parts of two BFILES	<a href="#">Comparing All or Parts of Two BFILES</a> on page 21-17
fdisplay.bas	Displaying BFILE data	<a href="#">Displaying BFILE Data</a> on page 21-15
fexists.bas	Checking if a BFILE exists	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Exists</a> on page 21-19
fgetdir.bas	Getting the directory object name and filename of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE</a> on page 21-21
finsert.bas	Inserting row containing a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE</a> on page 21-25
fisopen.bas	Checking if the BFILE is open with ISOPEN	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN</a> on page 21-13
flength.bas	Getting the length of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting the Length of a BFILE</a> on page 21-19
floadlob.bas	Loading a LOB with BFILE data	<a href="#">Loading a LOB with BFILE Data</a> on page 21-10
fopen.bas	Opening a BFILE with OPEN	<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with OPEN</a> on page 21-11
fread.bas	Reading data from a BFILE	<a href="#">Reading Data from a BFILE</a> on page 21-15
freadprt.bas	Reading portion of a BFILE data using substr	<a href="#">Reading a Portion of BFILE Data Using SUBSTR</a> on page 21-17
fupdate.bas	Updating a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator</a> on page 21-21
lappend.bas	Appending one LOB to another	<a href="#">Appending One LOB to Another</a> on page 22-4
lcompare.bas	Comparing all or part of LOB	<a href="#">Comparing All or Part of Two LOBs</a> on page 22-21
lcopy.bas	Copying all or part of a LOB to another LOB	<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB</a> on page 22-23
lcopyloc.bas	Copying a LOB locator	<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB</a> on page 22-23
ldisbuf.bas	Disabling LOB buffering (persistent LOBs)	<a href="#">Disabling LOB Buffering</a> on page 22-38
ldisplay.bas	Displaying LOB data	<a href="#">Displaying LOB Data</a> on page 22-11
lenbuf.bas	Enabling LOB buffering	<a href="#">Enabling LOB Buffering</a> on page 22-36
lerase.bas	Erasing part of a LOB	<a href="#">Erasing Part of a LOB</a> on page 22-35
linsert.bas	Inserting a row by initializing LOB locator bind variable	<a href="#">Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable</a> on page 15-6
llength.bas	Getting the length of a LOB	<a href="#">Length: Determining the Length of a LOB</a> on page 22-22

**Table A-3 (Cont.) COM 0040 Demonstration Examples**

File Name	Description	Usage Information
lloadat.bas	Loading a LOB with BFILE data	<a href="#">Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE</a> on page 22-6
lread.bas	Reading data from LOB	<a href="#">Reading Data from a LOB</a> on page 22-13
lsubstr.bas	Reading portion of LOB (substr)	<a href="#">Reading a Portion of a LOB (SUBSTR)</a> on page 22-20
ltrim.bas	Trimming LOB data	<a href="#">Trimming LOB Data</a> on page 22-35
lwrite.bas	Writing data to a LOB	<a href="#">Writing Data to a LOB</a> on page 22-27

## Java LOB Demonstration Files

The following table lists Java demonstration files. These files are installed in `$ORACLE_HOME/rdbms/demo/lobs/java/`.

**Table A-4 Java Demonstration Examples**

File Name	Description	Usage Information
Readme.txt	-	See the Chapter "Getting Started" in the "Oracle Database JDBC Developer's Guide and Reference" for information on setting up your system to be able to compile and run JDBC programs with the Oracle Driver
LobDemoConnectionFactory.java	-	As written <code>LobDemoConnectionFactory</code> uses the JDBC OCI driver with a local connection. You should edit the URL "jdbc:oracle:oci8:@" to match your setup. Again see the "Getting Started" section in the JDBC manual.
fclose_c.java	Closing a BFILE with CLOSE	<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with CLOSE</a> on page 21-23
fclose_f.java	Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE	<a href="#">Closing a BFILE with FILECLOSE</a> on page 21-22
fclosea.java	Closing all open BFILES	<a href="#">Closing All Open BFILES with FILECLOSEALL</a> on page 21-24
fcompare.java	Comparing all or parts of two BFILES	<a href="#">Comparing All or Parts of Two BFILES</a> on page 21-17
fexists.java	Checking if a BFILE exists	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Exists</a> on page 21-19
ffilopen.java	Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN	<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with FILEOPEN</a> on page 21-12
ffisopen.java	Checking if the BFILE is OPEN with FILEISOPEN	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open with FILEISOPEN</a> on page 21-14
fgetdir.java	Getting the directory object name and filename of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting Directory Object Name and File Name of a BFILE</a> on page 21-21
finsert.java	Inserting row containing a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Inserting a Row Containing a BFILE</a> on page 21-25
fisopen.java	Checking if the BFILE is open with ISOPEN	<a href="#">Determining Whether a BFILE Is Open Using ISOPEN</a> on page 21-13



**Table A-4 (Cont.) Java Demonstration Examples**

<b>File Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Usage Information</b>
flength.java	Getting the length of a BFILE	<a href="#">Getting the Length of a BFILE</a> on page 21-19
fopen.java	Opening a BFILE with OPEN	<a href="#">Opening a BFILE with OPEN</a> on page 21-11
fpattern.java	Checking if a pattern exists in a BFILE using instr	<a href="#">Checking If a Pattern Exists in a BFILE Using INSTR</a> on page 21-18
fread.java	Reading data from a BFILE	<a href="#">Reading Data from a BFILE</a> on page 21-15
fupdate.java	Updating a BFILE by initializing a BFILE locator	<a href="#">Updating a BFILE by Initializing a BFILE Locator</a> on page 21-21
lappend.java	Appending one LOB to another	<a href="#">Appending One LOB to Another</a> on page 22-4
lcompare.java	Comparing all or part of LOB	<a href="#">Comparing All or Part of Two LOBs</a> on page 22-21
lcopy.java	Copying all or part of a LOB to another LOB	<a href="#">Copying All or Part of One LOB to Another LOB</a> on page 22-23
lerase.java	Erasing part of a LOB	<a href="#">Erasing Part of a LOB</a> on page 22-35
linsert.java	Inserting a row by initializing LOB locator bind variable	<a href="#">Inserting a Row by Initializing a LOB Locator Bind Variable</a> on page 15-6
linstr.java	Seeing if pattern exists in LOB (instr)	<a href="#">Patterns: Checking for Patterns in a LOB Using INSTR</a> on page 22-22
lisopen.java	Seeing if LOB is open	<a href="#">Determining Whether a LOB is Open</a> on page 22-10
listempb.java	Seeing if LOB is temporary	<a href="#">Determining Whether a LOB instance Is Temporary</a> on page 22-39
listempc.java	Seeing if LOB is temporary	<a href="#">Determining Whether a LOB instance Is Temporary</a> on page 22-39
llength.java	Getting the length of a LOB	<a href="#">Length: Determining the Length of a LOB</a> on page 22-22
lloadat.java	Loading a LOB with BFILE data	<a href="#">Loading a LOB with Data from a BFILE</a> on page 22-6
lread.java	Reading data from LOB	<a href="#">Reading Data from a LOB</a> on page 22-13
lsubstr.java	Reading portion of LOB (substr)	<a href="#">Reading a Portion of a LOB (SUBSTR)</a> on page 22-20
ltrim.java	Trimming LOB data	<a href="#">Trimming LOB Data</a> on page 22-35
lwrite.java	Writing data to a LOB	<a href="#">Writing Data to a LOB</a> on page 22-27
lwriteap.java	Writing to the end of LOB (write append)	<a href="#">Appending to a LOB</a> on page 22-26



---

---

# Glossary

## **BFILE**

A Large Object datatype that is a binary file residing in the file system, outside of the database data files and tablespace. Note that the BFILE datatype is also referred to as an *external LOB* in some documentation.

## **Binary Large Object (BLOB)**

A Large Object datatype that has content consisting of binary data and is typically used to hold unstructured data. The BLOB datatype is included in the category **Persistent LOBs** because it resides in the database.

## **BLOB**

Pronounced "bee-lob." See Binary Large Object.

## **Character Large Object (CLOB)**

The LOB datatype that has content consisting of character data in the database character set. A CLOB can be indexed and searched by the Oracle Text search engine.

## **CLOB**

Pronounced "see-lob." See Character Large Object.

## **deduplication**

Deduplication enables Oracle Database to automatically detect duplicate LOB data and conserve space by only storing one copy (if storage parameter is SECUREFILE).

## **external LOB**

A Large Object datatype that is stored outside of the database tablespace. The BFILE datatype is the only external LOB datatype. See also BFILE.

## **internal persistent LOB**

A large object (LOB) that is stored in the database in a BLOB/CLOB/NCLOB column.

## **introspect**

To examine attributes or value of an object.

## **Large Objects (LOBs)**

Large Objects include the following SQL datatypes: BLOB, CLOB, NCLOB, and BFILE. These datatypes are designed for storing data that is large in size. See also BFILE, Binary Large Object, Character Large Object, and National Character Large Object.

**LOB**

See Large Objects.

**LOB attribute**

A large object datatype that is a field of an object datatype. For example a CLOB field of an object type.

**LOB value**

The actual data stored by the Large Object. For example, if a BLOB stores a picture, then the value of the BLOB is the data that makes up the image.

**National Character Large Object**

The LOB datatype that has content consisting of Unicode character data in the database national character set. An NCLOB can be indexed and searched by the Oracle Text search engine.

**NCLOB**

Pronounced "en-see-lob." See National Character Large Object.

**persistent LOB**

A BLOB, CLOB, or NCLOB that is stored in the database. A persistent LOB instance can be selected out of a table and used within the scope of your application. The ACID (atomic, consistent, isolated, durable) properties of the instance are maintained just as for any other column type. Persistent LOBs are sometimes also referred to as *internal persistent LOBs* or just, *internal LOBs*.

A persistent LOB can exist as a field of an object datatype and an instance in a LOB-type column. For example a CLOB attribute of an instance of type `object`.

See also *temporary LOB* and *external LOB*.

**SECUREFILE**

LOB storage parameter that allows deduplication, encryption, and compression. The opposite parameter, that does not allow these features, is BASICFILE.

**tablespace**

A database storage unit that groups related logical structures together.

**temporary LOB**

A BLOB, CLOB, or NCLOB that is accessible and persists only within the application scope in which it is declared. A temporary LOB does not exist in database tables.

## A

---

- abstract datatypes and LOBs, 1-5
- access statistics for LOBs, 14-5
- accessing a LOB
  - using the LOB APIs, 2-6
- accessing external LOBs, 21-3
- ALTER TABLE, 4-13
- ALTER TABLE parameters for SecureFiles LOBs, 4-13
- amount, 21-16
- amount parameter
  - used with BFILEs, 21-10
- appending
  - writing to the end of a LOB
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-26
- array read, 22-14
- array write, 22-29
- assigning OCILobLocator pointers, 13-11
- ASSM tablespace, 4-2, 4-7, 4-21, 4-23, 11-5, 11-8, 18-6
- available LOB methods, 13-4

## B

---

- BASICFILE
  - LOB storage parameter, 4-7
- BFILE class, See JDBC
- BFILE-buffering, See JDBC
- BFILENAME function, 2-5, 21-5, 21-6
- BFILEs
  - accessing, 21-3
  - converting to CLOB or NCLOB, 21-10
  - creating an object in object cache, 12-21
  - datatype, 1-5
  - DBMS\_LOB read-only procedures, 13-8
  - DBMS\_LOB, offset and amount parameters in bytes, 13-6
  - hard links and symbolic links not allowed, 3-5
  - locators, 2-3
  - maximum number of open, 3-5, 21-19
  - maximum size, 12-21, 12-22
  - multithreaded server, 2-8
  - multithreaded server mode, 21-8
  - not affected by LOB storage properties, 11-5
  - OCI functions to read/examine values, 13-12, 13-17

- OCI read-only functions, 13-12, 13-18
- opening and closing using JDBC, 13-38
- operating system files, and, 3-5
- Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)
  - opening/closing methods, 13-27
  - properties, 13-28
  - read-only methods, 13-28
- Pro\*C/C++ precompiler statements, 13-20
- Pro\*COBOL precompiler embedded SQL statements, 13-23
- reading with DBMS\_LOB, 13-8
- rules for using, 3-5
- security, 21-5, 21-6
- storage devices, 1-4
- storing any operating system file, 1-5
- streaming APIs, 13-43
- using JDBC to read/examine, 13-34
- using Pro\*C/C++ precompiler to open and close, 13-21

- bind variables, used with LOB locators in OCI, 13-11
- binds
  - See also INSERT statements and UPDATE statements
- Blob class, 13-15
- BLOB-buffering, See JDBC
- BLOBs
  - class, See JDBC
  - datatype, 1-5
  - DBMS\_LOB, offset and amount parameters in bytes, 13-6
  - maximum size, 12-21
  - modify using DBMS\_LOB, 13-7
  - using JDBC to modify, 13-32
  - using JDBC to read/examine BLOB values, 13-32
  - using oracle.sql.BLOB methods to modify, 13-32
- buffering
  - disable
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-38
  - enable
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-36
  - flush
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-37
  - LOB buffering subsystem, 12-3
- built-in functions, remote, 16-11

## C

---

C++, See Pro\*C/C++ precompiler  
C, See OCI  
CACHE / NOCACHE, 11-9  
caches  
  object cache, 12-21  
callback, 21-16, 22-13, 22-26  
CAST, 17-2  
catalog views  
  v\$temporary\_lob, 3-4  
character data  
  varying width, 11-4  
character set ID, 13-6  
  getting the  
    internal persistent LOBs, 22-5  
    See CSID parameter  
charactersets  
  multibyte, LONG and LOB datatypes, 20-11  
CHUNK, 4-7, 11-11, 12-22  
chunk size, 22-28  
  and LOB storage properties, 11-5  
  multiple of, to improve performance, 22-13  
CLOB class, See JDBC  
CLOB-buffering, See JDBC  
CLOBs  
  columns  
    varying-width character data, 11-4  
  datatype, 1-5  
    varying-width columns, 11-4  
  DBMS\_LOB, offset and amount parameters in  
    characters, 13-6  
  modify using DBMS\_LOB, 13-7  
  opening and closing using JDBC, 13-36  
  reading/examining with JDBC, 13-33  
  using JDBC to modify, 13-33  
Clone method, See Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)  
closing  
  all open BFILEs, 21-24  
  BFILEs with CLOSE, 21-23  
  BFILEs with FILECLOSE, 21-22  
clustered tables, 18-8  
COBOL, See Pro\*COBOL precompiler  
codepoint semantics, 16-5  
COM, See Oracle Objects for OLE(OO4O)  
comparing  
  all or part of two LOBs  
    internal persistent LOBs, 22-21  
  all or parts of two BFILEs, 21-17  
COMPRESS, 4-8, 4-15  
conventional path load, 3-2  
conversion  
  explicit functions for PL/SQL, 17-2  
conversion, implicit from CLOB to character  
  type, 16-2  
conversions  
  character set, 21-10  
  from binary data to character set, 21-10  
  implicit, between CLOB and VARCHAR2, 17-1  
converting  
  to CLOB, 17-2

  copy semantics, 1-5  
    internal LOBs, 15-4  
copying  
  all or part of a LOB to another LOB  
    internal persistent LOBs, 22-23  
  LOB locator  
    internal persistent LOBs, 22-24  
  LOB locator for BFILE, 21-20  
CREATE TABLE parameters for SecureFiles  
  LOBs, 4-2  
CREATE TABLE syntax and notes, 4-2  
CSID parameter  
  setting OCILobRead and OCILobWrite to OCI\_  
    UCS2ID, 13-9

## D

---

data interface for persistent LOBs, 20-1  
  multibyte charactersets, 20-11  
data interface for remote LOBs, 20-22  
data interface in Java, 20-22  
Data Pump, 3-4, 18-7  
database file system links, 4-18  
db\_securefile init.ora parameter, 4-21  
DBFS Administration, 6-7  
DBFS Command Interface, 6-6  
DBFS Content API, 7-1  
DBFS installation, 6-1  
DBFS links, 4-18  
DBFS Mounting Interface (Linux Only), 6-3  
DBFS using Oracle Wallet, 6-8  
DBMS\_LOB  
  updating LOB with bind variable, 12-16  
DBMS\_LOB functions on a NULL LOB  
  restriction, 11-2  
DBMS\_LOB package, 4-24  
  available LOB procedures/functions, 13-2, 13-4  
  for temporary LOBs, 13-8  
  functions/procedures to modify BLOB, CLOB, and  
    NCLOB, 13-7  
  functions/procedures to read/examine internal  
    and external LOBs, 13-8  
  LOADBLOBFROMFILE, 21-10  
  LOADCLOBFROMFILE, 21-10  
  LOADFROMFILE(), 21-10  
  multithreaded server, 2-8  
  multithreaded server mode, 21-8  
  offset and amount parameter guidelines, 13-6  
  open and close, JDBC replacements for, 13-35  
  opening/closing internal and external LOBs, 13-9  
  provide LOB locator before invoking, 13-5  
  read-only functions/procedures for BFILEs, 13-8  
  to work with LOBs, using, 13-5  
  WRITE()  
    guidelines, 22-28  
DBMS\_LOB.GET\_STORAGE\_LIMIT, 12-23  
DBMS\_LOB.GETCHUNKSIZE, 12-22  
DBMS\_LOB.GETLENGTH return value, 16-6  
DBMS\_LOB.GETOPTIONS, 4-26  
DBMS\_LOB.ISSECUREFILE, 4-26

DBMS\_LOB.isTemporary, previous workaround for  
JDBC, 22-40

DBMS\_LOB.LOADBLOBFROMFILE, 13-6

DBMS\_LOB.LOADCLOBFROMFILE, 13-6

DBMS\_LOB.LOADFROMFILE, 13-6

DBMS\_LOB.READ, 21-16

DBMS\_LOB.SETOPTIONS, 4-26

DBMS\_LOB.WRITE()  
passing hexadecimal string to, 22-28

DBMS\_REDEFINITION, 4-13

DBMS\_SPACE package, 4-30

DECRYPT, 4-9, 4-15

DEDUPLICATE, 4-8, 4-15

directories  
catalog views, 21-7  
guidelines for usage, 21-8  
ownership and privileges, 21-6

DIRECTORY name specification, 21-5

DIRECTORY object  
catalog views, 21-7  
getting the alias and filename, 21-21  
guidelines for usage, 21-8  
names on Windows platforms, 21-6  
naming convention, 21-5  
READ permission on object not individual  
files, 21-6  
rules for using, 3-5  
symbolic links, 3-5  
symbolic links, and, 3-5

DIRECTORY objects, 21-3

direct-path load, 3-2

DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW, 11-5

displaying  
LOB data for internal persistent LOBs, 22-11

domain indexing on LOB columns, 11-13

## E

---

embedded SQL statements, See Pro\*C/C++  
precompiler and Pro\*COBOL precompiler

empty LOBs  
creating using JDBC, 13-47  
JDBC, 13-47

EMPTY\_BLOB() and EMPTY\_CLOB, LOB storage  
properties for, 11-5

EMPTY\_CLOB()/BLOB()  
to initialize internal LOB, 2-4

ENABLE STORAGE IN ROW, 11-5

ENCRYPT, 4-9, 4-15

equal  
one LOB locator to another  
internal persistent LOBs, 22-25

erasing  
part of LOB  
internal persistent LOBs, 22-35

error message documentation, database, 0-xxiii

example, LOB access statistics, 14-6

examples  
repercussions of mixing SQL DML with DBMS\_  
LOB, 12-13

updated LOB locators, 12-14

updating a LOB with a PL/SQL variable, 12-16

existence  
check for BFILE, 21-19

extensible indexes, 11-13

external callout, 12-5

external LOBs (BFILEs)  
See BFILEs

external LOBs (BFILEs), See BFILEs

## F

---

file system links, 4-18

FILECLOSEALL(), 21-8

FILESYSTEM\_LIKE\_LOGGING, 4-7

flushing  
LOB buffer, 12-4

flushing buffer, 12-1

FOR UPDATE clause  
LOB locator, 12-10

FREELIST GROUPS, 4-8

FREELISTS, 4-8

FREEPOOLS, 4-7, 4-8

function-based indexes, 11-13

function-based indexes on LOB columns, 11-13

## H

---

hard links, rules with BFILEs, 3-5

hexadecimal string  
passing to DBMS\_LOB.WRITE(), 22-28

## I

---

implicit assignment and parameter passing for LOB  
columns, 20-4

implicit conversion of CLOB to character type, 16-2

Improved LOB Usability, Accessing LOBs Using SQL  
Character Functions, 16-1

indexes  
function-based, 11-13  
rebuilding after LONG-to-LOB migration, 18-8

indexes on LOB columns  
bitmap index not supported, 11-13  
B-tree index not supported, 11-13  
domain indexing, 11-13  
restriction, 11-13

indexes, restrictions, 18-8

index-organized tables, restrictions for LOB  
columns, 11-17

initialization parameters for SecureFiles LOBs, 4-21

initializing  
during CREATE TABLE or INSERT, 15-5  
using EMPTY\_CLOB(), EMPTY\_BLOB(), 2-4

initializing a LOB column to a non-NULL value, 11-2

init.ora parameter db\_securefile, 4-21

inline storage, 11-4

inline storage, maximum size, 11-5

INSERT statements  
binds of greater than 4000 bytes, 20-6

inserting

- a row by initializing a LOB locator
  - internal persistent LOBs, 15-6
- a row by initializing BFILE locator, 21-25
- Installing DBFS, 6-1
- interfaces for LOBs, see programmatic environments
- IS NULL return value for LOBs, 16-10
- IS NULL usage with LOBs, 16-10

## J

---

- Java, See JDBC
- java.sql.Blob, 13-29
- java.sql.Clob, 13-29
- JDBC
  - available LOB methods/properties, 13-4
  - BFILE class
  - BFILE streaming APIs, 13-43
  - BFILE-buffering, 13-34
  - BLOB and CLOB classes
  - calling DBMS\_LOB package, 13-30
  - checking if BLOB is temporary, 22-40
  - CLOB streaming APIs, 13-42
  - empty LOBs, 13-47
  - encapsulating locators
  - methods/properties for BLOB-buffering, 13-33
  - methods/properties for CLOB-buffering, 13-33
  - modifying BLOB values, 13-32
  - modifying CLOB values, 13-33
  - modifying internal LOBs with Java using objects
    - oracle.sql.BLOB/CLOB, 13-28
  - newStreamLob.java, 13-44
  - opening and closing BFILES, 13-38
  - opening and closing CLOBs, 13-36
  - opening and closing LOBs, 13-35
  - reading internal LOBs and external LOBs (BFILES)
    - with Java, 13-29
  - reading/examining BLOB values, 13-32
  - reading/examining CLOB values, 13-33
  - reading/examining external LOB (BFILE) values, 13-34
  - referencing LOBs, 13-31
  - streaming APIs for LOBs, 13-41
  - syntax references, 13-31
  - trimming LOBs, 13-40
  - using OracleResultSet to reference LOBs, 13-31
  - using OUT parameter from
    - OraclePreparedStatement to reference LOBs, 13-31
  - writing to empty LOBs, 13-47
- JDBC 3.0, 13-29
- JDBC and Empty LOBs, 13-47

## K

---

- KEEP\_DUPLICATES, 4-8, 4-15

## L

---

- LBS, See Lob Buffering Subsystem (LBS)
- length
  - an internal persistent LOB, 22-22

- getting BFILE, 21-19
- LENGTH return value for LOBs, 16-6
- loading
  - a LOB with BFILE data, 21-10
  - LOB with data from a BFILE, 22-6
- LOB attributes
  - defined, 1-5
- LOB buffering
  - BLOB-buffering with JDBC, 13-33
  - buffer-enabled locators, 12-6
  - example, 12-3
  - flushing the buffer, 12-4
  - flushing the updated LOB through LBS, 12-5
  - guidelines, 12-1
  - OCI example, 12-6
  - OCI functions, 13-13
  - OCILobFlushBuffer(), 12-5
  - Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)
    - methods for internal LOBs, 13-27
  - physical structure of buffer, 12-3
  - Pro\*C/C++ precompiler statements, 13-21
  - Pro\*COBOL precompiler statements, 13-23
  - usage notes, 12-3
- LOB Buffering SubSystem (LBS)
- LOB Buffering Subsystem (LBS)
  - advantages, 12-1
  - buffer-enabled locators, 12-5
  - buffering example using OCI, 12-6
  - example, 12-3
  - flushing
    - updated LOB, 12-5
  - flushing the buffer, 12-4
  - guidelines, 12-1
  - saving the state of locator to avoid reselect, 12-6
  - usage, 12-3
- LOB columns
  - initializing internal LOB to a value, 11-2
  - initializing to contain locator, 2-4
  - initializing to NULL or Empty, 11-1
- LOB locator
  - copy semantics, 1-5
  - external LOBs (BFILES), 1-5
  - internal LOBs, 1-5
  - out-bind variables in OCI, 13-11
  - reference semantics, 1-5
- LOB locators, always stored in row, 11-5
- LOB prefetching
  - JDBC, 13-30
- LOB reads, 14-5
- LOB restrictions, 2-6
- LOB storage
  - format of varying width character data, 11-4
  - inline and out-of-line storage properties, 11-4
- LOB writes, 14-5
- LOB writes unaligned, 14-5
- LOBs
  - abstract datatypes, members of, 1-5
  - attributes and abstract datatypes, 1-5
  - attributes and object cache, 12-21
  - buffering



- caveats, 12-1
- pages can be aged out, 12-5
- buffering subsystem, 12-1
- buffering usage notes, 12-3
- datatypes versus LONG, 1-3
- external (BFILEs), 1-4
- flushing, 12-1
- in partitioned tables, 11-15
- in the object cache, 12-21
- interfaces, See programmatic environments
- interMEDIA, 1-6
- internal
  - creating an object in object cache, 12-21
- internal LOBs
  - CACHE / NOCACHE, 11-9
  - CHUNK, 11-11
  - ENABLE | DISABLE STORAGE IN ROW, 11-12
  - initializing, 21-15
  - introduced, 1-3
  - locators, 2-3
  - locking before updating, 22-4, 22-23, 22-27, 22-28, 22-35, 22-36
  - LOGGING / NOLOGGING, 11-9
  - Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O), modifying methods, 13-26
  - PCTVERSION, 11-7
  - setting to empty, 11-2
  - tablespace and LOB index, 11-6
  - tablespace and storage characteristics, 11-5
  - transactions, 1-3
- locators, 2-3, 12-10
- maximum sizes allowed, 12-21
- object cache, 12-21
- piecewise operations, 12-13
- read-consistent locators, 12-10
- reason for using, 1-1
- setting to contain a locator, 2-4
- setting to NULL, 11-2
- tables
  - creating indexes, 11-16
  - moving partitions, 11-16
  - splitting partitions, 11-16
- unstructured data, 1-2
- updated LOB locators, 12-12
- varying-width character data, 11-4
- LOBs, data interface for remote, 20-22
- LOBs, data interface in Java, 20-22
- locators, 2-3
  - BFILEs, 21-9
    - guidelines, 21-9
    - two rows can refer to the same file, 21-9
  - buffer-enabled, 12-6
  - external LOBs (BFILEs), 2-3
  - LOB, cannot span transactions, 12-19
  - multiple, 12-10
  - OCI functions, 13-13, 13-18
  - Pro\*COBOL precompiler statements, 13-23
  - providing in Pro\*COBOL precompiler, 13-21
  - read consistent, updating, 12-10

- read-consistent, 12-5, 12-6, 12-10, 12-16, 12-19
- reading and writing to a LOB using, 12-18
- saving the state to avoid reselect, 12-6
- see if LOB locator is initialized
  - internal persistent LOBs, 22-25
- selecting within a transaction, 12-19
- selecting without current transaction, 12-18
- setting column to contain, 2-4
- transaction boundaries, 12-17
- updated, 12-4, 12-12, 12-16
- updating, 12-19
- LOGGING, 4-7
  - migrating LONG-to-LOBs, 18-2
- LOGGING / NOLOGGING, 11-9
- LONG versus LOB datatypes, 1-3
- LONG-to-LOB migration
  - ALTER TABLE, 18-3
  - benefits and concepts, 18-1
  - clustered tables, 18-8
  - LOGGING, 18-2
  - NULLs, 18-9
  - rebuilding indexes, 18-8
  - replication, 18-1
  - triggers, 18-8

## M

---

- MAXSIZE, 4-7
- migrating
  - a table using online redefinition, 4-22
  - LONG to LOBs, see LONG-to-LOB, 18-1
  - LONG-to-LOB using ALTER TABLE, 18-3
  - LONG-to-LOBs, constraints maintained, 18-4
  - LONG-to-LOBs, indexing, 18-8
- migrating to SecureFiles LOBs, 4-22
- migration of LONG to LOB in parallel, 18-6
- multibyte character sets, using with the data interface for LOBs, 20-11
- multithreaded server
  - BFILEs, 2-8, 21-8

## N

---

- national language support
  - NCLOBs, 1-5
- NCLOBs
  - datatype, 1-5
  - DBMS\_LOB, offset and amount parameters in characters, 13-6
  - modify using DBMS\_LOB, 13-7
- NewStreamLob.java, 13-44
- NLS\_CHARSET\_ID, 13-7
- NOCOMPRESS, 4-8, 4-15
- NOCOPY, using to pass temporary LOB parameters by reference, 14-2
- NOLOGGING, 4-7
- IS, 16-10
- NULL LOB value, LOB storage for, 11-5
- NULL LOB values, LOB storage properties for, 11-5
- NULL LOB, restrictions calling OCI and DBMS\_LOB

functions, 11-2  
NULL usage with LOBs, 16-10

## O

- object cache, 12-2
  - creating an object in, 12-21
  - LOBs, 12-21
- OCCI
  - compared to other interfaces, 13-2
  - LOB functionality, 13-13
- OCCI Bfile class, 13-18
- OCCI Blob class
  - read, 13-16
  - write, 13-16
- OCCI Clob class, 13-14
  - read, 13-16
  - write, 13-16
- OCI
  - available LOB functions, 13-2
  - character set rules, fixed-width and varying-width, 13-9
  - functions for BFILEs, 13-12, 13-18
  - functions for temporary LOBs, 13-12, 13-18
  - functions to modify internal LOB values, 13-11, 13-17
  - functions to open/close internal and external LOBs, 13-13, 13-18
  - functions to read or examine internal and external LOB values, 13-12, 13-17
  - LOB buffering example, 12-6
  - LOB locator functions, 13-13, 13-18
  - Lob-buffering functions, 13-13
  - NCLOB parameters, 13-10, 13-16
  - OCILobFileGetLength
    - CLOB and NCLOB input and output length, 13-10
  - OCILobRead2()
    - varying-width CLOB and NCLOB input and amount amounts, 13-10
  - OCILobWrite2()
    - varying-width CLOB and NCLOB input and amount amounts, 13-10, 13-16
  - offset and amount parameter rules
    - fixed-width character sets, 13-15
  - setting OCILobRead2(), OCILobWrite2() to OCI\_UCS2ID, 13-9
  - using to work LOBs, 13-9
- OCI functions on a NULL LOB restriction, 11-2
- OCILobArrayRead(), 22-14
- OCILobArrayWrite(), 22-29
- OCILobAssign(), 12-2
- OCILobFileSetName(), 21-5, 21-9
- OCILobFlushBuffer(), 12-5
- OCILobGetChunkSize(), 12-22, 12-23
- OCILobGetStorageLimit(), 12-23
- OCILobLoadFromFile(), 21-10, 21-11
- OCILobLocator in assignment "=" operations, 13-11
- OCILobLocator, out-bind variables, 13-11
- OCILobRead2(), 21-16, 22-12, 22-13
  - BFILEs, 21-16
  - OCILobWriteAppend2(), 22-26
  - OCIObjectFlush(), 21-9
  - OCIObjectNew(), 21-9
  - OCISetAttr(), 21-9
  - ODP.NET, 13-4
  - offset parameter, in DBMS\_LOB operations, 13-6
  - OLEDB, 13-47
  - OO4O, See Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)
- open
  - checking for open BFILEs with FILEISOPEN(), 21-14
  - checking if BFILE is open with ISOPEN, 21-13
  - open, determining whether a LOB is open, 22-10
  - OpenCloseLob.java example, 13-39
- opening
  - BFILEs using FILEOPEN, 21-12
  - BFILEs with OPEN, 21-11
- opening and closing LOBs
  - using JDBC, 13-35
- ORA-17098
  - empty LOBs and JDBC, 13-47
- OraBfile, See Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)
- OraBlob, See Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)
- Oracle Call Interface, See OCI
- Oracle Objects for OLE (OO4O)
  - available LOB methods/properties, 13-4
  - internal LOB buffering, 13-27
  - methods and properties to access data stored in BLOBs, CLOBs, NCLOBs, and BFILEs, 13-26
  - modifying internal LOBs, 13-26
  - opening/closing external LOBs (BFILEs), 13-27
  - OraBfile example
  - OraBlob example
  - OraBlob, OraClob, and OraBfile encapsulate locators, 13-24
  - properties for operating on external LOBs (BFILEs), 13-28
  - properties for operating on LOBs, 13-28
  - reading/examining internal LOB and external LOB (BFile) values, 13-27
  - read-only methods for external LOBs (BFILEs), 13-28
  - syntax reference, 13-24
  - using Clone method to retain locator independent of dynaset, 13-25
- OraclePreparedStatement, See JDBC
- OracleResultSet, See JDBC
- oracle.sql.BFILE
  - BFILE-buffering, 13-34
  - JDBC methods to read/examine BFILEs, 13-34
- oracle.sql.BLOB
  - for modifying BLOB values, 13-32
  - reading/examining BLOB values, 13-32
  - See JDBC
- oracle.sql.BLOBs
  - BLOB-buffering
- oracle.sql.CLOB
  - CLOB-buffering
  - JDBC methods to read/examine CLOB

- values, 13-33
- modifying CLOB values, 13-33
- oracle.sql.CLOBs
  - See JDBC
- OraOLEDB, 13-47
- out-of-line storage, 11-4

## P

---

- parallel DML support, 20-7
- parallel LONG-to-LOB migration, 18-6
- partitioned index-organized tables
  - restrictions for LOB columns, 11-17
- pattern
  - check if it exists in BFILE using instr, 21-18
  - see if it exists IN LOB using (instr)
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-22
- PCTINCREASE parameter, recommended value for LOBs, 12-24
- PCTVERSION, 4-8, 11-7
- performance
  - guidelines
    - reading/writing large data chunks, 14-1
    - reading/writing large data chunks, temporary LOBs, 14-3
- PL/SQL, 13-2
  - and LOBs, semantics changes, 17-1
  - changing locator-data linkage, 17-3
  - CLOB variables in, 17-3
  - CLOB variables in PL/SQL, 17-3
  - CLOB versus VARCHAR2 comparison, 17-4
  - CLOBs passed in like VARCHAR2s, 17-2
  - defining a CLOB Variable on a VARCHAR, 17-2
  - freeing temporary LOBs automatically and manually, 17-4
- PL/SQL functions, remote, 17-5
- PL/SQL packages for SecureFiles LOB, 4-24
- PM schema, 2-3
- polling, 21-16, 22-13, 22-26
- prefetching data, 13-9
- print\_media creation, 15-1
- print\_media table definition, 2-3
- Pro\*C/C++ precompiler
  - available LOB functions, 13-2
  - LOB buffering, 13-21
  - locators, 13-21
  - modifying internal LOB values, 13-20
  - opening and closing internal LOBs and external LOBs (BFILES), 13-21
  - providing an allocated input locator
    - pointer, 13-19
  - reading or examining internal and external LOB values, 13-20
  - statements for BFILES, 13-20
  - statements for temporary LOBs, 13-20
- Pro\*COBOL precompiler
  - available LOB functions, 13-2
  - LOB buffering, 13-23
  - locators, 13-23
  - modifying internal LOB values, 13-22

- providing an allocated input locator, 13-21
- reading or examining internal and external LOBs, 13-23
- statements for BFILES, 13-23
- temporary LOBs, 13-23

programmatic environments

- available functions, 13-2
- compared, 13-2

programmatic environments for LOBs, 13-1

## R

---

- read consistency
  - LOBs, 12-10
- read-consistent locators, 12-5, 12-6, 12-10, 12-16, 12-19
- reading
  - data from a LOB
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-13
  - large data chunks, performance guidelines, 14-1
  - large data chunks, temporary LOBs, 14-3
  - portion of BFILE data using substr, 21-17
  - portion of LOB using substr
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-20
    - small amounts of data, enable buffering, 22-37
- reference semantics, 15-4
  - BFILES enables multiple BFILE columns for each record, 21-5
- remote built-in functions, 16-11
- remote PL/SQL functions, 17-5
- replication, 18-1
- restrictions
  - binds of more than 4000 bytes, 20-7
  - cannot call OCI or DBMS\_LOB functions on a NULL LOB, 11-2
  - clustered tables, 18-8
  - indexes, 18-8
  - index-organized tables and LOBs, 11-17
  - LOBs, 2-6
  - replication, 18-1
  - triggers, 18-8
- RETENTION, 4-7, 4-15
- RETENTION ignored in an MSSM tablespace, 11-8
- retrieving LOB access statistics, 14-6
- RETURNING clause, using with INSERT to initialize a LOB, 11-2
- round-trips to the server, avoiding, 12-1, 12-6
- rules for using directory objects and BFILES, 3-5

## S

---

- sample schema for examples, 15-1
- SECUREFILE
  - ALTER TABLE parameters, 4-13
  - LOB storage parameter, 4-7
- SecureFiles LOB
  - CREATE TABLE parameter, 4-2
  - PL/SQL, 4-24
- SecureFiles LOBs
  - initialization parameters, 4-21

- security
  - BFILEs, 21-5, 21-6
  - BFILEs using SQL DDL, 21-7
  - BFILEs using SQL DML, 21-7
- SELECT statement
  - read consistency, 12-10
- semantics
  - copy-based for internal LOBs, 15-4
  - reference based for BFILEs, 21-5
- SESSION\_MAX\_OPEN\_FILES parameter, 3-5
- setting
  - internal LOBs to empty, 11-2
  - LOBs to NULL, 11-2
  - overrides for NLS\_LANG variable
- SHRINK parameter of ALTER TABLE, 4-13
- SHRINK parameter of CREATE TABLE, 4-2
- SQL
  - Character Functions, improved, 16-1
  - features where LOBs cannot be used, 16-8
- SQL DDL
  - BFILE security, 21-7
- SQL DML
  - BFILE security, 21-7
- SQL functions on LOBs
  - return type, 16-6
  - return value, 16-6
  - temporary LOBs returned, 16-6
- SQL semantics and LOBs, 16-8
- SQL semantics supported for use with LOBs, 16-2
- SQL\*Loader
  - conventional path load, 3-2
  - direct-path load, 3-2
- statistics, access, 14-5
- store, 7-1
- streaming, 22-12
  - do not enable buffering, when using, 22-37
  - write, 22-27
- streaming APIs
  - NewStreamLob.java, 13-44
  - using JDBC and BFILEs, 13-43
  - using JDBC and CLOBs, 13-42
  - using JDBC and LOBs, 13-41
- symbolic links, rules with DIRECTORY objects and BFILEs, 3-5
- system owned object, See DIRECTORY object

## T

---

- temporary BLOB
  - checking if temporary using JDBC, 22-40
- temporary LOBs
  - checking if LOB is temporary, 22-39
  - DBMS\_LOB available functions/procedures, 13-8
  - OCI functions, 13-12, 13-18
  - Pro\*C/C++ precompiler embedded SQL statements, 13-20
  - Pro\*COBOL precompiler statements, 13-23
  - returned from SQL functions, 16-6
- TO\_BLOB(), TO\_CHAR(), TO\_NCHAR(), 17-2
- TO\_CHAR(), 17-2

- TO\_CLOB()
  - converting VARCHAR2, NVARCHAR2, NCLOB to CLOB, 17-2
- TO\_NCLOB(), 17-2
- transaction boundaries
  - LOB locators, 12-17
- transaction IDs, 12-18
- transactions
  - external LOBs do not participate in, 1-4
  - IDs of locators, 12-17
  - internal LOBs participate in database transactions, 1-3
  - LOB locators cannot span, 12-19
  - locators with non-serializable, 12-18
  - locators with serializable, 12-18
  - migrating from, 12-5
- transparent read, 4-20
- triggers
  - LONG-to-LOB migration, 18-8
- trimming
  - LOB data
    - internal persistent LOBs, 22-35
- trimming LOBs using JDBC, 13-40

## U

---

- UB8MAXVAL is BFILE maximum size, 12-22
- UCS2 Unicode character set
  - varying width character data, 11-4
- UNICODE
  - VARCHAR2 and CLOBs support, 16-5
- unstructured data, 1-2
- UPDATE statements
  - binds of greater than 4000 bytes, 20-6
- updated locators, 12-4, 12-12, 12-16
- updating
  - avoid the LOB with different locators, 12-14
  - LOB values using one locator, 12-14
  - LOB values, read consistent locators, 12-10
  - LOB with PL/SQL bind variable, 12-16
  - LOBs using SQL and DBMS\_LOB, 12-13
  - locators, 12-19
  - locking before, 22-23
  - locking prior to, 22-4, 22-35, 22-36

## V

---

- V\$NLS\_VALID\_VALUES, 13-6
- VARCHAR2
  - accessing CLOB data when treated as, 17-1
  - also RAW, applied to CLOBs and BLOBs, 16-9
  - defining CLOB variable on, 17-2
- VARCHAR2, using SQL functions and operators with LOBs, 16-2
- VARRAY
  - LOB restriction, 2-7
- varying-width character data, 11-4
- views on DIRECTORY object, 21-7

## **W**

---

Wallet,Oracle, 6-8

WHERE Clause Usage with LOBs, 16-10

writing

data to a LOB

internal persistent LOBs, 22-27

large data chunks, performance guidelines, 14-1

large data chunks, temporary LOBs, 14-3

singly or piecewise, 22-26

small amounts of data, enable buffering, 22-37

## **Z**

---

Zero-copy Input/Output for SecureFiles

LOBs, 13-30

